Brother Laser Printer HL-Series

Technical Reference Guide

Revision A	December, 1993	
Revision B	January, 1994	Addition of Appendix A "Comparison list for some models"
Revision C	October, 1994	Addition of the model HL-660/HL-1260

Copyright © 1993 - 1994
Brother Industries Ltd.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Trademark acknowledgments

Brother is a registered trademark and Twinriter a trademark of Brother Industries Ltd.
PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Incorporated.
Epson is a registered trademark and FX-850 a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
Hewlett Packard, HP, LaserJet and PCL are registered trademarks and LaserJet 4, HP-GL, and HP-GL/2 are trademarks of Hewlett Packard Company.
IBM is a registered trademark and Proprinter XL is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft and MS-DOS are registered trademarks, Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation and.
Diablo and Diablo 630 are trademarks of Xerox Corporation.
Intellifont is a registered trademark of Agfa Corporation.
TrueType is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

All other brand and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks or trademarks of respective companies.

Compilation and Publication

Under the supervision of Brother Industries Ltd., this manual has been compiled and published, covering the latest product's descriptions and specifications.

The contents of this manual and the specifications of this product are subjected to change without notice.

Brother reserves the right to make changes without notice in the specifications and materials contained herein and shall not be responsible for any damages (including consequential) caused by reliance on the materials presented, including but not limited to typographical and other errors relating to the publication.

Contents

Glossary

Chapter 1 - Introduction to the HL Series Laser printer

DESCRIPTION OF THE PRINTER **2**
ABOUT THE MANUAL **2**
AREAS OF USE **2**
Using word-processing packages and spreadsheets 2
Graphics 3
Programming 3

Chapter 2 - PCL

COMMAND LIST **2**
INTRODUCTION **5**
CONTROLLING THE PRINTER **6**
ENVIRONMENTS **9**
JOB CONTROL **10**
THE PAGE **15**
USING FONTS **32**
USING GRAPHICS **68**
MACRO **89**
STATUS READBACK **95**

Chapter 3 - PJL , Printer Job Language

INTRODUCTION **2**
PJL SYNTAX AND FORMAT **4**
HOW TO USE PJL **8**
KERNEL COMMANDS **10**
JOB SEPARATION COMMANDS **14**
ENVIRONMENT COMMANDS **17**
STATUS READBACK COMMAND **33**
DEVICE ATTENDANCE COMMANDS **52**

Chapter 4 - Diablo 630

COMMAND LIST **2**
INTRODUCTION **3**
EMULATION DETAILS **3**
TERMINOLOGY **4**
CONTROLLING THE PRINTER **4**
COMMANDS **6**

Chapter 5 EPSON FX-850

COMMAND LIST **2**
INTRODUCTION **4**
EMULATION DETAILS **4**
TERMINOLOGY **5**
CONTROLLING THE PRINTER **5**
COMMANDS **7**

Chapter 6 IBM Proprinter XL

COMMAND LIST **2**
INTRODUCTION **4**
EMULATION DETAILS **4**
NOTATION USED IN THIS EMULATION DESCRIPTION **5**
COMMANDS **5**

Chapter 7 - Barcode Control

Chapter 8 - HP-GL/2

TABLE OF CONTENTS **2**
INTRODUCTION **4**
TERMINOLOGY **4**
COMMAND SYNTAX **5**
THE HP-GL GRAPHICS WINDOW **6**
PREPARING TO PRINT GRAPHICS IMAGES **6**
COMMANDS **8**
- INITIALIZATION AND DEFAULT SETTING INSTRUCTIONS 8
- PLOT AREA AND UNIT SETTING INSTRUCTIONS 10
- PEN CONTROL AND PLOT INSTRUCTIONS 16
- THE POLYGON GROUP 25
- PLOT FUNCTION INSTRUCTIONS 32
- CHARACTER PLOT INSTRUCTIONS 44

Chapter 9 - HP-GL

TABLE OF CONTENTS **2**
INTRODUCTION **4**
HP-GL SYNTAX **4**
FONT SELECTION **4**
COORDINATE SYSTEM AND PRINTING AREA **4**
- COORDINATE SYSTEM 4
- printing AREA 5

COMMANDS **6**
- INITIALIZATION AND DEFAULT SETTING INSTRUCTIONS 6
- PLOT AREA AND UNIT SETTING INSTRUCTIONS 8
- PEN CONTROL AND PLOT INSTRUCTIONS 12
- THE POLYGON GROUP 21
- PLOT FUNCTION INSTRUCTIONS 29
- CHARACTER PLOT INSTRUCTIONS 33
- DUAL CONTEXT EXTENSIONS 43
- USER RESET 43
- FACTORY RESET 43

Appendix-A - Comparison list for

HL-660, HL-1260, HL-10h, HL-10V/DV, HL-10PS/DPS, HL-8V, HL-4V, HL-4Ve and HL-6V

Glossary

Absolute plotting — A method of plotting in the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphics language where coordinates are specified relative to the origin of the coordinate system currently in use.

Anchor point — The top left-hand corner of the PCL picture frame. You can position this on the page using a PCL command.

Anisotropic scaling — A form of image scaling using the SC command in HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode in which the user units can be of different sizes. Hence the entire graphics window can be used to display the image.

ASCII — The standard system for assigning number codes (0 ~ 255) to alphabetic, numeric and control code characters.

Attribute — A characteristic of a downloadable font or a character of a Downloadable font that is represented by a number of a fixed length.

Bitmap font — A font whose characters are defined as raster images. The characters that make up a bitmap font are of a fixed size.

Bold — A wider line thickness for typographical characters, used to make the text stand out, for example, in headings.

Calling a macro — A way of running a macro in which changes to the modified print environment are not retained when the macro has finished running.

Cartridge — A storage medium that you can insert into the printer cartridge slots. Cartridges can store fonts. The advantage of using cartridges is that they allow you to use more fonts without taking up printer memory space.

Cartridge font — A font that is stored on a cartridge. These are widely available commercially.

Character cell — The imaginary grid on which downloadable characters are designed.

Character code — A number assigned to a character that uniquely identifies it.

Character descriptor — A block of data that describes the characteristics of an individual character in a downloadable font, such as its width and height.

Character set — A selection of different characters. Characters sets normally include the alphabet in both upper- and lowercase, the digits' 0-9, punctuation marks, common mathematical symbols and a few other useful characters. There are also some specialized character sets that are used for specific applications like mathematics. A font is defined as having a particular character set.

Column — A vertical sub-division of the page whose width is equal to the HMI (horizontal motion index). The print position moves across the page one column width when any single character is printed (in a monospaced font), or when a space character is printed (in a proportionally spaced font). See also HMI.

Control code An ASCII code that tells the computer to perform a particular function, such as a carriage return.

Control panel reset A reset or factory reset performed using the printer control panel.

Cross-hatching A method of shading using perpendicular diagonal lines that cross one another.

Current units The current unit type in use in HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode. Current units are either user units or graphics units depending on whether an SC command has been used.

Cursor Although the printer does not have a cursor, it is sometimes easier to visualize the printer's operation in terms of a cursor that can be moved from place to place on the page.

Cursor position The current position of the imaginary cursor.

Decipoint A unit of measure equal to 1/720".

Default conditions A set of HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode settings that you restore using the DF; command. The default conditions are a subset of the initial settings.

Destination image The graphic image that is already in place on a page and to which the source image is applied in the LaserJet series print model.

Dots A unit of measure equal to 1/600", the smallest increment that the cursor can move.

Downloadable font A character font that can be downloaded from your computer to the printer. You can either buy Downloadable fonts or create your own. A downloadable font consists of a font descriptor block followed by a character code, character descriptor block and the data for each character in the font.

Downloading The process of sending either a font, a macro or a graphic image from your computer to the printer.

Effective window The area of the page on which HP-GL and HP-GL/2 output can appear. The effective window is determined by the overlap of the logical page, the PCL picture frame, the hard clip and the soft clip limits.

Emulation mode A mode of operation in which the printer imitates the functions of a different model.

Enabling a macro for overlay

A macro that is enabled for overlay runs as the final operation before each page is printed, using the macro overlay environment printer settings.

Escape sequence The Esc character followed by a string of other characters that tell the printer which operation to perform.

Factory default environment The collection of printer settings that have been made to the printer before it leaves the factory. You can reset the printer to the factory settings either by using a printer command or using the control panel.

Factory reset A reset in which LaserJet mode is made the current emulation mode and the factory default environment is restored.

Fill A shading applied to a shape that you have drawn.

Fixed spacing See monospacing.

Font A collection of characters that are designed to work in harmony together. A font has several characteristics that identify it uniquely: character or symbol set, spacing, pitch, height or point size, style, stroke weight and typeface. Fonts can either be resident in the printer's ROM, installed on cartridge or downloaded from your computer. You can either buy downloadable fonts commercially or create your own. The word "font" is often wrongly used to mean "typeface". A font is confined to a single height or point size whereas a typeface is not.

Font descriptor A block of data that is downloaded to the printer as the first part of a downloaded font. The font descriptor describes the characteristics that are common to every character in the font, such as stroke weight, and contains other relevant information.

Graphics mode initial settings The HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode settings that are in effect when you enter HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode. You can restore the initial conditions using the IN; command.

Graphics units The default units of the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 coordinate system. Also sometimes called plotter units.

Graphics window The area on the page in which HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphic images can appear. Initially this is the same as the picture frame, but you can change the size, position and aspect ratio of the graphics window using the IW command.

Gray scale A degree of continuous shading ranging from 0%, very light gray, to 100%, black.

Hard clip limits The area of the page on which it is physically possible to print using HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphics language commands. The hard clip limits are determined by the size of the physical page and are equivalent to the LaserJet mode printable area.

Hatching A method of shading using parallel lines.

Height The height in typographic points (1/72") of an unaccented capital letter in a font.

HMI Horizontal motion index. The horizontal distance that the print position moves across the page when any single character is printed (in a monospaced font), or when a space character is printed (in a proportionally spaced font). You can set the HMI using printer commands, however, when you alter any font characteristic (in effect, select a new font) or switch between the primary and secondary fonts, the HMI is reset to its default value based on the newly selected font.

Horizontal plot size The original horizontal size of an imported HP-GL and HP-GL/2 image.

Internal font	A font that is stored in the printer ROM and is therefore always available for use, for example, Brougham 10 pitch, or a font generated from a scalable typeface stored in the printer's ROM, for example, Tennessee bold 15 pt.
Isotropic scaling	A form of image scaling using the SC command in HP-GL or HP-GL/2 mode in which the user units must be of equal size. Hence it may not be possible to use the entire graphics window to display the image.
Justification	The way in which text is aligned. For example, left justification involves aligning the left end of every line of text.
Label	A text string that forms part of an HP-GL and HP-GL/2 plot.
Landscape	The orientation in which the top edge of the page is longer than the side edges.
Logical page	The area of the physical page on which the cursor can be positioned in LaserJet mode. You can use PCL commands to specify the position of the logical page on the physical page. Also known as the PCL addressable area.
LSB	i) The least significant byte of a set of data bytes. ii) The least significant bit of a single byte of data.
Macro	A sequence of PCL commands that can be stored in the printer memory. To run the sequence you need only use a single PCL command.
Macro execution	Executing a macro is a way of running a macro whereby any changes made to the modified print environment by the macro are retained when macro execution has been completed.
Macro overlay environment	Used only by a macro that has been enabled for overlay. A combination of the user default environment and the modified print environment.
Medium	The line thickness of normal type.
Modified print environment	The collection of all current LaserJet printer settings. This environment is saved if you call a macro or enter HP-GL and HP-GL/2 mode, and then restored when the macro has finished running or when you quit HP-GL or HP-GL/2 mode.
Monospacing	Some bitmap fonts are printed with each character occupying the same space on a line of text. This is known as monospacing.
MSB	i) The most significant byte of a set of data bytes. ii) The most significant bit of a single byte of data.
Pattern	i) The hatching or cross-hatching that can be applied to an outline shape. ii) The non-white areas of the source image in the LaserJet print model.
Pattern transparency	The patterned (non-white) areas of the source image are either transparent, in which case the destination image is visible through the white parts of the pattern, or opaque, in which case the destination image is not visible at all throughout the patterned areas of the source image.
PCL	Printer Control Language. The language consisting of escape sequences that is used to control the printer in LaserJet mode
PCL addressable area	See logical page.

PCL picture frame See picture frame.

Pen Although this printer is a laser printer the HP-GL/2 and HP-GL graphics languages retains the notion of a pen and allows you to select between two pens, white and black. You must select a pen before you can draw anything. The HP-GL and HP-GL/2 language were originally developed for use with plotters and the terminology remains.

Perforation skip A feature whereby the printer automatically compensates for a page break and resumes printing from the top of the text area on the next page.

Permanent font A downloaded font that is retained when a printer reset is performed.

Permanent macro A macro stored in the printer that will not be erased if the printer is reset.

Physical page The paper or envelope on which the printer prints.

Picture frame The area of the physical page in which HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphic images can be printed.

Pitch The number of characters in one inch of text. Only applicable to monospaced (fixed pitch fonts.)

Plot A drawing produced using the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphics language. So called because the language was originally invented for use with plotters.

Plotter units See graphics units.

Point The standard unit of measurement for character height. Equal to 1/72".

Point factor scaling A form of image scaling using the SC command in HP-GL or HP-GL/2 mode in which the user units and the location of the scaling point P1 are specified in terms of graphics units.

Point size See height.

Polygon A shape consisting of one or more closed groups of connected lines.

Polygon buffer An area of printer memory in which you can store one or more polygons and sub-polygons defined using HP-GL and HP-GL/2 commands. Some HP-GL and HP-GL/2 commands use the polygon buffer automatically.

Portrait The orientation in which the side edges of the page are longer than the top edge.

Posture A component of a font's style - whether it is upright or italic.

Primary font In LaserJet mode the printer maintains two current font settings. The primary font is the first of these.

Print model A way of describing the interaction between different graphic elements (source image, pattern and destination image).

Printable area The area of the page on which the printer can print.

Print position The position from which printing of the next character or graphic object will begin, providing that no operations that change the print position are performed in the interim.

Proportional spacing Fonts intended for high quality typographic output use a method of character spacing in which the space occupied by a single character on a line of text depends on the individual design of the character. This is known as proportional spacing. Scalable fonts are almost invariably proportionally spaced.

RAM Random Access Memory. The printer's memory in which fonts and macros can be stored and where pages that are to be printed are composed.

Raster graphics A method of representing a graphic image as a series of zeroes and ones that correspond to white and black dots respectively.

Relative plotting A method of plotting in the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphics language where coordinates are specified relative to the point at which the last graphics command terminated.

Reset When you reset the printer you restore a base set of conditions. A reset can either be performed using the control panel or by sending the printer a reset command. There are two types of reset, the normal reset and factory reset. A normal reset simply restores the current emulation mode with the most recent control panel settings -- it does not change the emulation mode itself. A factory reset makes LaserJet mode the current emulation mode and restores the factory default environment.

Resident font See internal font.

ROM Read Only Memory. Part of the printer's memory that contains the software controlling the printer and the printer internal fonts. The ROM cannot be altered.

Row A horizontal sub-division of the page whose height is equal to the VMI (vertical motion index). The print position moves down the page a distance equal to the row height when a line feed is performed.

Sans serif A kind of typeface normally used for headlines. Sans serif typefaces do not have little hooks (serifs) on the individual characters. This helps Sans serif headline text stand out more prominently.

Scalable fonts A font for which you can specify the character size. The printer will automatically scale the characters to the size you require.

Scaling In HP-GL or HP-GL/2 mode you can use the SC command to scale graphic images. The three types of scaling are known as anisotropic, isotropic and point factor scaling.

Scaling points Two imaginary points called P1 and P2 that define a rectangular area relative to the picture frame. You can user the HP-GL or HP-GL/2 SC and IP or IR commands to transform and scale images by changing the relationship between the two scaling points.

Scalable typeface A typeface for which you can choose a point size (height) in order to obtain a particular font for printing. For example, you might select the Utah typeface

and then select 14 pt. as the height. The printer has many resident typefaces. You can also buy scalable typeface cartridge and disks.

Secondary font In LaserJet mode the printer maintains two current font settings. The secondary font is the second of these.

Serif A kind of typeface normally used for body text. Serif typefaces have little hooks (serifs) on the individual characters that makes text more readable.

Soft clip limits See graphics window. The soft limits are determined by the IW command.

Source image The graphic image that is applied to the destination image in the LaserJet print model. The interaction of the two images is determined by the current source and pattern transparency settings.

Source transparency The source image is either transparent, in which case the destination image is visible throughout the white parts of the source image, or opaque, in which case the destination image is not visible at all through the source image.

Spacing The way in which a font's characters are arranged on a line of text. See monospacing and proportional spacing.

Stick font The default HP-GL and HP-GL/2 font consisting of thin lined characters.

Stroke weight The thickness of the lines that comprise the characters in a particular font. Medium, bold and light stroke weights are commonly used.

Sub-polygon A shape consisting of a closed group of points connected by lines. Several sub-polygons can form one polygon.

Symbol set See character set.

Tab channel A set of up to sixteen vertical tab stops. Up to eight vertical tab channels can be set up in the Epson FX-850 mode.

Temporary font A downloaded font that is erased from the printer's memory when a printer reset is performed. To use the font again you must download it again.

Temporary macro A macro that is erased from the printer's memory when a reset is performed. If you want to use the macro again you must redefine it and download it to the printer again.

Text area The area of the physical page on which the printer can place text.

Text direction The orientation of printed text relative to the physical page.

TIFF Tagged Image File Format. A common file format used for storing raster graphics data.

Transparency See pattern transparency and source transparency.

Typeface The design style of a set of typographic characters. The character design is intended to make the characters work together cohesively to produce readable text. The word "font" is often erroneously used to mean "typeface".

User default environment The current combination of LaserJet factory default settings and settings made using the control panel. This is the environment that is in effect when

	you switch on the printer in LaserJet mode or change to LaserJet emulation from another emulation mode. You can reset the printer to its user default settings either by using a printer command or using the control panel.
User units	Coordinate units specified by the user with the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 SC command.
Vector graphics	A method of defining graphic images in terms of coordinates, points and lines. The HP-GL and HP-GL/2 graphics language uses this method.
Vertical plot size	The original vertical size of an imported HP-GL and HP-GL/2 image.
VMI	Vertical motion index. The vertical distance that the print position moves down the page when a line feed is performed. This can be set using printer commands or with the printer's control panel by adjusting the "Lines" menu option in PAGE FORMAT MODE.

Chapter 1

Introduction

About the manual

This technical reference manual is intended to help you get the most out of each of the emulation modes supported by your HL Series laserprinter. It is divided into nine sections - this introductory section and one section for each of the emulation modes. Each emulation mode section describes the software commands (the escape sequences and control codes) that you can use to make the printer perform each of its available functions. Some example programs are included to give you useful ideas.
This manual is for our PCL5 models. For the differences between each model, see the Appendix "Model Comparison."

For basic set-up information, such as how to connect the printer to your computer, look in the User guide. The User guide also describes the printers control panel and how you can set various options using the keys.

Areas of use

There are several different applications for which you may want to use your HL Series laserprinter. Four general areas are outlined in the following sections.

USING WORD-PROCESSING PACKAGES AND SPREADSHEETS

You may simply wish to use the printer with your software application packages, such as word-processors or spreadsheets. Many software packages automatically send commands to the printer requesting particular type styles, character sizes and specifying page set-up information and other relevant data. In this case you will not need to use this manual, as your software package will perform the task of controlling the printer for you. Other packages allow you to embed software commands within your word-processed or spreadsheet documents. This manual describes the commands you need, and you can simply include them in the form that your package requires. In either case, read the documentation that came with your software to find out its own specific requirements for driving a printer.

GRAPHICS

HP-GL/2 or HP-GL mode offers many powerful graphic features that enable you to draw and print detailed images quickly and easily. Many commercial graphic packages, notably computer-aided design applications programs, produce HP-GL/2 or HP-GL output. LaserJet mode also has several graphics features. You can either write your own programs to generate images or use existing graphics software.

PROGRAMMING

If you are writing software, for example in BASIC or C, to drive the printer, the description and formal specification of each command will enable you to transcribe them straight into your programs. Below is a simple example of a program to draw and print a three inch black square. The program is given in both C and BASIC.

C language program

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
FILE *prn; /* initialization section */
prn = fopen("PRN","wb");
fprintf(prn,"\33E"); /* Esc E - Reset the printer */
fprintf(prn,"\33%0B"); /* Esc%0B - Enter HP-GL/2 */
fprintf(prn,"IN"); /* Initialize */
fprintf(prn,"SP1PA1024,1024"); /* Select pen 1 & move to 0,0
*/
fprintf(prn,"PDFT1RA4096,4096"); /* Draw 3" solid square */
fprintf(prn,"\33%0A"); /* Quit HP-GL/2 & restore original
cursor position */
fprintf(prn,"\33E /* Reset and eject page */
}
```

BASIC language program

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E"; :REM Esc E - Reset the printer
20 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B"; :REM Esc%0B - Enter HP-GL/2
30 LPRINT "IN"; :REM Initialize
40 LPRINT "SP1PA1024,1024"; :REM Select pen 1 & move to 0,0
50 LPRINT "PDFT1RA4096,4096"; :REM Draw 3" solid square
60 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A"; :REM Quit HP-GL/2 & restore
original cursor position
70 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E"; :REM Reset and eject page
```

FONT DEVELOPMENT

In LaserJet 4 mode you can send your own character designs to the HL Series laserprinter and print text using them. To do this you need first to design your characters on paper. Having done this you can then either input and download your characters using a commercial software package, or encode your designs numerically and write your own program to download them.

Chapter 2
PCL

Command list

Control Codes		6
Escape sequences		7
Esc&k#G	Line Termination	8
Esc&s#C	End-of-line wrap	8
EscY	Display function mode	8
EscZ	Display function mode	8
Environments		9
Job Control		10
Esc&l#A	Page size	10
Esc&l#H	Paper source	11
Esc&l#U	Left long-edge offset registration	11
Esc&l#Z	Top offset registration	12
Esc&l#S	Simplex/Duplex printing	12
Esc&a#G	Paper Side Selection	12
Esc&l#X	Number of copies	12
Esc&l1T	Job separation command	13
EscE	Reset	13
EscCR FD	Reset to factory default settings	13
EscCR!#R	Reset to user settings	13
Escz	Printer self test	14
Esc%-12345X	Exit current emulation mode	14
EscCR##	Change emulation mode	14
The Page		15
Esc&u#D	Unit of measure	18
Esc&a#L	Setting the left and right margins	19
Esc&a#M	Setting the left and right margin	19
Esc9	Resetting the horizontal margins	20
Esc&l#E	Setting the top margin	20
Esc&l#C	Setting the vertical motion index (VMI)	21
Esc&k#H	Setting the horizontal motion index (HMI)	21
Esc&l#D	Setting line spacing	23
Esc&l#F	Text length	23
Esc&l#P	Page length	24
Esc&l#L	Perforation skip	24
Esc&a#R	Vertical positioning -rows	25
Esc*p#Y	Vertical positioning - units	25
Esc&a#V	Vertical positioning - decipoints	26
Esc&a#C	Horizontal position - columns	26
Esc*p#X	Horizontal position - units	27
Esc&a#H	Horizontal position - decipoints	28
Esc&f#S	Using the cursor position stack	29
Esc=	Half line feed	29
Esc&l#O	Logical page orientation	30
Esc&a#P	Text direction	31
Using fonts		32
Esc(3@, Esc)3@	Selecting the default fonts	34
SI, SO	Switching between the primary and secondary font	34
Esc*c#R	Symbol Set ID Code Command	36
Esc(f#W	Define symbol set	37
Esc*c#S	Symbol Set Control Command	39
Esc(*symbol set ID*	Select the symbol set	39
Esc(s#C, Esc)s#C	Select the symbol set	40
Esc(s#P, Esc)s#P	Selecting the type of character spacing	41
Esc(s#H, Esc)s#H	Selecting the pitch	42

Esc(s#V, Esc)s#V	Seelcting the height	42
EscCR!#H, EscCR!#V	Scaling the scalable fonts vertically or horizontally	43
Esc(s#S, Esc)s#S	Selecting the style	43
Esc(s#B, Esc)s#B	Selecting the stroke weight	44
Esc(s#T, Esc)s#T	Selecting the typeface	44
Esc&p#X	Transparent print data	45
Esc&d#D, Esc&d@	Underlining text	45
Esc&*c#D	Font ID	46
Esc*c#F	Operations on downloaded fonts	46
Esc(#X, Esc)#X	Selecting a downloaded font	47
Esc)s#W	Sending the font descriptor	47
Esc*c#E	Sending a character code	61
Esc(s#W	Sending a character descriptor and data	61

Using graphics 68

Esc*v#N	Set source transparency	69
Esc*v#O	Set pattern transparency	70
Esc*c#G	Set area fill identity	71
Esc*c#W	User-defined pattern command	71
Esc*p#R	Set pattern reference point	72
Esc*c#Q	User-defined pattern control	72
Esc*v#T	Set pattern type	73
Esc*c#A, Esc*c#H	Set rectangle width	74
Esc*c#B, Esc*c#V	Set rectangle height	75
Esc*c#P	Draw filled rectangle	76
Esc*t#R	Set raster resolution	77
EscCR ##	Set high resolution control	77
Esc*r#F	Set raster image orientation	77
Esc*r#T	Set raster area height	78
Esc*r#S	Set raster area width	78
Esc*b#Y	set raster y-offset	79
Esc*b#M	Set compression mode	79
Esc*r#A	Start raster transfer	84
Esc*b#W	Send raster data	85
Esc*b#C	Compress transfer graphics	85
Esc*rB	End raster transfer	85
Esc*rC	End raster transfer	85
Esc%#B	Enter HP-GL/2 mode	87
Esc*c0T	Set picture frame anchor point	87
Esc*c#Y	Set picture frame vertical size	87
Esc*c#X	Set picture frame horizontal size	87
Esc*c#L	Specify vertical plot size	88
Esc*c#K	Specify horizontal plot size	88

Macros 89

Esc&f#Y	Macro ID	89
Esc&f0X	Start macro definition	89
Esc&f1X	End macro definition	90
Esc&f2X	Execute macro	90
Esc&f3X	Call macro	90
Esc&f4X	Enable macro for overlay	90
Esc&f5X	Disable macro for overlay	90
Esc&f6X	Delete all macros	91
Esc&f7X	Delete all temporary macros	91
Esc&f8X	Delete macro	91
Esc&f9X	Make macro temporary	91
Esc&f1030X	Delete all macros from PCMCIA memory card	91
Esc&f1036X	Delete macro from PCMCIA memory card	91
Esc&f1038X	Save macro into PCMCIA memory card	91

EscCR!#E	Execute Data	93
Esc&b#W	AppleTalk Configuration	94
EscCR!1234#M	MIO Video I/O port control	94
Status Readback		95
Esc*s#T	Set status readback location type	97
Esc*s#U	Set status readback location unit	97
Esc*s#I	Inquire status readback entity	98
Esc*s1M	Free space command	104
Esc&r#F	Flush All pages command	105
Esc*s#X	Echo command	105

Introduction

This laserprinter provides a complete emulation of the Hewlett Packard LaserJet 4 printer. Features include raster and vector graphics, support for bitmap and scalable fonts and page control. There are many resident fonts in the printer and you can gain access to more by inserting a font cartridge/card or PCMCIA card into the printer or by downloading fonts from your computer.

Controlling the printer

Control codes

Control codes are ASCII codes that tell the printer to perform a given function, such as a carriage return. You can send these codes to the printer as part of a program.

Backspace (08) <08h>

ASCII code 8. This code moves the cursor one column to the left.

Line feed (10) <0Ah>

ASCII code 10. This code performs a line feed.

Form feed (12) <0Ch>

ASCII code 12. This code ejects the most recently printed page from the printer.

Carriage return (13) <0Dh>

ASCII code 13. This code performs a carriage return.

Select primary font (14) <0Eh>

ASCII code 15. When you send this code to the printer subsequent characters will be printed in the current primary font. This is explained further in the sub-section entitled “Using fonts”.

Select secondary font (15) <0Fh>

ASCII code 14. When you send this code to the printer subsequent characters will be printed in the current secondary font. This is explained further in the sub-section entitled “Using fonts”.

Escape (27) <1Bh>

ASCII code 27. You must use this character code to start every instruction sequence that you send to the printer.

Horizontal tab (09) <09h>

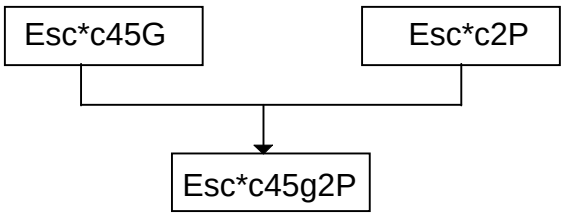
ASCII code 9. This code moves the cursor one tab position to the right. The tab positions are at the left margin and at the left edge of every 8th column as defined by the horizontal motion index (HMI) described in the next section, entitled “The Page”.

Space (32) <20h>

ASCII code 32. This code moves the cursor one column to the right.

Escape sequences

Escape sequences, also known as PCL (Printer Control Language) commands, tell the printer which operations to perform. An escape sequence consists of the ***Esc*** character followed by a string of characters which define the operation to be performed. Some escape sequences require parameter values. These are included in the sequence as numeric characters. The final letter of an escape sequence must be uppercase: all others must be lowercase.
You can send the printer instructions by embedding escape sequences in programs or in word processed documents.
In this manual escape sequences are shown as they would be entered, except that the character # in a sequence indicates that a number should be included at that point in the sequence. If no number is included the printer interprets that parameter's value as 0.
When downloading fonts or sending raster scan images to the printer the final uppercase character of the sequence is followed by the relevant data.
Two escape sequences can be combined into one if the first three characters of each sequence (including the ***Esc*** character itself) are the same. Hence, **Esc*c45G** and **Esc*c2P** may be combined to give **Esc*c45g2P**. The uppercase 'G' which terminated the first sequence becomes a lowercase character in the combined sequence. combined escape sequences are executed left to right, so be careful to place commands in the order in which you want them to be executed.



Line termination

You can set the carriage return, line feed and form feed control codes to perform compound functions. You can either do this using the printer's control panel (see the User Guide) or by sending the printer the following escape sequence:

- 0 = Carriage return, line feed and form feed perform their normal functions.
- 1 = Carriage return performs carriage return/line feed, line feed and form feed perform their normal functions.
- 2 = Carriage return performs its normal function, line feed performs carriage return/line feed, and form feed performs carriage return/form feed.
- 3 = Carriage return performs carriage return/line feed, line feed performs carriage return/line feed, and form feed performs carriage return/form feed.

0	CR→CR	LF→LF	FF→FF
1	CR→CR+LF	LF→LF	FF→FF
2	CR→CR	LF→CR+LF	FF→CR+FF
3	CR→CR+LF	LF→CR+LF	FF→CR+FF

End-of-line wrap

If the printer tries to print a line of text that is longer than the width of the text area, the end of the line will normally be lost. However, you can set the printer to flow text onto the next line so that text is not lost.
You can turn on the automatic text wrap feature either from the printer's control panel (see the User Guide) or by sending the printer the following escape sequence:

Esc&s0C (27)(38)(115)(48)(67) <1Bh><26h><73h><30h><43h>

To turn off the facility send:

Esc&s1C (27)(38)(115)(49)(67) <1Bh><26h><73h><31h><43h>

Display functions mode

You can choose to make the printer print escape sequences instead of executing them. Send the printer the following sequence:

EscY (27)(89) <1B><59>

Now the printer prints out escape sequences and prints the characters of the control codes. It does not execute them. The only exceptions to this are CR, the carriage return code, which causes a carriage return and line feed to be performed, and the EscZ escape sequence which turns the mode off.
To turn the display functions mode off and enable escape sequences to be executed again send:

EscZ (27)(90) <1B><5A>

The printer exits the display function mode after printing a character of code 1B Hex and the letter "Z". All subsequent escape sequences and control codes are executed normally and not printed literally.

Environments

Factory default environment

The factory default environment is the collection of printer settings programmed into the printer before it leaves the factory. You can restore the factory default environment using the printer’s control panel.

See the User's Guide to find how to reset the printer from the printer's control panel.
Some settings cannot be restored to the factory default environment with the RESET operation from printer's control panel.

User default environment

The user default environment is a combination of factory default settings and settings which the user has made from the printer’s control panel or remote printer console. You can store user default setting(s) in the printer by using the printer control panel. You can restore the user default environment either by sending the reset escape sequence to the printer, EscE, or by performing a reset from the printer’s control panel.

Modified print environment

The modified print environment is made up of all the current printer settings. If you call a macro or go into HP-GL/2 graphics language the modified print environment settings are saved. When the macro has been executed, or when you quit HP-GL/2, these saved settings are restored. The modified print environment consists of settings for the following features:

Page length	Primary font characteristics	Raster graphics presentation mode
Page size	Secondary font characteristicsHMI	Raster graphics left margin
Orientation	Primary font	Pattern ID
Left registration	Secondary font	Current pattern
Top registration	Font ID	Source transparency mode
Paper source	Character codeMacro ID	Pattern transparency mode
Number of copies	VMI/Line spacing	Print direction
Margins	Horizontal rectangle size	Raster graphics compression mode
Perforation skip mode	Vertical rectangle size	Underline mode
Line termination mode	Area fill ID	Raster graphics height
End-of line wrap	Raster graphics resolution	Raster graphics width
Current font		

Macro overlay environment

The macro overlay environment is a combination of the user default environment and the current modified print environment. The overlay environments settings take effect when a macro is enabled for automatic overlay. This is detailed in the section of this manual in which macros are described.

Job control

Page size

Esc&l#A (27)(38)(108)#(65) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<41h>

stands for the type of paper or envelope to be used.

- Values for # correspond to the paper or envelope sizes shown in the table. Envelopes sizes are shown in the shaded part of the table.

1	Executive
2	Letter
3	Legal
26	A4
100	B5
1024	B6 (HL1260 only)
1025	A5 (HL1260 only)
1026	A6 (HL1260 only)
2048	16" (HL660 only)
80	Monarch
81	COM-10
90	International DL
91	International C5

- When the printer receives this command any unprinted pages are printed, and the left, right and top margins, and the text length are set to their user defaults for the new page size.

- The cursor is moved to the top left of the text area on the new page.

- Depending on your model, you may also set the page size from the printer's control panel or remote printer console program by setting PAPER in PAGE FORMAT mode to the page size you require (see the User Guide).

- If the paper size you select differs from the size of the currently loaded paper, a message appears in the control panel or display window prompting you to load the selected size of paper (except for HL-660 series printer).

Example)
Select letter size Esc&l2A <1Bh><26h><6Ch><32h><41h>

Paper source

Esc&l#H (27)(38)(108)#(72) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<48h>

# denotes the paper source.

Values for # may be 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.

- If # = 0 the current page is ejected and the paper source remains the same.
- If # = 1 the current page is printed and the upper cassette becomes the paper source.
- If # = 2 the current page is printed and paper is fed in manually.
- If # = 3 the current page is printed and envelopes are fed in manually.
- If # = 4 the current page is printed and the lower cassette becomes the paper source.
- If # = 4 the current page is printed and the multi-purpose tray becomes the paper source. (HL-1260)
- If # = 5 the current page is printed and the lower cassette becomes the paper source. (HL-1260)
- If # = 1 or # = 2 either paper or envelopes may be fed in, depending on the current page size setting.
- The cursor is positioned at the top left of the text area on the next page.

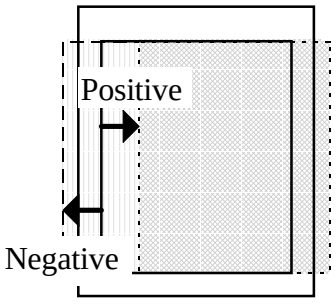
	HL-10h	HL-660	HL-1260
#=0	Eject	←	←
#=1	Tray 1	Sheet Feeder	Tray 1
#=2	Manual Feed	←	←
#=3	Envelope	N/A	Envelope
#=4	Tray 2	N/A	MP Tray
#=5		N/A	Tray 2

Left long-edge offset registration

Esc&l#U (27)(38)(108)#(85) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<55h>

stands for the distance in decipoints (1/720") that the left edge of the logical page is to be moved.

- Values for # may be in the range -32,767 to 32,767.
- The distance specified is relative to the logical page's current position.
- # can be positive or negative. Use a positive number to move the logical page to the right on the physical page, and a negative number to move it to the left.

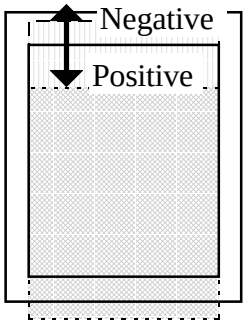


Top offset registration

Esc&l#Z (27)(38)(108)#(90) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<5Ah>

stands for the distance in decipoints (1/720") that the top edge of the logical page is to be moved.

- Values for # may be in the range -32,767 to 32,767.
- The distance specified is relative to the logical page's current position.
- # can be positive or negative. Use a positive number to move the logical page downwards on the physical page, and a negative number to move it upwards.



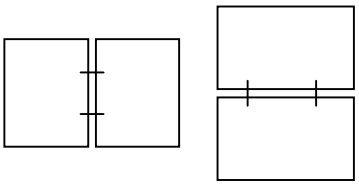
Simplex/Duplex printing (Only for HL-1260)

Esc&l#S (27)(38)(108)#(83) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<53h>

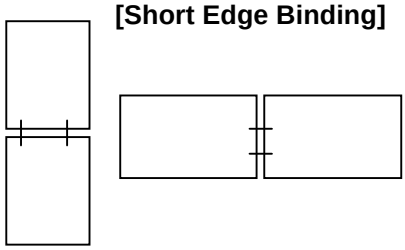
can be 0, 1, or 2.

- # = 0 indicates the Simplex printing.
- # = 1 indicates the Duplex - Long edge binding printing.
- # = 2 indicates the Duplex - Short edge binding printing.
- If the optional duplex unit is not installed to the printer, this mode is fixed at Simplex mode.
- This command setting is not saved in the printer's NV-RAM.

[Long Edge Binding]



[Short Edge Binding]



Paper Side Selection

Esc&a#G (27)(38)(97)#(71) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<47h>

can be 0, 1, or 2.

- # = 0 indicates the next side. If there are the page which is in process, the printer finishes the process to the page. If there are no page in process, this command is ignored.

- # = 1 indicates the front side.
  If the currently processing page is odd page, the printer finishes the process to the page and attaches a dammy page.
  If the odd page had already processed to the page and even page has not been processed yet, only a dammy page is attached.
  If the currently processing page is even page, the printer finishes the process to the page.
  If even and odd pages had been processed and the next odd page has not been processed yet, this command is ignored.

- # = 2 indicates the back side.
  If the currently processing page is odd page, the printer finishes the process to the page.
  If the odd page had already processed to the page and even page has not been processed yet, this command is ignored.
  If the currently processing page is even page, the printer finishes the process to the page and attaches a dummy (white) page.
  If even and odd pages had been processed and the next odd page has not been processed yet, only a dummy (white) page is attached.

Job separation command

Esc&l1T (27)(38)(108)(49)(84) <1Bh><26h><6Ch><31h><54h>

- It is recommended to insert this command at the end of each job.

Reset

EscE (27)(69) <1Bh><45h>

- A printer reset restores the user default environment, deletes any temporary fonts and temporary macros.

- Any pages that have been transmitted are printed out.

- You can also perform a printer reset using the printer's control panel or remote printer console program (see the User Guide).

Reset to factory default settings

EscCRFD (27)(13)(70)(68) <1Bh><0Dh><46h><44h>

- This command causes a factory reset to be performed, restoring all the printer's factory default settings. See the section "Factory default environment" for a list of the factory default settings.

- You can also perform a factory reset using the printer's control panel or remote printer console program (see the User Guide).

Reset to user settings

EscCR!#R (27)(13)(33)#(82) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<52h>

- # can be 0, 1 or 2.

- #0 indicates the current settings are restored. Unlike Esc E reset command, Esc CR!0R command reset input buffer.

- #1 indicates the user settings 1 are restored, if the printer supports multi user settings.

- #2 indicates the user settings 2 are restored, if the printer supports multi user settings.

- Depending on models you may make the control panel setting locked ("SETTING LOCK=ON"). In that case, the parameters 1 and 2 are ignored.

Printer self test

Escz (27)(122) <1Bh><7Ah>

- A printer self test causes a test sheet to be printed out to show that the machine is working properly. Depending on the models, you may also see the test pattern for HRC setting.

Exit current emulation mode

Esc%-12345X (27)(37)(45)(49)(50)(51)(52)(53)(88)
<1Bh><25h><2Dh><31h><32h><33h><34h><35h><58h>

- When the printer receives this command, all page data already received is printed out.
- All settings are reset to user settings.
- Exit the current emulation mode.

Change emulation mode

EscCRGL (27)(13)(71)(76) <1Bh><0Dh><47h><4Ch>

- This command changes the emulation mode to HP-GL mode.

EscCRAB (27)(13)(65)(66) <1Bh><0Dh><41h><42h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to BR-Script Batch mode.

EscCRAI (27)(13)(65)(73) <1Bh><0Dh><41h><49h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to BR-Script Interactive mode.

EscCRP or EscCRD (27)(13)(80) <1Bh><0Dh><50h>
(27)(13)(68) <1Bh><0Dh><44h>

- These two commands change the emulation mode to Diablo 630 mode.

EscCRI (27)(13)(73) <1Bh><0Dh><49h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to IBM Proprinter XL mode.

EscCRE (27)(13)(69) <1Bh><0Dh><45h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to Epson FX-850 mode.

EscCRTD (27)(13)(84)(68) <1Bh><0Dh><54h><44h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to Brother Twinriter DP emulation mode.

EscCRTW (27)(13)(84)(87) <1Bh><0Dh><54h><57h>

- This command changes the emulation mode to Brother Twinriter WP emulation mode.

- Depending on the models, you can also switch between emulation modes using the printer's control panel (see the User Guide).

Emulations availabe for each model are listed below.

	PCL	HP-GL	BR-Script	BR-Script 2	Diablo 630	Epson FX-850	IBM Proprinter XL	Twinriter
HL-4Ve	O				O	O	O	O
HL-10V/DV	O				O	O	O	O
HL-10PS/DPS	O		O					
HL-6V	O							
HL-10h	O	O	O		O	O	O	
HL-660	O					O	O	
HL-1260	O	O		O		O	O	

The page

Physical page

The physical page refers to the size of the paper or envelope currently in use: A4, Letter, B5, JIS B5, Legal and Executive are the permitted paper sizes: Monarch, COM-10, International DL and International C5 are the allowable envelope sizes.

Printable area

The printable area is a rectangular area of the physical page on which the printer can print. Its edges are 1/6" in from the edges of the physical page.

Logical page

The logical page is the area of the physical page where the cursor can be positioned. (Although the printer does not really have a cursor, we refer to the position on the page from which the printing of a character or graphic starts as the cursor position). You can alter the size of the logical page using the left offset registration and top offset registration commands. The logical page is also called the PCL (printer control language) addressable area.

Text area

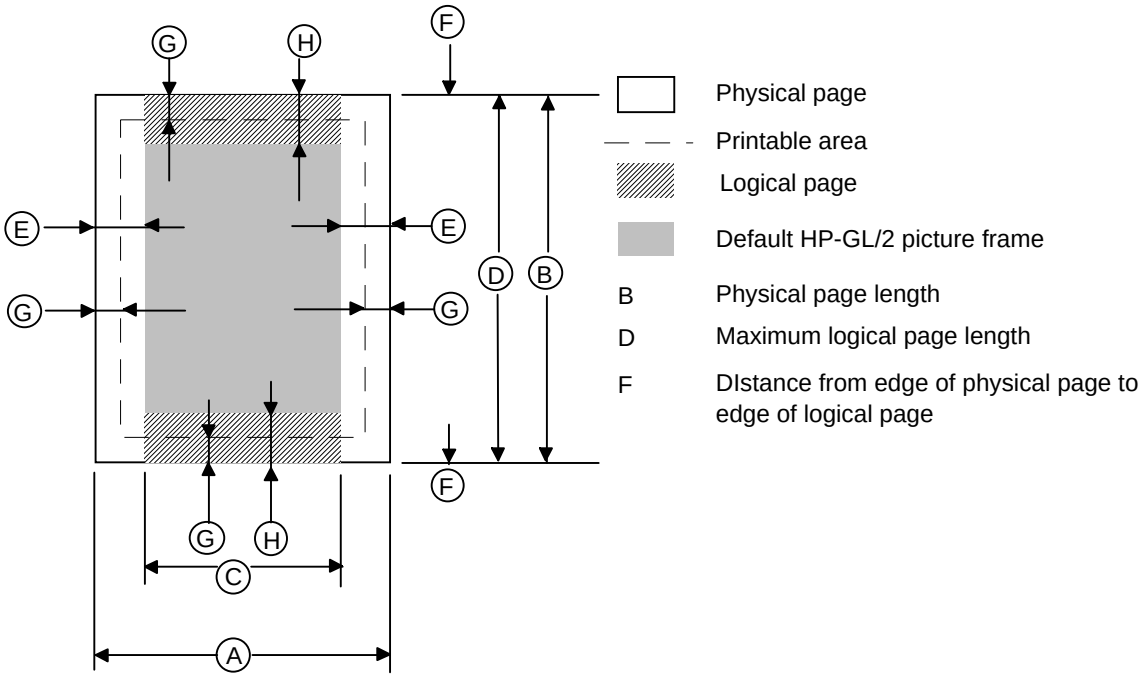
The text area is the area of the physical page on which text can be printed, and is determined by the left, right and top margin settings, the text length and whether the perforation skip facility is on or off. All these settings can be made either from the printer’s control panel (see the User Guide) or using PCL commands.

HP-GL/2 graphics window

The HP-GL/2 graphics window is the area of the physical page on which images can be printed using HP-GL/2 commands. This is described in the HP-GL/2 section of this manual. The default graphics window is bound by the left and right edges of the logical page and horizontal boundaries half an inch below the top and above the bottom of the logical page.

Portrait page dimensions

(DEFAULT VALUES)

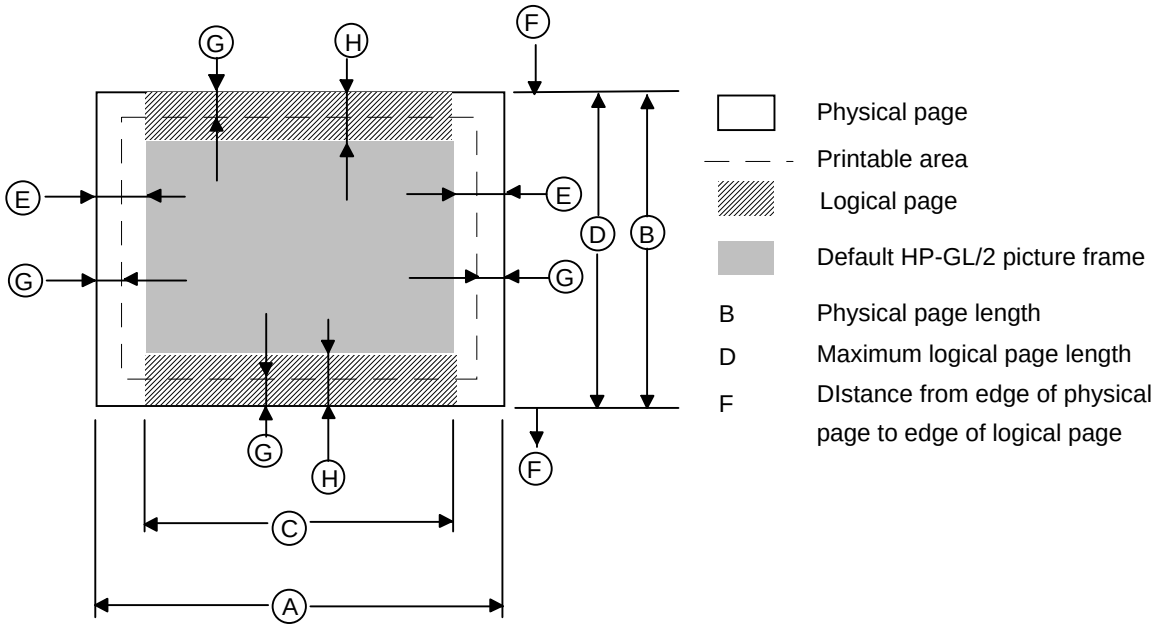


PAPER SIZE	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
LETTER	2550	3300	2400	3300	75	0	50	150
LEGAL	2550	4200	2400	4200	75	0	50	150
EXECUTIVE	2175	3150	2025	3150	75	0	50	150
A4	2480	3507	2338	3507	71	0	50	150
B5	2078	2952	1936	2952	71	0	50	150
JIS B5	2148	3030	2010	3030	69	0	50	150
B6	1476	2078	1334	2078	71	0	50	150
A5	1754	2480	1612	2480	71	0	50	150
A6	1240	1754	1098	1754	71	0	50	150
A4 80 chara	2480	3507	2400	3507	40	0	40	150
A4 long	2480	4783	2400	4783	40	0	40	150
COM-10	1237	2850	1087	2850	75	0	50	150
MONARCH	1162	2250	1012	2250	75	0	50	150
C5	1913	2704	1771	2704	71	0	50	150
DL	1299	2598	1157	2598	71	0	50	150

All measurements in 1/300'"

Landscape page dimenSions

(DEFAULT VALUES)



PAPER SIZE	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
LETTER	3300	2550	3180	2550	60	0	50	150
LEGAL	4200	2550	4080	2550	60	0	50	150
EXECUTIVE	3150	2175	3030	2175	60	0	50	150
A4	3507	2480	3389	2480	59	0	50	150
B5	2952	2078	2834	2078	59	0	50	150
JIS B5	3030	2148	2910	2148	60	0	50	150
B6	2078	1476	1960	1476	59	0	50	150
A5	2480	1754	2362	1754	59	0	50	150
A6	1754	1240	1636	1240	59	0	50	150
A4 long	4783	2480	4665	2480	59	0	50	150
COM-10	2850	1237	2730	1237	60	0	50	150
MONARCH	2250	1162	2130	1162	60	0	50	150
C5	2704	1913	2586	1913	59	0	50	150
DL	2598	1299	2480	1299	59	0	50	150

All measurements in 1/300'"

Coordinates

The printer control language coordinate system has its origin at the intersection of the left edge of the logical page and the top margin. The x-coordinate value of the current cursor position increases as the cursor moves from left to right, the y-coordinate value increases as the cursor moves down the page. The cursor can be explicitly positioned anywhere on the current logical page using the PCL coordinate system. In addition, the cursor's coordinate position will change as text and graphics are printed.

Units

You can specify cursor movement within the PCL coordinate system using one of three different unit systems.

Decipoints

A decipoint is one-tenth of a typographic point measurement = 1/720".

Rows and columns

Using the horizontal motion index (HMI) (Esc&k#H) and vertical motion index (VMI)(Esc&l#C) commands you can set the width of a column and the height of a row. You can then use the column width and row height as the units of the coordinate system. The line-spacing command is an alternative to the VMI command.

Units

A unit is the measurement which can be defined by the unit of measure command.

Unit of Measure

Esc&u#D (27)(38)(117)#(68) <1Bh><26h><75h>#<44h>

- # value can be 96, 100, 120, 144, 150, 160, 180, 200, 225, 240, 288, 300, 360, 400, 450, 480, 600, 720, 800, 900, 1200, 1440, 1800, 2400, 3600, 7200.
- # stands for the unit of measurement in dots per inch.
- The value set by this command is used as the unit setting for use by other setting commands such as ESC*p#X.
- The default value of # is 300.

Example)

Esc&u300D	Esc*p+100x+200Y move cursor 100/300 inch right and 200/300 inch down.
Esc&u600D	Esc*p+100x+200Y move cursor 100/600 inch right and 200/600 inch down.

Setting the left and right margins

Esc&a#L (27)(38)(97)#(76) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<4Ch>

stands for the distance between the left edge of the logical page and the left margin in columns.

Esc&a#M (27)(38)(97)#(77) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<4Dh>

stands for the distance between the left edge of the logical page and the right margin in columns.

- The column width is as defined by the HMI. If you subsequently change the HMI the margin positions that you have set do not change - that is, when you specify margin positions they remain fixed physically until you specify new ones or reset them to default values.
- You cannot specify a value for the left margin that is greater than the value of the current right margin.
- If the current cursor position is to the left of your new left margin setting, the cursor will be moved to the new left margin.
- You cannot set the right margin to be further right than the right edge of the logical page.
- If the current cursor position is to the right of your new right margin setting, the cursor will be moved to the new right margin.
- The factory default left and right margin settings are at the left and right edges of the logical page respectively.
- Depending on your model, margin settings can be made from the printer's control panel (see the User Guide).

```
10 REM ***** SET AND CLEAR SIDE MARGINS *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- END OF LINE WRAP ON ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"&s0C";
60 REM --- LEFT MARGIN SET TO 10 COLUMNS ----
70 LPRINT ESC$+"&a10L";
80 REM --- RIGHT MARGIN SET TO 70 COLUMNS ----
90 LPRINT ESC$+"&a70M";
100 REM --- PRINT "0123456789" 10 TIMES
110 FOR I=1 TO 10
120 LPRINT "0123456789";
130 NEXT
140 LPRINT
150 REM --- CLEAR SIDE MARGIN ----
160 LPRINT ESC$+"9";
170 REM --- PRINT "0123456789" 10 TIMES
180 FOR I=1 TO 10
190 LPRINT "0123456789";
200 NEXT
210 REM --- PAPER EJECT ----
220 LPRINT CHR$(12);
230 END
```

Resetting the horizontal margins

Esc9 (27)(39) <1Bh><39h>

- This command resets the left and right margins to the left and right edges of the logical page respectively.

Setting the top margin

Esc&*l*#E (27)(38)(108)#(69) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<45h>

stands for the distance between the top of the logical page and the top margin in rows.

- The row height is as defined by the VMI. If you subsequently change the VMI (or the line spacing) the top margin position that you have set does not change - that is, when you specify the top margin position it remains fixed physically until you specify a new one or reset it to a default value.
- The top margin command is ignored if you try to set a margin greater than the current length of the logical page.
- The top margin command is ignored if the current VMI is 0.
- The factory default top margin setting is half an inch below the top of the logical page.
- Depending on your model, the top margin can be set from the printer's control panel (see the User Guide).

```
10 REM ******* SET TOP MARGIN TO 10 LINES *******
20 REM
30 ESC$=CHR$(27)
40 LPRINT ESC$+"&l10E";
50 LPRINT "10 LINES "
60 LPRINT CHR$(12);
70 END
```

Setting the vertical motion index (VMI)

Esc&*l*#C (27)(38)(108)#(67) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<43h>

stands for the height of one row in 1/48".

- # can have any value in the range 0-32767.
- The distance specified by the VMI is the vertical distance moved down the page when the printer performs a line feed. The VMI is also sometimes referred to as the line pitch.
- If you try to set a VMI that is greater than the current length of the logical page the command is ignored.
- Changing the VMI setting does not affect the position of the top margin.
- The factory default setting is 8 - that is, the printer will print six lines of text per inch.
- Depending on your model, you can change the number of lines per page setting from the printer's control panel or remote printer console. If you change its setting, the VMI will change automatically.

```
10 REM ***** SETTING THE LINE PITCH *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 REM
40 REM --- SET LINE PITCH TO 1/48 INCH ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"&l1C";
60 FOR I=1 TO 10
70 LPRINT "I can't read."
80 NEXT
90 LPRINT ESC$+"&l8C";
100 LPRINT
110 LPRINT
120 REM --- SET LINE PITCH TO 1/12 INCH ----
130 LPRINT ESC$+"&l4C";
140 LPRINT "line pitch is 1/12 inch"
150 REM --- SET LINE PITCH TO 1/8 INCH ----
160 LPRINT ESC$+"&l6C";
170 LPRINT "line pitch is 1/8 inch"
180 REM --- SET LINE PITCH TO 1/6 INCH ----
190 LPRINT ESC$+"&l8C";
200 LPRINT "line pitch is 1/6 inch"
210 REM --- SET LINE PITCH TO 1/4 INCH ----
220 LPRINT ESC$+"&l12C";
230 LPRINT "line pitch is 1/4 inch"
240 LPRINT "line pitch is 1/4 inch"
250 REM --- PAPER EJECT ----
260 LPRINT CHR$(12);
270 END
```

< Sample file 1>

Setting the horizontal motion index (HMI)

Esc&k#H (27)(38)(107)#(72) <1Bh><25h><6Bh>#<48h>

stands for the width of one column in 1/120".

- # can have any value in the range 0-32767 and can have up to four decimal places.
- If you are using a fixed space font the HMI is the horizontal distance moved across the page when the printer prints one character.
- If you are using a proportionally spaced font the HMI is the horizontal distance moved across the page when the printer receives a space control code <20h>.
- If any font characteristics are changed, or a Select Primary Font or Select Secondary Font control code is sent to the printer, the HMI is set to correspond to the default pitch value of the newly selected font.
- Changing the HMI setting does not affect the positions of the left and right margins.
- The factory default setting is 12 - that is, the printer will print ten characters of fixed pitch text per inch.

```
10 REM ***** SETTING THE CHARACTER PITCH *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 REM --- DEFAULT IS 10 CPI PITCH ---
40 LPRINT "10 PITCH "
50 REM --- SET 5 CPI PITCH ---
60 LPRINT ESC$+"&k24H";
70 LPRINT "AAA"
80 REM --- SET 6 CPI PITCH ---
90 LPRINT ESC$+"&k20H";
100 LPRINT "AAA"
110 REM --- SET 8 CPI PITCH ---
120 LPRINT ESC$+"&k15H";
130 LPRINT "AAA"
140 REM --- SET 10 CPI PITCH ---
150 LPRINT ESC$+"&k12H";
160 LPRINT "AAA"
170 REM --- SET 12 CPI PITCH ---
180 LPRINT ESC$+"&k12H";
190 LPRINT "AAA"
200 REM --- SET 0 CPI PITCH ---
210 LPRINT ESC$+"&kH";
220 LPRINT "I CAN'T READ"
230 REM --- PAPER EJECT ----
240 LPRINT CHR$(12);
250 END
```

< Sample file 2>

Setting line spacing

Esc&*l*#D (27)(38)(108)#(68) <1Bh><25h><6Ch>#<44h>

stands for the number of lines to be printed per inch.

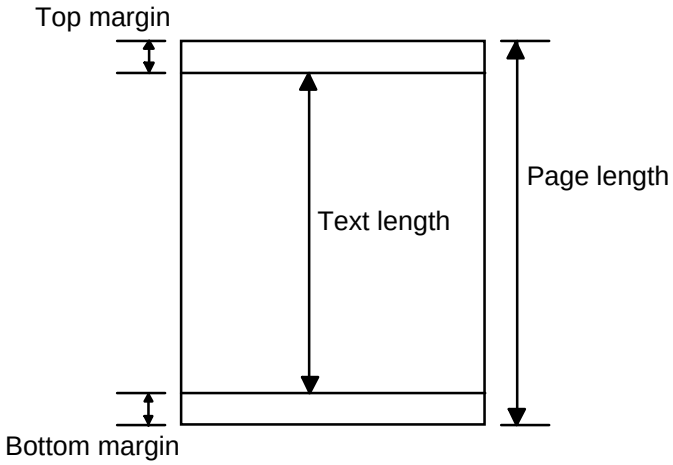
- # can have any of the following values: 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 12, 16, 24 or 48.
- This command performs the same function as the VMI command.
- Changing the line spacing setting does not affect the position of the top margin.
- The factory default setting is 6 - that is, the printer will print six lines of text per inch.
- Depending on your printer model, the number of lines per page can also be set from the printer's control panel or remote printer console.

Text length

Esc&*l*#F (27)(38)(108)#(70) <1Bh><25h><6Ch>#<46h>

stands for the number of lines of text (at the current VMI) to be printed on each page.

- Values for # should be within the value (Logical Page length-Top margin).
- Text is printed from the top margin downwards.
- If you specify a value that would cause the text area to extend beyond the end of the logical page, the command is ignored.



Page length

Esc&*l*#P (27)(38)(108)#(80) <1Bh><25h><6Ch>#<50h>

stands for the length of the logical page in lines (at the current VMI).

- If you specify a page length greater than is allowed by the physical size of the paper in the currently installed paper tray, a control panel message prompts you to load paper of the appropriate size.
- When the printer receives this command any unprinted pages are printed, and the left, right and top margins, and the text length are set to their user defaults.
- If you specify a page length greater than is allowed by any of the supported paper sizes, the command is ignored.
- If the current VMI is 0 the command is ignored.
- The factory default page size is letter, for which the default page length is 66 lines (11 inches with 6 lines per inch). The default lengths for the other paper sizes are: Legal - 84 lines, A4 - 70 lines, Executive - 63 lines (all at 6 lines per inch).
- Depending on your printer model, you can also set the page length from the printer's control panel or remote printer console by setting LINES to the required number of lines per page in the PAGE FORMAT mode (see the User Guide).

```
10 REM ******* SETTING THE PAGE LENGTH TO 66 LINES *******
20 REM
30 ESC$=CHR$(27)
40 LPRINT ESC$+"&l66P";
50 FOR I=1 TO 67
60 LPRINT STR$(I)
70 NEXT
80 LPRINT CHR$(12);
90 END
```

Perforation skip

You can set the printer to flow text from one page to the next when it encounters a line feed (or half line feed) that would otherwise move the cursor position to below the bottom of the text area. When perforation skip is enabled the cursor is automatically moved to the top left hand corner of the text area on the next page and printing continues.

Esc&*l*#L (27)(38)(108)#(76) <1Bh><25h><6Ch>#<4Ch>

is either 0 or 1.

- # = 0 turns the perforation skip feature off.
- # = 1 turns the perforation skip feature on.
- The factory default mode is perforation skip on.
- Whenever the perforation skip mode is changed, the top margin and page length values are reset to their default values.

Positioning the cursor

You can position the cursor anywhere on the logical page. In addition, the cursor position is automatically changed when text or graphics are printed. You can either position the cursor using absolute PCL coordinate values or position it relative to the current cursor position, using dots, decipoints or rows and columns as units. In case of using dots, the units value is defined by the ESC & u # d command. The commands for positioning the cursor are listed below.

Vertical positioning

Vertical cursor positioning in Rows

Esc&a#R (27)(38)(97)#(82) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<52h>

= number of rows

- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of rows parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned vertically downwards on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved upwards.
- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the vertical repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of rows below the top margin, the PCL coordinate system's x-axis.
- The parameter value can have up to two decimal places.
- The cursor's horizontal position remains unchanged.
- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the top or bottom of the logical page as appropriate.

Units

Esc*p#Y (27)(38)(112)#(89) <1Bh><26h><70h>#<79h>

= number of units

- Units value is defined by the Esc & u # D command.
- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of dots parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned vertically downwards on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved upwards.
- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the vertical repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of dots below the top margin, the PCL coordinate system's x-axis.
- The cursor's horizontal position remains unchanged.
- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the top or bottom of the logical page as appropriate.

Vertical cursor positioning in Decipoints

Esc&a#V (27)(38)(97)#(86) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<56h>

= number of decipoints in 1/720"

- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of decipoints parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned vertically downwards on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved upwards.
- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the vertical repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of decipoints below the top margin, the PCL coordinate system's x-axis.
- The cursor's horizontal position remains unchanged.
- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the top or bottom of the logical page as appropriate.

Horizontal position

Horizontal cursor positioning in Columns

Esc&a#C (27)(38)(97)#(67) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<43h>

= number of columns

- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of columns parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned to the right on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved to the left.
- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the horizontal repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of columns to the right of the left edge of the logical page, the PCL coordinate system's y-axis.
- The parameter value can have up to two decimal places.
- The cursor's vertical position remains unchanged.
- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the left or right edge of the logical page as appropriate.

```
10 REM ***** HORIZONTAL CURSOR POSITIONING *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 REM
40 REM --- POSITIONING CURSOR AT COLUMN 10 ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"&a10C";
60 LPRINT "A";
70 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 5 COLUMNS TO THE LEFT ---
80 LPRINT ESC$+"&a-5C";
90 LPRINT "B";
100 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 10 COLUMNS TO THE RIGHT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"&a+10C";
120 LPRINT "C";
130 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
140 LPRINT CHR$(12);
150 END
```

< Sample file 3 >

Units

Esc*p#X (27)(38)(112)#(88) <1Bh><26h><70h>#<58h>

= number of units

- Units value is defined by the **Esc & u # D** command.
- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of dots parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned to the right on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved to the left.
- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the horizontal repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of dots to the right of the left edge of the logical page, the PCL coordinate system's y-axis.
- The cursor's vertical position remains unchanged.
- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the left or right edge of the logical page as appropriate.

```
10 REM ***** HORIZONTAL CURSOR POSITIONING *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 REM
40 REM --- POSITIONING CURSOR AT 1 INCH ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"*p300X";
60 LPRINT "A";
70 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 0.5 INCHES TO THE LEFT ---
80 LPRINT ESC$+"*p-150X";
90 LPRINT "B";
100 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 1 INCH TO THE RIGHT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"*p+300X";
120 LPRINT "C";
130 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
140 LPRINT CHR$(12);
150 END
```

< Sample file 4 >

Horizontal cursor positioning in Decipoints

Esc&a#H (27)(38)(97)#(72) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<48h>

= number of decipoints 1/720"

- A plus or minus sign preceding the number of decipoints parameter indicates that the cursor is to be positioned relative to its current position. A signed positive parameter value signifies that the cursor is to be repositioned to the right on the page, a negative value means that it will be moved to the left.

- An unsigned number as the parameter signifies that the horizontal repositioning is absolute - the cursor will be repositioned the specified number of decipoints to the right of the left edge of the logical page, the PCL coordinate system's y-axis.

- The cursor's vertical position remains unchanged.

- If you attempt to move the cursor to a position that is outside the boundaries of the logical page, the cursor will be positioned at either the left or right edge of the logical page as appropriate.

```
10 REM ***** HORIZONTAL CURSOR POSITIONING *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 REM
40 REM --- POSITIONING CURSOR AT 1 INCH ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"&a720H";
60 LPRINT "A";
70 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 0.5 INCHES TO THE LEFT ---
80 LPRINT ESC$+"&a-360H";
90 LPRINT "B";
100 REM --- MOVING CURSOR 1 INCH TO THE RIGHT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"&a+720H";
120 LPRINT "C";
130 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
140 LPRINT CHR$(12);
150 END

< Sample file 5 >
```

Positioning the cursor using control codes

The carriage return, space, horizontal tab and backspace control codes can also be used to reposition the cursor using the current VMI and HMI settings.

Using the cursor position stack

You can save and retrieve up to 20 cursor positions using the cursor position stack.

Esc&f#S (27)(38)(102)#(115) <1Bh><26h><66h>#<73h>

= 0 or 1

- Setting # to 0 stores the current cursor position on the stack.
- Setting # to 1 retrieves the cursor position currently on the top of the stack and makes it the current cursor position.
- Resetting the printer deletes all the positions from the stack.

Half line feed

Esc= (27)(61) <1Bh><3Dh>

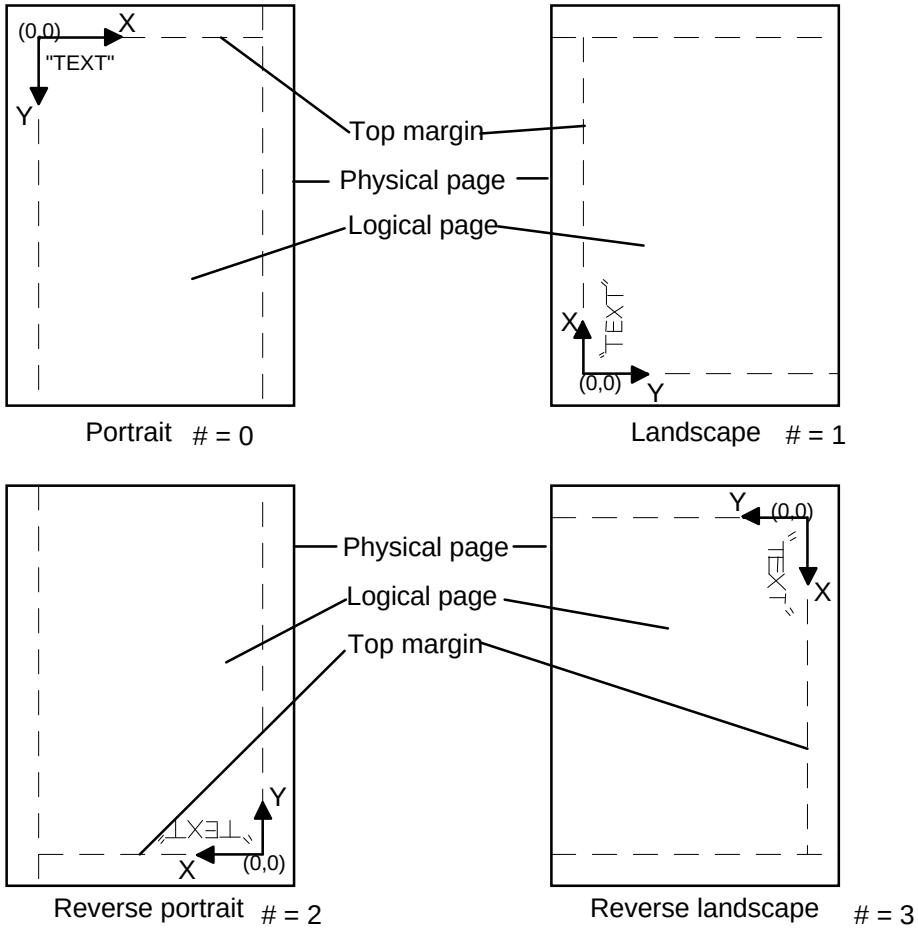
- This command moves the cursor down half a row as defined by the last VMI or line spacing command (Esc&l#C).

Logical page orientation

Esc&*l*#O (27)(38)(108)#(79) <1Bh><26h><6Ch>#<4Fh>

= 0, 1, 2 or 3

- This command sets the orientation of the logical page relative to the physical page.
- Values of # produce orientations as follows: 0 = portrait, 1 = landscape, 2=reverse portrait and 3 = reverse landscape.
- Sending this command to the printer causes the page length, text length, top, left and right margins to be set to their user default values. Any previously transmitted data is printed out and the cursor is positioned at the top left hand corner of the text area on the next page.
- Portrait or landscape orientation can also be selected from the printer's control panel.
- The factory default orientation is portrait.



Text direction

Esc&a#P (27)(38)(97)#(80) <1Bh><26h><61h>#<50h>

= 0, 90, 180 or 270.

- This command changes the orientation of the logical page relative to the physical page, but without the side effects of the logical page orientation command. Hence you can print text in different directions on the same page.
- Values of # have the following effects: 0 = portrait, 90 = landscape, 180 = reverse portrait and 270 = reverse landscape. The value specifies the angle through which the text direction is rotated counterclockwise.
- The cursor position remains at the same physical page position.
- All subsequent text is printed in the newly selected orientation.
- The PCL coordinate system and margin settings are rotated through the specified angle. Hence the cursor coordinates will change.
- HP-GL/2 graphics images cannot be rotated using this command.
- The factory default orientation is portrait.

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
20 REM --- PRINTER RESET ---
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 REM --- MOVING CURSOR TO X=500, Y=500 ---
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"*p500X";
60 LPRINT CHR$(27);"*p500Y";
70 REM --- 0 deg ---
80 LPRINT CHR$(27);"&a0P";
90 LPRINT "BROTHER ";
100 REM --- 90 deg ---
110 LPRINT CHR$(27);"&a90P";
120 LPRINT "BROTHER ";
130 REM --- 180 deg ---
140 LPRINT CHR$(27);"&a180P";
150 LPRINT "BROTHER ";
160 REM --- 270 deg ---
170 LPRINT CHR$(27);"&a270P";
180 LPRINT "BROTHER ";
190 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
200 LPRINT CHR$(12)
210 END
```

Using fonts

Introduction

A font is a collection of characters that have common characteristics, such as size, style and typeface, and which ranges over a given set of symbols. For example, 12 point Tennessee Bold in the Roman-8 symbol set is a typical HL Series font. Different sorts of fonts are used to create various typographic effects. Traditionally, large point size *sans serif* typeface fonts, like Helsinki and Utah are used for document headlines while smaller fonts with *serif* typefaces, like Tennessee and Portugal are used for body text. In LaserJet mode you can have access to a large range of fonts that are already built in to the printer's ROM, plus the facility for downloading more fonts from a personal computer or plugging in font cards/cartridges or PCMCIA memory cards. When you select a font for printing you will specify a number of characteristics which identify the font you require. The laser printer does its best to print using the font you specified, but if amongst all its available fonts it does not have the exact one that you specified, it will compromise and give you what it regards as the closest available font. Sometimes the results will not be what you expected and you should exercise care in selecting fonts for printing.

In some instances the selection of a font will be handled automatically from your word processing software or other applications package. In these cases you need only ensure that the correct font is available (that is, as a standard font in the ROM, on cartridge/card or downloaded) and the application will do the rest. You do not need to concern yourself with sending any escape sequences.
As well as using software commands you can also select fonts using the printer's control panel. Consult the User Guide for details.

Font types

There are two types of fonts supported by this HL Series printer in LaserJet mode - bitmap fonts and scalable fonts.

Bitmap fonts

The characters which make up a bitmap font are raster bit images of the relevant symbols. When text is printed using the font it is nearly always monospaced and when you select the font you specify it by its typeface, pitch (the number of characters printed per inch), height (point size) and symbol set.

Scalable fonts

The printer has many scalable fonts available as standard. The following table shows scalable fonts available for model HL-1260. (For the other models' resident fonts, please see the User's Guide.)

`Intellifont Compatible Fonts:`

		1260	660
Albertville	Medium, Extra Bold	✓	✓
Antique Oakland	Medium, Oblique, Bold	✓	✓
PcBrussels	Light, Light italic, Demi, Demi italic	✓	✓
Oklahoma	Medium, Oblique, Bold, BoldOblique	✓	✓
Cleveland Condensed		✓	✓
Connecticut		✓	✓
Brougham	Medium, Oblique, Bold, Bold oblique	✓	✓
Guatemala	Antique, Italic, Bold, Bold italic	✓	✓
LetterGothic	Medium, Oblique, Bold	✓	✓
Maryland		✓	✓
PcTennessee	Roman, Italic, Bold, Bold italic	✓	✓
PcBrussels	Light, Demi, LightItalic, DemiItalic	✓	✓
Utah	Medium, Oblique, Bold, BoldOblique	✓	✓
Utah Condensed	Medium, Oblique, Bold, Bold oblique	✓	✓

Microsoft Windows 3.1 TrueType Compatible Fonts:

		1260	660
Tennessee	Roman, Italic, Bold, Bold Italic	✓	
Helsinki	Medium, Oblique, Bold, BoldOblique	✓	
BR Symbol		✓	
W Dingbats		✓	

BR-Script Fonts:

		1260	660
Atlanta	Book, BookOblique, Demi, DemiOblique	✓	
Copenhagen	Roman, Italic, Bold, Bold italic	✓	
Portugal	Roman, Italic, Bold, Bold italic	✓	
Calgary	MediumItalic	✓	

Brother Original FOnts:

Bermuda Script		1260	660
German		✓	
US Roman		✓	
San Diego		✓	
		✓	

You can select a font in any of these typefaces, specifying height (point size) and symbol set. Characters printed in scalable fonts are always proportionally spaced - that is, the spacing between characters on a line depends on their shapes. To add to the number of fonts available, you can buy scalable typeface cartridges/cards which you can insert into the printer's cartridge/card slots, and scalable typeface disks from which you can copy the typefaces into the printer's memory. You can also create your own downloadable scalable typefaces, using software commands.

Bound fonts

Bound fonts are the fonts which have only a single symbol set.

Unbound fonts

Unbound fonts are the fonts which have a large amount of symbols selected from complementary symbol index (intellifont) or unicode symbol index (TrueType).

Font sources

Depending on your model, fonts available to the printer can be in one of three places, either in the printer's ROM as supplied from the factory, on a cartridge/card or on a PCMCIA memory card or in the printer's RAM. RAM fonts are downloaded from a personal computer.

Internal fonts

The printer comes with some bitmap fonts contained in its ROM and many scalable typefaces which can be used to create scalable fonts.

Cards/Cartridges fonts

You can buy cartridge/card -based bitmap fonts and scalable typefaces. Plug the cartridge/card into one of the printer's cartridge/card slots and then select any font from them as if it were in the printer's ROM. Depending on your model, you can also save bitmap fonts and scalable typeface in the flash ROM memory and you can use it as font card.

Downloadable fonts

You can buy diskettes containing fonts which can be copied directly to the printer using the DOS COPY command. You can also design of your own fonts and download them to the printer.
One disadvantage of downloaded fonts is that they reside in the printer's RAM memory. The printer also uses this memory for composing the text and graphic output that it prints on the page. If the memory contains too many fonts the printer may run out of memory. Since downloaded fonts are stored in the printer's RAM they are lost when the printer is switched off, and you must redownload them before you can use them again.

Primary and secondary fonts

The printer maintains two sets of font characteristics which define its primary and secondary fonts. The primary font is the one it will use by default, the secondary font can be selected instead. This facility enables you to have two parallel font definitions that you can switch between easily without invoking long escape sequences. You can select the primary and secondary fonts using PCL commands.
Depending on your model, you can also set any available fonts to be the printer's user default primary and secondary fonts using the printer's control panel. Refer to the User Guide for instructions on how to do this.
The factory default settings for both primary and secondary fonts are Brougham 12 point, 10 cpi Roman 8.
Specifying the primary font
When you specify primary font characteristics you send escape codes with '(' as the second character of the sequence. This tells the printer that the font characteristic you are specifying applies to the primary font.

Specifying the secondary font

When you specify secondary font characteristics you send escape codes with ')' as the second character of the sequence. This tells the printer that the font characteristic you are specifying applies to the secondary font.

Selecting the default fonts

To set the primary font settings to those of the printers default font and discard all the software settings you have made in the meantime, send the printer the following escape sequence:

Esc(3@ (27)(40)(51)(64) <1Bh><28h><33h><40h>

To set the secondary font settings to those of the printers default font send:

Esc)3@ (27)(41)(51)(64) <1Bh><29h><33h><40h>

Switching between the primary and secondary fonts

To select the primary font as the font for printing send the printer the SI control code:

SI (15) (0F)

To select the secondary font as the font for printing send the printer the SO control code:

SO (14) (0E)

Criteria for font selection

The printer will try to match your stated font requirements as best it can with the fonts available to it in the three font locations. In most cases you will be specifying a font you know to be present in one of the locations and the resulting printed text will appear exactly as you envisaged. However, if you specify a particular combination of font characteristics that is not possible, the printer will produce the closest possible match that it can by satisfying the following specifications in the order: the symbol set, spacing type, pitch (for monospaced fonts), the height, the stroke weight and the style. The meanings of each of these are explained in the following sub-sections.
Likewise, if you simply specify a font attribute that is not available, for example if you request a Utah Light font when only Utah Medium and Utah Bold are available in the font locations, the printer will simply ignore the requirement (light stroke weight, in this case) that it cannot fulfill.

Symbol set

The symbol set is the list of symbols that constitute a particular font. Normally symbol sets contain lower and upper case letters, numbers, punctuation marks and a selection of other commonly used symbols. Some symbol sets are designed for specific needs, for example, for generating text with mathematical expressions. The symbol set has the highest priority of all the characteristics you specify when you designate the font you require. If the symbol set you choose is available, but not in conjunction with any of the other characteristics you specify, the printer will satisfy your symbol set request at the expense of the rest of your designation and the text printed out may well look completely different from what you expected to see.

Symbol collections

The symbol collections contain many symbols and a symbol set is made from symbol collections by selecting the required symbols for unbound fonts. As symbol collections have more symbols than symbol sets, unbound fonts can have more symbols than bound fonts. Due to the compatibility between symbol sets and symbol collections, the printer searches the designated MSL or Unicode number by using a symbol set mapping table.

Type of character spacing

Character spacing is either fixed (monospacing), in which every printed character is allocated the same amount of space on the line, or proportional, where characters are spaced according to their shape and size. For any serious typographic work proportional spacing is essential since fixed spacing is unattractive and hard to read. In general monospacing is used with bitmap fonts, and proportional spacing is used with scalable fonts. However, proportionally spaced bitmap fonts do exist.

Pitch

Pitch is the number of characters that are printed per inch and therefore only applies to monospaced fonts. If you make a pitch selection while using a proportionally spaced font the command will have no immediate effect. However, the new pitch will be stored as part of the primary (or secondary) font designation and applied the next time a monospaced font is selected as the primary (or secondary) font.
The printer's in-built bitmap fonts all have a pitch of either 10, 12 or 16.66 characters per inch.

Height

Height refers to the height in points (1/72") of unaccented capital letters in a font. This is the generally accepted method of defining the height of a font's characters. Scaled fonts can be specified to an accuracy of 0.25 points.

Style

A font's style is defined by its posture (upright or italic), width (condensed, normal or expanded) and structure (solid, outline or shadow). Upright and italic bitmap fonts and scalable typefaces are available in the printer's ROM. However, these are all normal and solid fonts. To print using any of the other styles (for example, using Condensed Helsinki, or Outline Tennessee) you would have to download the requisite font or install a font card/cartridge containing it.

Stroke weight

Stroke weight refers to the thickness of the lines which make up the printed characters. Characters of normal line thickness are called medium. Thicker lines are referred to as bold or black and thinner lines as light or thin. You can specify 15 different stroke weights - 0 denotes medium weight, negative values signify thinner strokes, and positive values signify bolder (thicker) strokes. If you have the bold font available that matches your font designation, a stroke weight selection of 1 to 7 will produce bold text. Likewise, for light or thin text you would need to make the requisite light or thin font available for the stroke weight selection to have any effect.

Typeface

Typeface refers to the designed style of the characters. Commonly known typefaces include Times, Helvetica, Univers and Palatino. The printer has its own resident typefaces. When selecting a particular typeface ensure that it meets all your other specified criteria, otherwise the printer will substitute a font of a different typeface that can satisfy the other, higher priority criteria, such as style and stroke weight.

Font selection commands

User-defined symbol sets

User-defined symbol sets can be used with Unbound scalable fonts. Three new commands below are prepared for user-defined symbol set.

To define a symbol set, its ID code must be defined at first.
Next, a list of symbols for the symbol set must be downloaded.
Then, you can use the defined ID code for symbol set selection.

Symbol Set ID Code Command

Esc*c#R (27)(42)(99)#(82) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<52h>

- Value for # can be from 0 to 2047.
- This command defines the ID code for a user-defined symbol set which can be used to control symbol set selection.
- The symbol set ID code defined by this command must be calculated by using the following formula.

  Symbol Set ID Code = (# x 32) + (ID - 64)

  Symbol set selection values consists of numerical character(s) and alphabetical character.
  For example, 8U is the symbol set selection value for Roman-8. In this case, the Symbol set ID code is 277 as the result of the following calculation.

  (8 x 32) + (85 - 64) = 277

- Make sure to select an unused number for a new ID code that you define. If the ID code has been used already, the printer deletes the existing symbol set and defines the new symbol set.

Define Symbol Set

Esc(f#W[data] (27)(49)(102)#(87) <1Bh><28h><66h>#<57h>

- # value can be from 18 to 32767.
- # stands for number of bytes in the data which is followed this command.
- If an existing ID code is used for a user-defined symbol set, it is overwritten.
- Up to 2047 downloadable user-defined symbol sets can be stored subject to the printer's memory capacity.
- If a memory full error occurs while downloading the user-defined symbol set, the symbol set which is being downloaded becomes invalid.
- The symbol set which is defined by this command is temporary stored in the printer memory.
- The data followed this command should be in the following format.

	15 8 MSB	7 0 LSB
0 - 1	Header Size (18)	
2 - 3	Encoded symbol set designator	
4 - 5	Format	Symbol Set Type
6 - 7	First Code	
8 - 9	Last Code	
10 -	Character Requirements	
	Symbol Map [Last Code - First code + 1]	

(B)	Boolean	(0,1)
(UB)	Unsigned Byte	(0 ~ 255)
(SB)	Signed Byte	(-128 ~ 127)
(UI)	Unsigned Integer	(0 ~ 65535)
(SI)	Signed Integer	(- 32768 ~ 32767)
(ULI)	Unsigned Long Integer	(0 ~ 2^{32}-1)
(SLI)	Signed Long Integer	(-2^{31} ~ 2^{31} - 1)
(ASC**)	ASCII string array	(0 ~ **-1) of characters

0 -1: Header size (UI) - set to 18 or greater.
This value stands for the byte number of header.

2 -3 : Encoded Symbol Set Designator (UI) - should be as same as the ID code which is defined by **ESC*c#R**.

4 : Format (UB) - 1 for MSL (Intellifont), 3 for Unicode (TrueType).

5 : Symbol Set Type (UB) - 0, 1 or 2.
0 specifies a 7-bit font with character codes 20H to 7FH acceptable.
1 specifies a 8-bit font with character codes 20H to 7FH and 80H to FFH acceptable.
2 specifies 8-bit 256 all character fonts. Only when the printer is set to transparent print mode can the characters 0, 7~15, 27 be printed.

6 - 7: First Code (UI) - indicates the first code of definition data followed this header.

8 -9: Last Code (UI) - indicates the last code of definition data followed this header. This value should be more than the first code value. Also, the data followed this header should have (Last code - first code + 1) bytes.

10 - 17: Character Requirement Flag (8 bytes)

Used in conjunction with the character complement field in the header of the font descriptor, to decide the compatibility of a symbol set for an unbound font. This flag indicates which symbol collections are necessary to make the required symbol set.

Each bit in this field stands for the selection of each symbol collection. When set to 1, the symbol collection is included and when set to 0, the symbol collection is not included in the unbound scalable font.

Character Requirements for MSL Symbol index

Bit	Value	Designated Use
63	1	Basic Latin required (such as ISO 8859/1 Latin 1)
	0	Basic Latin not required
62	1	East European Latin required (such as ISO 8859/2 Latin 2)
	0	Basic European Latin not required
61	1	Turkish required (such as ISO 8859/9 Latin 5)
	0	Turkish not required
34	1	Math required (such as Math-8)
	0	Math not required
33	1	Semi-graphic required (such as PC-8 D/N)
	0	Semi-graphic not required
32	1	Dingbats required (such as ITC Zapf Dingbats series 100,series 200)
	0	Dingbats not required
2,1,0	000	MSL Symbol index

Character Requirements for Unicode Symbol index

Bit	Value	Designated Use
31	1	ASCII required (such as ISO 6 ASCII)
	0	ASCII not required
30	1	West Europe extensions required (such as ISO 69 French)
	0	West Europe extensions not required
29	1	East Europe extensions required (such as ISO 8859/2 Latin 2)
	0	East Europe extensions not required
28	1	Turkish extensions required (such as ISO 8859/9 Latin 5)
	0	Turkish extensions not required
27	1	Desktop Publishing extensions required (such as Windows 3.1)
	0	Desktop Publishing extensions not required
26	1	Accent extensions required (such as ISO 8859/1 Latin 1)
	0	Accent extentions not required
25	1	PCL extensions required (such as Roman-8)
	0	PCL extensions not required
24	1	Macintosh extensions required (such as MC text)
	0	Macintosh extensions not required
23	1	PostScript extensions required (such as PS Text)
	0	PostScript extensions not required
22	1	Code Page extensions required (such as PC-8)
	0	Code Page extensions not required
2,1,0	001	Unicode Symbol Index

Symbol Map (Array of UI)

The symbol map, which has a list of symbol index numbers, is used to define the symbols for the symbol set. This map defines the combination between symbol index number and character code.

Symbol set control command

Esc*c#S (27)(42)(99)#(83) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<53h>

- Values for # can be 0, 1, 2, 4, or 5.
- 0 specifies to delete all temporary and permanent user-defined symbol sets.
- 1 specifies to delete all temporary user-defined symbol sets.
- 2 specifies to delete current user-defined symbol set.
- 4 specifies to make current user-defined symbol set temporary.
- 5 specifies to make current user-defined symbol set permanent.

Selecting the symbol set

Esc(symbol set ID (27)(40) <1Bh><28h>

- This command selects the symbol set (character set) for the primary font.
- Symbol set IDs consist of a number followed by a letter.
- Default symbol set ID is Roman-8. If an invalid default symbol set ID is selected, the symbol set becomes Roman-8.
- Selectable symbol set varies depending on your printer model.

Symbol set	Set primary font	Symbol set	Set primary font
ISO 60 : Norwegian 1	Esc(0D	ISO 57 : Chinese	Esc(2K
ISO 61 : Norwegian 2	Esc(1D	ISO8859-1 (ECMA-94) Latin 1	Esc(0N
ISO 4 : United Kingdom	Esc(1E	Wingdings	Esc(579L
Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Esc(9E	PS Math	Esc(5M
ISO 25 : French	Esc(0F	Ventura Math	Esc(6M
ISO 69 : French	Esc(1F	Math-8	Esc(8M
HP German	Esc(0G	Symbol	Esc(19M
ISO 21 : German	Esc(1G	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2	Esc(2N
ISO 15 : Italian	Esc(0I	ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	Esc(5N
Microsoft Publishing	Esc(6J	ISO 11: Swedish; names	Esc(0S
Desk Top	Esc(7J	PS Text	Esc(10J
HP Spanish	Esc(1S	Ventura International	Esc(13J
ISO 17 : Spanish	Esc(2S	Ventura US	Esc(14J
ISO 10 : Swedish	Esc(3S	ISO 16 : Portuguese	Esc(4S
ISO 14 : JIS ASCII	Esc(0K	ISO 84 : Portuguese	Esc(5S
ISO 85 : Spanish	Esc(6S	Windows 3.1 Latin 5	Esc(5T
PC Turkish	Esc(9T	ISO 6 : ASCII	Esc(0U
Legal	Esc(1U	ISO 2 : IRV	Esc(2U
Roman 8	Esc(8U	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Esc(9U
PC-8	Esc(10U	PC-8 D/N	Esc(11U
PC-850	Esc(12U	Pi Font	Esc(15U
PC-852	Esc(17U	Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Esc (19U
MC Text	Esc(12J		

User-defined symbol sets are available for the HL-10h, HL-1260 and HL-660. They are defined by the command ESC (f # W.

Esc)symbol set ID (27)(41) <1Bh><29h>

- This command selects the symbol set (character set) for the secondary font.
- To select any of the above symbol sets for the secondary font simply substitute ')' for '(' in the command shown in the table.

```
10 REM ****** SELECT A CHARACTER SET ******
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- ROMAN-8 CHARACTER SET SELECTION ------
50 LPRINT ESC$+"(8U";
60 REM --- PRINT CHARACTERS ----
70 FOR I=160 TO 255
80 LPRINT CHR$(I);
90 NEXT
100 LPRINT
110 REM --- PC-8 CHARACTER SET SELECTION ------
120 LPRINT ESC$+"(10U";
130 REM --- PRINT CHARACTERS ----
140 FOR I=160 TO 255
150 LPRINT CHR$(I);
160 NEXT
170 LPRINT
180 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
190 LPRINT CHR$(12);
200 END
```

There is a further group of symbol sets that are available for Brother fonts only. You can select these as follows:

Esc(s#C (27)(40)(115)#(67) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<43h>

- This command selects the symbol set (character set) for the primary font.

Esc)s#C (27)(41)(115)#(67) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<43h>

- This command selects the symbol set (character set) for the secondary font.
- Brother symbol set IDs consist of a number only.

Symbol Set	Set primary font	Symbol set	Set primary font
Roman-8	Esc(s1C	Portuguese	Esc(s15C
US ASCII	Esc(s2C	Swiss German	Esc(s16C
German	Esc(s3C	American Spanish	Esc(s17C
UK English	Esc(s4C	Norwegian/Danish	Esc(s18C
French	Esc(s5C	Canadian	Esc(s19C
Dutch	Esc(s6C	Finnish/Swedish	Esc(s20C
Italian	Esc(s7C	South African	Esc(s21C
S. Spanish	Esc(s8C	PC-8 D/N	Esc(s23C
A. English WP	Esc(s9C	PC-8	Esc(s25C
UK ASCII/2	Esc(s10C	PC-850	Esc(s26C
Symbol	Esc(s11C	PC-860	Esc(s27C
International	Esc(s12C	PC-863	Esc(s28C
American English	Esc(s13C	PC-865	Esc(s29C
UK ASCII	Esc(s14C	Japanese English	Esc(s38C

- To select any of the above symbol sets for the secondary font simply substitute ‘)’ for ‘(’ in the command shown in the table.

```
10 REM ****** SELECTING CHARACTER SETS ******
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- GERMAN CHARACTER SET SELECTION ------
50 LPRINT ESC$+"(s3C";
60 REM --- PRINT CHARACTERS ----
70 FOR I=33 TO 127
80 LPRINT CHR$(I);
90 NEXT
100 LPRINT
110 REM --- FRENCH CHARACTER SET SELECTION ------
120 LPRINT ESC$+"(s5C";
130 REM --- PRINT CHARACTERS ----
140 FOR I=33 TO 127
150 LPRINT CHR$(I);
160 NEXT
170 LPRINT
180 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
190 LPRINT CHR$(12);
200 END
```

Selecting the type of character spacing

Esc(s#P (27)(40)(115)#(80) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<50h>

- This command selects the spacing type for the primary font.

Esc)s#P (27)(41)(115)#(80) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<50h>

- This command selects the spacing type for the secondary font.
- # = 0 selects fixed spacing and # = 1 selects proportional spacing.

```
10 REM ****** SELECTING A PROPORTIONAL OR FIXED SPACE FONT ******
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- SELECT A PROPORTIONALLY SPACED FONT ----
50 LPRINT ESC$+"(s1P";
60 FOR I=33 TO 127
70 LPRINT CHR$(I);
80 NEXT
90 LPRINT
100 REM --- SELECT A FIXED SPACE FONT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"(s0P";
120 FOR I=33 TO 127
130 LPRINT CHR$(I);
140 NEXT
150 LPRINT
160 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
170 LPRINT CHR$(12);
180 END
```

Selecting the pitch

Esc(s#H (27)(40)(115)#(72) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<48h>

- This command designates the pitch for the primary font.

Esc)s#H (27)(41)(115)#(72) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<48h>

- This command designates the pitch for the secondary font.
- # = the number of characters to be printed per inch. However, the actual size range is defined in combination with the character height.
- The printer's in-built bitmap fonts all have a pitch of either 10, 12 or 16.66 characters per inch, and you can specify any of these as follows:

  Esc&k0S **(10 cpi)**

  Esc&k2S **(16.66 cpi)**

  Esc&k4S **(12 cpi)**

- The selection will apply to whichever font you are currently specifying (primary or secondary).
- If the printer doesn't have the specified size of font, the next largest size of font is used. If the printer doesn't have a larger sized font, the next smallest one is used.
- This value is ignored by the printer when a proportional spaced font is selected.

```
10 REM ****** CHARACTER PITCH SELECTION ******
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- SELECT A 10 CPI PITCH FONT ----
50 LPRINT ESC$+"(s10H";
60 FOR I=33 TO 127
70 LPRINT CHR$(I);
80 NEXT
90 LPRINT
100 REM --- SELECT A 12 CPI PITCH FONT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"(s12H";
120 FOR I=33 TO 127
130 LPRINT CHR$(I);
140 NEXT
150 LPRINT
160 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
170 LPRINT CHR$(12);
180 END
```

Selecting the height

Esc(s#V (27)(40)(115)#(86) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<56h>

- This command designates the height of the primary font.

Esc)s#V (27)(41)(115)#(86) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<56h>

- This command designates the height of the secondary font.
- # is the size in points (1/72") from 0.25 to 999.75 in 0.25 increments.
- This value is ignored by the printer when a fixed-spaced scalable font is selected.

Scaling the scalable fonts vertically or horizontally

EscCR!#H (27)(13)(33)#(72) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<48h>

- This command designates the height of the scalable fonts.

EscCR!#V (27)(13)(33)#(86) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<56h>

- This command designates the width of the scalable fonts.
- # can be from 0.25 ~ 3.00 in 0.01 increments.
- # value is set to 0.25 when # is specified less than 0.25, and # value is set to 3.00 when # is specified bigger than 3.00.
- The value set by this command is initialized when the emulation change, Resetting, Test Printing, or Macro overlay is executed.

Selecting the style

Esc(s#S (27)(40)(115)#(83) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<53h>

- This command designates the style of the primary font.

Esc)s#S (27)(41)(115)#(83) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<53h>

- This command designates the style of the secondary font.
- If you select a particular style (for example upright condensed outline) the command will only take effect if the font is available in one of the three font locations.

Value	Font Style
0	Upright & solid
1	Italic
4	Condensed
5	Condensed italic
8	Compressed, or extra condensed
24	Expanded
32	Outline
64	Inline
128	Shadowed
160	Outline shadowed

```
10 REM ****** PRINT IN ITALIC & UPRIGHT STYLE ******
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- PRINT USING AN ITALIC FONT ----
50 LPRINT ESC$+"(s1S";
60 REM --- PRINT FONT ----
70 FOR I=33 TO 127
80 LPRINT CHR$(I);
90 NEXT
100 LPRINT
110 REM --- PRINT USING AN UPRIGHT FONT ---
120 LPRINT ESC$+"(s0S";
130 REM --- PRINT FONT ----
140 FOR I=33 TO 127
150 LPRINT CHR$(I);
160 NEXT
170 LPRINT
180 REM -- PAPER EJECT ---
190 LPRINT CHR$(12);
200 END
```

Selecting the stroke weight

Esc(s#B (27)(40)(115)#(66) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<42h>

- This command designates the stroke weight of the primary font.

Esc)s#B (27)(41)(115)#(66) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<42h>

- This command designates the stroke weight of the secondary font
- # is an integer between –7 and 7. A value of 0 signifies a medium stroke weight, negative numbers signify thin or light stroke weights and positive numbers signify bold stroke weights.
- If you select a light or bold stroke weight the command will only have an effect if the font is available in one of the three font locations.

Selecting the typeface

Esc(s#T (27)(40)(115)#(84) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<54h>

- This command designates the typeface of the primary font.

Esc)s#T (27)(41)(115)#(84) <1Bh><29h><73h>#<54h>

- This command designates the typeface of the secondary font.
- If the typeface you specify is not available in any of the three font source locations the printer will substitute a font of a different typeface.
- The available values vary with the printer model. The following table shows the value for each typeface and availability.

Typeface	Set primary font	Set secondary font	6V	10V	10h	660	1260
Albertville	Esc(s4362T	Esc)s4362T			*	*	*
Antique Oakland	Esc(s4168T	Esc)s4168T			*	*	*
Brougham	Esc(s4099T	Esc)s4099T			*	*	*
Cleveland Condensed	Esc(s4140T	Esc)s4140T			*	*	*
Connecticut	Esc(s4116T	Esc)s4116T			*	*	*
Guatemala Antique	Esc(s4197T	Esc)s4197T			*	*	*
LetterGothic	Esc(s4102T	Esc)s4102T			*	*	*
Maryland	Esc(s4297T	Esc)s4297T			*	*	*
Oakland	Esc(s4113T	Esc)s4113T			*	*	*
PC Brussels	Esc(s4143T	Esc)s4143T	*	*	*	*	*
PC Tennessee	Esc(s4101T	Esc)s4101T	*	*	*	*	*
Utah	Esc(s4148T	Esc)s4148T	*	*	*	*	*
BR Symbol	Esc(s16686T	Esc)s16686T			*	*	*
Helsinki	Esc(s16602T	Esc)s16602T			*	*	*
Tennessee	Esc(s16901T	Esc)s16901T			*	*	*
W Dingbats	Esc(s31402T	Esc)s31402T			*	*	*
Atlanta	Esc(s155T	Esc)s155T			*		*
Calgary	Esc(s159T	Esc)s159T			*		*
Copenhagen	Esc(s157T	Esc)s157T			*		*
Portugal	Esc(s158T	Esc)s158T			*		*
Letter Gothic16.66	Esc(s130T	Esc)s130T	*	*	*	*	*
Brougham	Esc(s128T	Esc)s128T	*	*			
OCR-A	Esc(s104T	Esc)s104T			*	*	*

OCR-B	Esc(s110T	Esc)s110T	*	*	*
Bermuda Script	Esc(s134T	Esc)s134T			*
Germany	Esc(s132T	Esc)s132T			*
San Diego	Esc(s133T	Esc)s133T			*
US Roman	Esc(s135T	Esc)s135T			*

Font orientation

The printer's built-in fonts are all portrait fonts. If you switch the orientation of the logical page to landscape and select a font, the printer will automatically create the landscape font in its memory. This saves you having to make the landscape font available by installing a card/cartridge or by downloading the font, but takes up printer memory and may cause the printer to run out of space when trying to compose complex page layouts.

Transparent print data

Esc&p#X (character codes)
(27)(38)(112)#(88) <1Bh><26h><70h>#<58h>

- This command enables you to print characters which are normally unprintable.
- # is the number of bytes of data that follow the command.
- Each byte of data is interpreted as a character code and the corresponding character in the currently selected symbol set is printed (if there is one). You can use this command to print the symbols in the character set which do not appear on the keyboard.
- If there is no character in the current symbol set corresponding to a specified code, a space is printed.
- The command is useful when using character sets like the IBM All Character Set in which every single code has a corresponding character.
- Any control codes within the data will have no effect. The control code byte is treated as a character code.

Underlining text

Esc&d#D (27)(38)(100)#(68) <1Bh><26h><64h>#<44h>

- This command enables the underline facility.
- This command disables the underline facility.
- # is either 0 or 3. A value of 0 signifies fixed underlining, 3 specifies floating underlining.
- Fixed underlining means that the underline is drawn in the same place for all the characters of a particular font.
- Floating underlining means that the underline is drawn in the same place for all the characters on a particular line.

Esc&d@ (27)(38)(100)(64) <1Bh><26h><64h><40h>

Downloadable font manipulation

Fonts that you have bought on diskette can be downloaded to the printer from diskette or hard disk using the DOS COPY command or a font downloading applications program. To create your own fonts you can use PCL commands to send the various blocks of data that comprise a downloadable font. There are also a number of PCL commands that enable you to manage fonts that you have already downloaded (both those that you have bought and those you may have created yourself).
If you are using commercially available fonts consult the documentation that came with them for information on how best to send them to the printer.

Font ID

Esc&*c#D (27)(38)(42)(99)#(68) <1Bh><26h><2Ah><63h>#<44h>

- This command identifies the numerical ID of the font on which subsequent operations will be performed.
- # is the font ID number.
- Use this command to specify the ID number of a font that you are about to download, or of a font already in printer memory that you want to perform a particular operation on it.
- If you specify the number of a font that already exists in memory and then download a new font from your computer, the new font will overwrite the original font and assume the ID number that you specified.

Operations on downloaded fonts

Esc*c#F (27)(38)(42)(99)#(70) <1Bh><26h><2Ah><63h>#<46h>

- This command performs an operation on one or more downloaded fonts.
- # identifies the operation to be performed.
- # = 0 Delete all downloaded fonts from the printer’s memory.
- # = 1 Delete all temporary fonts from the printer’s memory.
  (Fonts can be made permanent so as to be saved when the printer is reset - see below).
- # = 2 Delete the font (whose ID number was most recently specified) from the printer’s memory.
- # = 3 Delete the character (whose character code was most recently specified) from the font (whose ID number was most recently specified).
  (The command for specifying a character code is given in the section entitled Creating Downloadable Fonts).
- # = 4 Make the font (whose ID number was most recently specified) temporary
- If # = 5 Make the font (whose ID number was most recently specified) permanent
- If # = 6 Make/Assign a copy of the current font (primary or secondary) with the last specified ID number.
- If # = 1026 Delete the font (whose ID number was most recently specified) from the installed PCMCIA card.
- If # = 1028 Delete all download fonts in the installed PCMCIA card
- If # = 1029 Save the font (whose ID number was most recently specified) into the installed PCMCIA card.
  (All download fonts on PCMCIA card are permanent fonts.)
- #=1026, 1028, 1029 is available only when the PCMCIA memory card is installed to HL-1260 & HL-10h.

Selecting a downloaded font

Esc(#X (27)(40)#(88) <1Bh><28h>#<58h>

- This command selects a downloaded font as the primary font.

Esc)#X (27)(41)#(88) <1Bh><29h>#<58h>

- This command selects a downloaded font as the secondary font.
- # is the ID number of the downloaded font.

Creating downloadable fonts

Downloading

You can download existing fonts (that is, ones that you have bought or ones that you have created previously) using either a font downloading application program or the DOS command

```
COPY/b <filename> PRN
```

In addition, some word-processing and DeskTop publishing programs will automatically download the fonts that have been used in a document when that document is printed.
Alternatively, you can create a new downloadable font and download the necessary blocks of data that comprise the downloadable font using PCL commands.

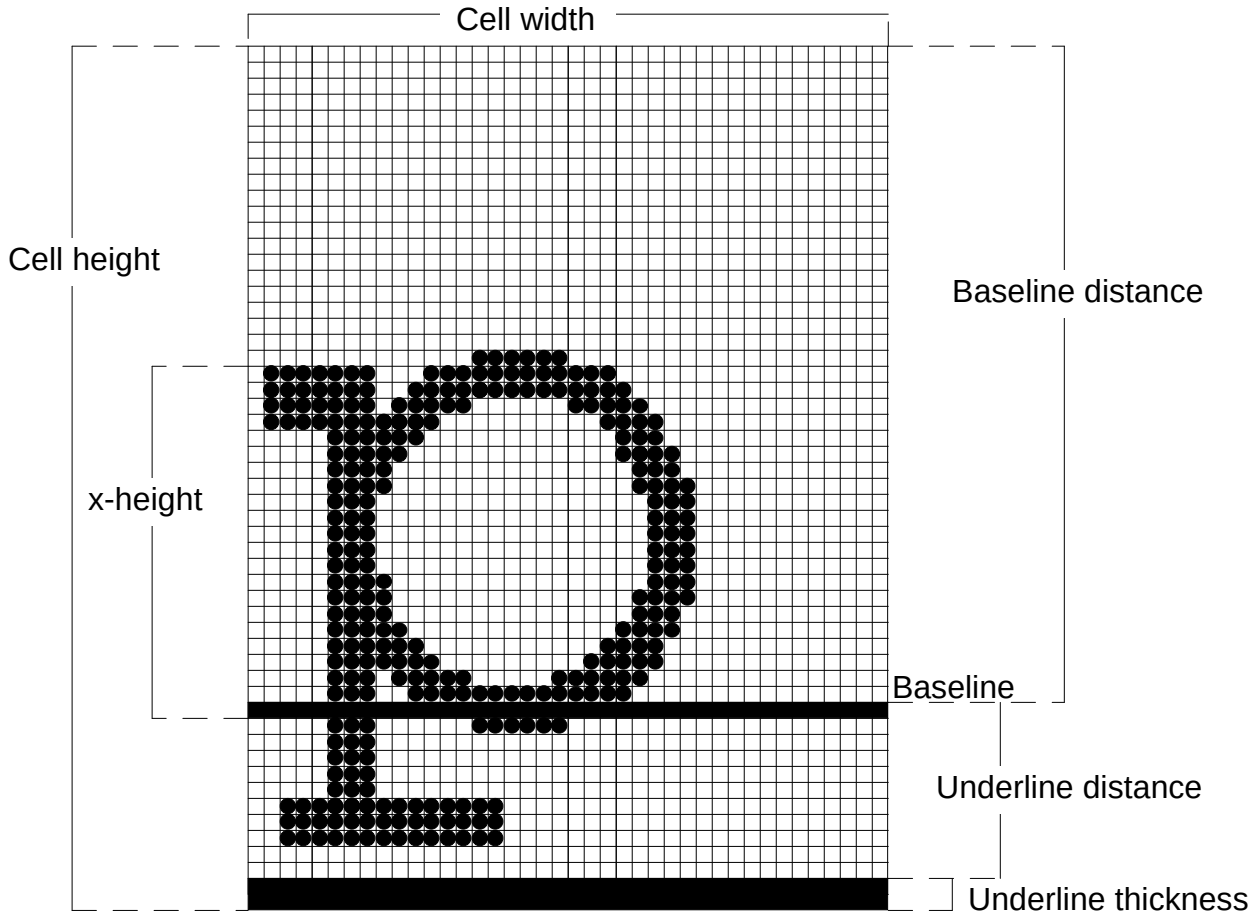
To send a font, you must send
* a font descriptor block followed by the character code
* a character descriptor
* data for each character

The printer can download 3 types of fonts.
Bitmapped fonts, Bound Scalable fonts, and Unbound scalable fonts.

Sending the font descriptor

Esc)s#W (font descriptor data) (27)(40)(115)#(58) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<88h>

- This command sends the font descriptor to the printer.
- # should be in the range 0 to 32767.
- # is the number of bytes in the descriptor.
- Characters are designed on a notional grid known as the character cell. The positioning and shape of each character on the grid defines its size, shape and alignment to the other characters in the font.


Cell width
Cell height
Baseline distance
x-height
Baseline
Underline distance
Underline thickness

- The Font descriptor has information for the whole character set. When this font descriptor is sent to the printer with a font header to identify the font ID, the descriptor parameters become the basis of the downloaded fonts.

- The data format for each type of font descriptor block is shown below.

< Bitmapped font > ··· This type of font descriptor is not recommended for HL-10h,1260 and 660.

Byte	15 (MSB) 8	7 (LSB) 0
0	Font Descriptor Size (64)	
2	Descriptor Format (0)	Font Type
4	Style MSB Reserved	
6	Base Line Position	
8	Cell Width	
10	Cell Height	
12	Orientation	Spacing
14	Symbol Set	
16	Pitch (Default HMI)	
18	Height	
20	x-Height	
22	Width Type St	yle LSB
24	Stroke Weight T	ypeface LSB
26	Typeface MSB Serif St	yle
28	Quality	Placement
30	Underline Distance	Underline Height
32	Text Height	
34	Text Width	
36	First Code	
38	Last Code	
40	Pitch Extended	Height Extended
42	Cap Height	
44 - 47	Font Number	
48 - 63	Font Name	
64	Copyright (optional)	

< Special Bitmapped font >

Byte	15 (MSB) 8	7 (LSB) 0
0	Font Descriptor Size (68)	
2	Descriptor Format (20)	Font Type
4	Style MSB Reserved	
6	Base Line Position	
8	Cell Width	
10	Cell Height	
12	Orientation	Spacing
14	Symbol Set	
16	Pitch (Default HMI)	
18	Height	
20	x-Height	
22	Width Type St	yle LSB
24	Stroke Weight T	ypeface LSB
26	Typeface MSB Serif St	yle
28	Quality	Placement
30	Underline Distance	Underline Height
32	Text Height	
34	Text Width	
36	First Code	
38	Last Code	
40	Pitch Extended	Height Extended
42	Cap Height	
44 - 47	Font Number	
48 - 63	Font Name	
64	X Resolution	
66	Y Resolution	
n	Copyright (Optional)	

< Intellifont Scalable Bound font >

Byte	15 (MSB) 8	7 (LSB) 0
0	Font Descriptor Size (>80)	
2	Descriptor Format (10)	Font Type
4	Style MSB	Reserved
6	Base Line Position	
8	Cell Width	
10	Cell Height	
12	Orientation	Spacing
14	Symbol Set	
16	Pitch (Default HMI)	
18	Height	
20	x-Height	
22	Width Type St	yle LSB
24	Stroke Weight T	ypeface LSB
26	Typeface MSB Serif St	yle
28	Quality	Placement
30	Underline Distance	Underline Height
32	Text Height	
34	Text Width	
36	First Code	
38	Last Code	
40	Pitch Extended	Height Extended
42	Cap Height	
44 - 47	Font Number	
48 - 63	Font Name	
64	Scale Factor	
66	Master X Resolution	
68	Master Y Resolution	
70	Master Underline Position	
72	Master Underline Thickness (Height)	
74	OR Threshold	
76	Global Italic Angle	
Desc. size	Global Intellifont Data Size	
80	Global Intellifont Data	
n	Copyright (optional)	
	Reserved	Checksum

< Intellifont Scalable Unbound font >

Byte	15 (MSB) 8	7 (LSB) 0
0	Font Descriptor Size (<88)	
2	Descriptor Format (11)	Font Type (10)
4	Style MSB	Reserved
6	Base Line Position	
8	Cell Width	
10	Cell Height	
12	Orientation	Spacing
14	Symbol Set	
16	Pitch (Default HMI)	
18	Height	
20	x-Height	
22	Width Type	Style LSB
24	Stroke Weight	Typeface LSB
26	Typeface MSB	Serif Style
28	Quality	Placement
30	Underline Distance	Underline Thickness
32	Text Height	
34	Text Width	
36	Reserved	
38	Number of Contours (Characters)	
40	Pitch Extended	Height Extended
42	Cap Height	
44 - 47	Font Number	
48 - 63	Font Name	
64	Scale Factor	
66	Master X Resolution	
68	Master Y Resolution	
70	Master Underline Position	
72	Master Underline Thickness	
74	OR Threshold	
76	Global Italic Angle	
78-85	Character Complement	
Desc. Size - 2	Global Intellifont Data size	
Desc. size	Global Intellifont Data	
n	Copyright (optional)	
	Reserved	Checksum

< TrueType Scalable Bound font >

Byte	15 (MSB) 8	7 (LSB) 0
0	Font Descriptor Size (>72)	
2	Descriptor Format (15)	Font Type
4	Style MSB	Reserved
6	Base Line Position	
8	Cell Width	
10	Cell Height	
12	Orientation	Spacing
14	Symbol Set	
16	Pitch (Default HMI)	
18	Height	
20	x-Height	
22	Width Type	Style LSB
24	Stroke Weight	Typeface LSB
26	Typeface MSB	Serif Style
28	Quality	Placement
30	Underline Distance	Underline Thickness
32	Text Height	
34	Text Width	
36	First Code	
38	Last Code / Number of characters	
40	Pitch Extended	Height Extended
42	Cap Height	
44 - 47	Font Number	
48 - 63	Font Name	
64	Scale Factor	
66	Master Underline position	
68	Master Underline Thickness	
70	Font Scaling Technology	Variety
72	[additional data may be inserted here]	
Desc. size	Segmented Font data	
# - 2	Reserved	Checksum

- Attributes are in one of six numerical formats.
  Unsigned integer (UI) 0 to 65535
  Unsigned long integer (ULI) 0 to $2^{32}-1$
  Signed integer (SI) –32768 to 32767
  Unsigned byte (UB) 0 to 255
  Signed byte (SB) –128 to 127
  Boolean 0 or 1

- Font descriptor size (UI) - the size in bytes of the font descriptor block. Minimum size values for each font type are shown in the above figure.

- Descriptor format (UB) - format type of the font.

0	Bitmapped font
10	Intellifont bound scalable font
11	Intellifont unbound scalable font
15	TrueType bound scalable font
20	Special bitmapped font

- Font type (UB) - specifies type of symbol set.

  0 Bound font. A 7-bit font with character codes 20H to 7FH acceptable.

  1 Bound font. A 8-bit font with character codes 20H to 7FH and 80H to FFH acceptable.

  2 Bound font. 8-bit all character codes are printable. However, 00H, 07H to 0FH and 1BH are printable only when the data is defined as transparent print data.

  10 Unbound font. Character codes corresponding to MSL numbers are acceptable.

  11 Unbound font. Character codes corresponding to Unicode numbers are acceptable.

  When a 7-bit font or 8-bit font is selected, it is possible for codes 00H to FFH to load characters or delete them. It is also possible to print the characters if they are defined as transparent print data.

- Style MSB (UW) - combined with the Style LSB to make the style word. The value of the style word is calculated as follows: style word = posture + (4 width) + (32 structure).

Value	Posture
0	Upright
1	Italic
2	Alternate Italic
3	Reserved

Value	Width
0	Normal
1	Condensed
2	Compressed or Extra Condensed
3	Extra compressed
4	Ultra compressed
5	Reserved
6	Extended or Expanded
7	Extra Extended or Extra Expanded

Value	Structure
0	Solid
1	Outline
2	In-line
3	Contour
4	Solid with Shadow
5	Outline with Shadow
6	Inline with Shadow
7	Contour with Shadow
8-11	Patterned (Complex patterns, subject to type family)
12-15	Patterned with Shadow
16	Inverse
17	Inverse in Open Border
18-30	Reserved
31	Unknown structure

The reserved bits should be set to Zero.

- Baseline position (UI) -

  Bitmap font - the height in dots from the top of the character cell to the baseline. The units of dots is the same as the defined font resolution. This number can be in the range 0 to (cell height - 1).
  Intellifont scalable - a Ycoordinate in the design cell.
  TrueType scalable - the height in dots from the top of the character cell to the baseline. This should be set to 0.

- Cell width (UI) - ignored by this printer. the width in dots of the character cell. This can be from 1 to 65535.
- Cell height (UI) - ignored by this printer. the height in dots of the character cell. This can be from 1 to 65535.
- Orientation (UB) - 0(portrait), 1(landscape), 2(reverse portrait) or 3(reverse landscape). Ignored by this printer.
- Spacing (B) - the type of spacing, 0 (fixed pitch) or 1 (proportional spacing).
- Symbol set (UI) - a symbol set ID consists of a number and a letter. The symbol set attribute value is calculated as follows: symbol set = (32 x number) + (ASCII value of letter - 64). For example, Math-8 has the symbol set ID '8M' so it would be encoded as (32 x 8) + (77 – 64) = 269.

Symbol set name	Symbol set ID	Symbol set name	Symbol set ID
Default Set	0@	Math-7	0A
Line Draw-7	0B	HP Large Characters (264x Terminals)	0C
ISO 60: Danish/Norwegian	0D	ISO 61: Norwegian version 2	1D
Roman Extensions	0E	ISO 4: United Kingdom	1E
ISO 25: French	0F	ISO 69: French	1F
HP German	0G	ISO 21: German	1G
Greek-8	8G	Hebrew-7	0H
Hebrew-8	8H	ISO 15: Italian	0I
Microsoft Publishing	6J	DeskTop	7J
Document	8J	PS Text	10J
Ventura International	13J	Ventura US	14J
ISO 14: JIS ASCII	0K	ISO 13: Katakana	1K
ISO 57: Chinese	2K	Kana-8	8K
Korean-8	9K	Line Draw-7 (Same as 0B)	0L
HP Block Characters	1L	Tax Line Draw	2L
Line Draw-8	8L	Math-7 (Same as 0A)	0M
Tech-7	1M	PS Math	5M
Ventura Math	6M	Math-8	8M
ECMA-94 Latin 1 (ISO 8859/1)	0N	ECMA-94 Latin 2 (ISO 8859/2)	2N
ECMA-128 Latin 5 (ISO 8859/9)	5N	ECMA-113/88 Latin/Cyrillic	10N
OCR A	0O	OCR B	1O
OCR M	2O	APL (Typewriter Paired)	0P
APL (Bit Paired)	1P	Specials	xQ
Cyrillic ASCII (ECMA-113/86,	0R	Cyrillic	1R
PC Cyrillic	3R	ISO 11: Swedish for Names	0S
HP Spanish	1S	ISO 17: Spanish	2S
ISO 10: Swedish	3S	ISO 16: Portuguese	4S
ISO 84: Portuguese	5S	ISO 85: Spanish	6S
HP European Spanish	7S	HP Latin Spanish	8S
HP-GL Download	16S	HP-GL Drafting	17S
HP-GL Special Symbols	18S	Turkish-8	8T
Thai-8	0T	ISO 6: ASCII	0U
Legal	1U	ISO 2: International Reference Version	2U
HP-GL Language Set	5U	OEM-1	7U
Roman-8	8U	Windows	9U
PC-8	10U	PC-8 D/N (Danish/Norwegian)	11U
PC-850	12U	PC-852	17U
Pi Font	15U	Arabic (McKay's version)	0V
Arabic-8	8V	3 of 9 Barcode	0Y
Industrial 2 of 5 Barcode	1Y	Matrix 2 of 5 Barcode	2Y
Interleaved 2 of 5 Barcode	4Y	CODABAR Barcode	5Y
MSI/Plessey Barcode	6Y	Code 11 Barcode	7Y
UPC/EAN Barcode	8Y	USPS Zip	15Y

- Pitch (UI) - This value defines the default spacing for each point size in 1/4 dots. Combined with Pitch Extended to specify the pitch of the font in 1/1024 dots. This is available for fixed pitch font characters including the space character, and the space character of proportional spacing fonts.

  For example, in case of a 17 cpi font (at 600 dpi),

  $$\frac{1\ \text{inch}}{17\ \text{chara.}} \times \frac{600\ \text{dpi}}{1\ \text{inch}} \times \frac{4}{1} = 141.17646$$

  the value of Pitch (UI) should be 141.
  The remainder of 0.17646 is calculated as pitch extended:

  $$\frac{0.17646}{4} \times \frac{256}{1} = 45.17376$$

  the value for pitch extended is 45.

  For Intellifont-scalable fonts only, the default HMI is calculated as follows.

  Default HMI (in dots) = (300 x master design pitch x required point size) ÷
  {Master x Resolution ÷(height x 8)}

  Default HMI (in dots) =
  (300 x master design pitch x required point size) ÷ {72.307 x scale factor}

- Height (UI) - specifies the height of the font in 1/4 dots. Combined with Height Extended to specify the height of the font in 1/1024 dots. This value can be converted to the point size (1/72").
  For example, in case of a 10 point font at 300 dpi,

  $$10\ \text{point} \times \frac{1}{72} \times \frac{300\ \text{dots}}{1\ \text{inch}} \times \frac{4}{1\ \text{dots}} = 166.667$$

  This value is normally set to 2000 for Intellifont and should be set to zero for TrueType fonts.

- x-height (UI) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This word specifies the height (for Bit mapped fonts) or the distance from the baseline (for Scalable fonts) of a lower case ‘x’ in 1/4 dots.

- Width type (SB) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This byte specifies the fonts character width according to the table below.

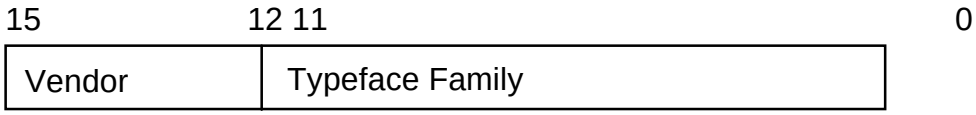
Value	Width type
–5	Ultra compressed
–4	Extra compressed
–3	Compressed or Extra condensed
–2	Condensed
0	Normal
2	Expanded
3	Extra expanded

- Style LSB (UB) - see Style MSB.

- Stroke weight (SB) - valid values are from –7 to +7. 0 denotes the normal (Roman) stroke width, –7 is the lightest possible stroke and 7 is the boldest.

Value	Stroke Weight
–7	Ultra thin
–6	Extra thin
–5	Thin
–4	Extra light
–3	Light
–2	Demi light
–1	Semi light
0	**Medium, Book, or Text**
1	Semi bold
2	Demi bold
3	Bold
4	Extra bold
5	Black
6	Extra black
7	Ultra black

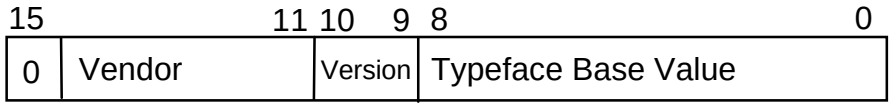
- Typeface family (UB) – the typeface. This word is made up of the Typeface MSB and the Typeface LSB and identifies the typeface by number.
  Bits 0 to 11 specify the typeface family and bits 12 to 15 specify the vending company.



Value	Vendor
0	Reserved
1	Agfa Division, Miles Inc.
2	Bitstream Inc.
3	Linotype Company
4	The Monotype Corporation plc
5	Adobe Systems Inc.

The Typeface family number can be 0 to 4095. This value is calculated as follows;
(TrueType base value) + (Vendor value x 4096) = Typeface Family

<Previous Models>
The typeface word consists of four fields. Bits 0 to 8 specify the typeface family, bits 9 to 10 indicate the version number, bits 11 to 14 identify the vending company, and bit 15 is always set to zero.



- Serif style (UB) -
  Bitmapped font - ignored by this printer.
  Scalable font - values for the lower 6 bits are ignored and values for the upper 2 bits indicates the serif style. Bit 6 indicates sans serif and bit 7 indicates serif.

- Quality (UB) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This byte specifies the fonts quality according to the following table.

Value	Quality
0	Data processing
1	Near letter quality
2	Letter quality

- Placement (SB) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This byte specifies the placement of characters relative to the baseline according to the following table.

Value	Placement
1	Superior
0	Normal
–1	Inferior

- Underline distance (SB) -
  Bitmapped fonts - the distance in dots from the baseline to the underline. A positive value places the underline above the baseline, a negative value places it below the baseline. A value of 0 places it on the baseline.

  Scalable fonts - ignored by this printer. This value should be set to 0.

- Underline height (UB) - the height of underline itself.
  Bitmapped fonts - this value is fixed at 3 dots.
  Scalable fonts - ignored by this printer. This value should be set to 0.

- Text height (UI) - ignored by this HL Series printer.
  This word specifies the spacing between successive lines of text in 1/4 dots for bitmapped fonts and in design units for scalable fonts. This is normally about 1.2 times the fonts height.

- Text width (UI) - ignored by this HL Series printer.
  This word specifies the average width of the fonts lowercase characters in 1/4 dots for bitmapped fonts and in design units for scalable fonts.

- First code (UI) - ignored by this printer. This word specifies the character code of the first (lowest numbered) printable character in the font.

- Last code (UI) - specifies the character code of the last (highest numbered) character in the font. If this value is less than 255, it is recognized as 00FFH.

- Pitch extended (UB) - the fractional part of the character pitch. For a 17 cpi font the bytes value would be calculated as follows:
  - 1200/17 = 70.588 The Pitch byte takes the value 70.
  - Pitch Extended = 0.588 X 256 = 150 (rounded down).

  (According to HP's manual, this should be set to 0.) This printer ignores the value for scalable fonts.

- Height extended (UB) - the fractional part of the height of the font. For a 10 point font the bytes value would be calculated as follows:

  1200 X 10/72 = 166.667, the Height byte takes the value 166

  Height Extended = 0.667 X 256 = 170 (rounded down).

  Point size = (character height x 256 + extended character height) x 300 / (72 x 1024)

  (According to HP's manual, this should be set to 0.) This printer ignores the value for scalable fonts.

- Cap height data (UI) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This word specifies for the font the distance between the baseline and the top of an unaccented capital letter (for example, ‘H’), as a percentage of the font’s em rule, ‘—’.

- Font number (ULI) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This 4-byte field specifies the number assigned to the font by the vending company. The number is stored as a hexadecimal value in the lower three bytes, bytes 44, 45 and 46.

- Font name (16 bytes) - ignored by this HL Series printer. This 16-byte field can be used to specify a name for the font.

- X-Resolution (UI) - specifies the resolution in the X-scan direction.
  This value can be 300 or 600 for bitmapped fonts, and is normally set to 2540 for Intellifont scalable fonts.
  This is used for scaling the X-coordinates of font data to the required point size.

  After scaling (in dots) =
  (300 x the required point size x X-coordinate) ÷ {72.307 x scale factor (8782)}
  After scaling (in dots) =
  (300 x the required point size x X-coordinate) ÷ {Master X-resolution x (Height ÷ 8) }

- Y-Resolution (UI) - specifies the resolution in the Y-scan direction.
  This value should be set to 300 or 600 dpi for special bitmapped fonts and is not available for Bitmapped font and TrueType font.
  This is normally set to 2540 for Intellifont -scalable fonts and is used for scaling the Y-coordinates of the font data to the required point size.

  This value is calculated as:

  After scaling (in dots) = (300 x the required point size x Y-coordinate) ÷ (72.307 x scale factor (8782))

  After scaling (in dots) = (300 x the required point size x Y-coordinate) ÷
  {Master Y-resolution x (Height ÷8)}

- Scale Factor (UI) - specifies the number of design units per Em. This value can be the unit for the metrics of Intellifont / TrueType scalable fonts.

  This is normally set to 8782 and calculated for Intellifont as follows:

- Scale factor x 72.307 = resolution x height ÷ 8

- This is normally set to 2048 for TrueType fonts.

- Master Underline position (UI) - Specifies the distance from the baseline to the top of the underline in design units and this is an alternative for "Underline Position (bit 30)" only for scalable fonts.

- Master Underline height (UI) - specifies the height of the underline itself in design units and this is an alternative for "Underline Thickness (bit 31)" only for scalable fonts.

- Font Scaling Technology (UB) - specifies the type of font scaling technology for any scalable fonts.

Value	Font scaling technology
0	Intellifont
1	TrueType font

- Variety (UB) - only for TrueType fonts, this value should be set to 0.

- OR (LRE) Threshold (UI) - specifies the pixel size in design units. This is switched on between scaling the font and its rasterization.

- Global Italic Angle (SI) - specifies the italic angle as a tangent relative to the vertical. The value 0 makes upright fonts.

- Global Intellifont Data Size (UI) - indicates the size of the global Intellifont data block.
- Global Intellifont Data - includes the global intellifont data.
- Character Complement (Array of UB) - identifies the symbol set compatibility for unbound fonts used with the Character Requirement flag in the symbol set descriptor.

MSL Symbol Index

Bit Field	Designated Use
58 - 63	Reserved for Latin fonts.
55 - 57	Reserved for Cyrillic fonts.
52 - 54	Reserved for Arabic fonts.
50 - 51	Reserved for Greek fonts.
48 - 49	Reserved for Hebrew fonts.
3 - 47	Miscellaneous uses (South Asian, Armerian, other alphabets, bar codes, OCR, Math, PC Semi-graphics, etc.)
0 - 2	Symbol Index field. 111 - MSL Symbol Index

Unicode Symbol Index

Bit Field	Designated Use
32 - 63	Miscellaneous uses (South Asian, Armenian, other alphabets, bar codes, OCR, Math, etc.)
28 - 31	Reserved for Latin fonts.
22 - 27	Reserved for platform / application variant fonts.
3 - 21	Reserved for Cyrillic, Arabic, Greek and Hebrew fonts.
0 - 2	Symbol Index field. 110 - Unicode Symbol Index

MSL Symbol Index Character Complement bits

Bit Field	Designated Use
63	0 if font is compatible with standard Latin character sets (e.g., Roman-8, ISO 8859-1 Latin 1); otherwise set to 1.
62	0 if font is compatible with East European Latin character sets (e.g., ISO 8859-2 Latin 2); otherwise set to 1.
61	0 if font contains Turkish character sets (e.g., ISO 8859/9 Latin 5); otherwise set to 1.
34	0 if font has access to the math characters of the Math-8, PS Math and Ventura Math character sets; otherwise set to 1.
33	0 if font has access to the semi-graphic character of the PC-8, PC-850, etc. character sets; otherwise set to 1.
32	0 if font is compatible with ITC Zapf Dingbats series 100, 200, etc.; otherwise set to 1.
2,1,0	111 if font is arranged in MSL symbol Index order.

Unicode Symbol Index Character Complement bits

Bit Field	Designated Use
31	0 if font is compatible with 7-bit ASCII; otherwise set to 1.
30	0 if font is compatible with ISO 8859/1 Latin 1 (West Europe) character sets; otherwise set to 1.
29	0 if font is compatible with ISO 8859/2 Latin 2 (East Europe) character sets; otherwise set to 1.
28	0 if font is compatible with Latin 5 (Turkish) character sets (e.g., ISO 8859/9 Latin 5,PC-Turkish); otherwise set to 1.
27	0 if font is compatible with Desktop Publishing character sets (e.g., Windows 3.1 Latin 1, DeskTop, MC Text); otherwise set to 1.
26	0 if font is compatible with character sets requiring a wider selection of accents (e.g., MC Text, ISo 8859/1 Latin 1); otherwise set to 1.
25	0 if font is compatible with traditional PCL character sets (e.g., Roman-8, Legal, ISO 4 United Kingdom); otherwise set to 1.
24	0 if font is compatible with the Macintosh character set (MS Text); otherwise set to 1. 0 if font is compatible with PostScript Standard Encoding (PS Text); otherwise set to 1.
23	0 if font is compatible with Code Pages (e.g., PC-8, PC-850, PC-Turk, etc.); otherwise set to 1.
22	110 if font is arranged in Unicode Symbol Index order.
2,1,0	

- Checksum - This should be set to a value which, when added to the contents of the 64 bytes of this font descriptor data produces a total of 0.

- Descriptor size - segmented font data.

	MSB 15 8	LSB 7 0
x	First segment, segment identifier	
x + 2	First segment, Segment size	
x + 4	First segment, Data segment	
x + 4 + 1st seg. size	Second segment,segment identifier,	Size, Data segment
|	|	
# - 6	Null segment identifier	
# - 4	Null segment size	
# - 2	Reserved	Checksum

This segment follows just after the font header for TrueType. Each segment is divided into segment identifier, segment size, and data segment parts.

*Segment Identifier (UI) -
Each item in the data segment part has an identification number.

Value	Mnemonic	Data Segment
17219	CC	Character Complement
17232	CP	Copyright
18260	GT	Global TrueType Data
20545	PA	Panose Description
22618	XW	X windows font name
65535		Null Segment

*Segment Size (UI) - indicates the size of each item in the data segment.

*Data segment -
AP - Application support segment (reserved)
CC - Character Complement
Function and form are as same as character complement flag in the font descriptor. This is only for unbound fonts.
CP - Copyright
Value should be ASCII data.
GI - Global Intellifont data (reserved)
GT - Global TrueType Data
This segment consists of a table directory and several tables for the TrueType font scaler.
The table directory consists of a 12-byte header and 16 bytes pen entry.
IF - Intellifont Face Data (Reserved)
PA - PANOSE Descriptor
This data segment is used for font selection and substitution.
PF - PS-compatible font name (Reserved)
XW - X-Windows font name

Sending a character code

Esc*c#E (character code) (27)(42)(99)#(69) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<45h>

- This command sends a character code for the bitmapped font (MSL number for unbound fonts) to the printer. The font data must follow immediately.

- # is the character code. # can be from 0 to 65535. The specified character is defined by the data which follows the character code.

- Use this command also to designate a character for deletion from a font, using the command for deleting a character from a downloaded font.

Sending a character descriptor and data

Esc(s#W (character descriptor and character data)
(27)(40)(115)#(87) <1Bh><28h><73h>#<57h>

- This command sends a character descriptor block and raster data describing the shape of the character to the printer.

- # is the total number of bytes (descriptor and data) which will follow this command and can be up to 32767. If you need to send more than 32767 bytes to describe a single character you must split it into blocks of 32767 bytes or fewer and send each block separately.

- The character header for the first block of data describing a character is in the following format.

[Bitmapped font]

Byte	Data	
0 - 1	Format	Continuation
2 - 3	Descriptor size	Class
4 - 5	Orientation	Reserved
6 - 7	Left offset	
8 - 9	Top offset	
10 - 11	Character width	
12 - 13	Character height	
14 - 15	Delta X	
16 -	Raster Character Data	

< Bitmapped continuation data >

Byte	**Data**	
0-1	Format	Continuation
2	Raster Character Data	

- The bytes which follow the header are the raster data that make up the character.

- Attributes are in one of four numerical formats.
  Unsigned integer (UI) 0 to 65535
  Signed integer (SI) –32768 to 32767
  Unsigned byte (UB) 0 to 255
  Boolean - 0 or 1

- Format (UB) - 4 for bitmap fonts.

- Continuation (B) - signifies whether the character data represents a new character (0) or is a continuation of the character described by the previous character descriptor block and its data (non-zero). If the continuation byte is non-zero the bytes following it are interpreted as character data.

- Descriptor size (UB) - 14 for bitmap fonts.

- Class (UB) - 1 for bitmap fonts, 2 for compressed bitmap fonts. Bitmap fonts are described using uncompressed raster data. Compressed bitmap fonts character data is encoded as follows. The first byte of a line of data contains the number of times that the line is successively repeated. The second byte indicates the number of successive white pixels that start the line and the third byte indicates the number of successive black pixels that follow the white pixels. Subsequent even and odd numbered bytes indicate the number of successive white and black pixels respectively that make up the line. If there are more than 255 successive pixels of a single color this is indicated by a byte set to 255 followed by a byte set to 0 followed by a byte indicating the remaining number of pixels of that colour. The width of each line is determined by the character width attribute. All rows must contain the same number of pixels. The total number of pixels on each row must equal the character width attribute.

- Orientation (UB) - the orientation of the character. 0 = portrait, 1 = landscape, 2 = reverse portrait or 3 = reverse landscape. This attribute setting must match the orientation specified in the font descriptor block.

- Left offset (SI) - the distance between the character reference point and the leftmost dot of the character on the grid. The offset can be from -16384 to 16383.

- Top offset (SI) - the distance between the character reference point and the topmost dot of the character on the grid. The offset can be from -16384 to 16383.

- Character width (UI) - the width of the download character in grid dots. This can be in the range 1 to 16384.

- Character height (UI) - the height of the download character in grid dots. This can be in the range 1 to 16384.

- Delta X (UI) - the horizontal distance from the bottom left hand corner of the character's grid that the cursor is moved after the character is printed. The attribute is specified in units of 1/1200" and can be in the range -32768 to 32767.

[Intellifont scalable font data]

Byte		Data
0-1	Format	Continuation
2 - 3	Descriptor size	Class
4 - 5	Contour Character data	
Last data	Reserved	Checksum

< Intellifont-scalable contour data>

	MSB	LSB
4	Contour Data size	
6	Metric data offset	
8	Character Intellifont data	offset
10	Contour tree offset	
12	XY data offset	
14		
	Metric data	
	Character Intellifont Data	
	Contour tree data	
	XY coordinate data	

< Continuation data for Intellifont scalable contour data >

Byte		Data
0-1	Format	Continuation
2 - 3	Continuous contour character data	
Last	Reserved	Checksum

< Compound character data of Intellifont scalable font >

Byte		Data
0-1	Format	Continuation
2 - 3	Descriptor size	Class
4 - 5	Compound character escapement	
6 - 7	piled character number	ignore
8 - ...	piled character list (6 byte x characters)	
Last	Reserved	checksum

- Format (UB) - specifies the character format.

Value	Format
4	Bitmapped font
10	Intellifont-scalable font
15	TrueType scalable font

- Continuation (B) - signifies whether the character data represents a new character (0) or is a continuation of the character described by the previous character descriptor block and its data (non-zero). If the continuation byte is non-zero the bytes following it are interpreted as character data.

- Descriptor size (UB) - specifies the character descriptor size in bytes.

- Class (UB) . indicates the character format.

Value	Class
1	Bitmap
2	Compressed Bitmap
3	Contour (Intellifont scalable)
4	Compound Contour (Intellifont scalable)
15	TrueType Scalable

- Contour data size (UI) - specifies the contour data size.
- Metric Data offset (SI) - relative to the address of the coutour data size field.
- Contour Tree Offset (SI) -relative to the address of the coutour data size field.
- XY Data Offset (SI) -relative to the address of the contour data size field.
- Metric Data
- Character Intellifont Scalable Data
- Contour Tree Data
- XY Coordinate Data
- Checksum - this value is placed at the end of the character data.
- Compound character escapement (SI)
- Piled character number (UB)
- Piled character list - includes some piled characters. Each of them is 6 bytes.

[TrueType scalable font]

<TrueType character descriptor>

Byte	**Data**	
0-1	Format (15)	Continuation (0)
2 - 3	Descriptor size	Class (15)
4 ~	Additional descriptor size	
2 + Desc.size	Character Data Size	
4 + Desc. size	Glyph ID	
6 + Desc. size	TrueType Glyph Data	

0-1	Format (15)	Continuation (0)
2 - 3	Descriptor size	Class (15)
4 ~	Additional descriptor size	
2 + Desc.size	Character Data Size	
4 + Desc. size	Glyph ID	
6 + Desc. size	beginning of TrueType Glyph Data	

0-1	Format (15)	Continuation (1)
	TrueType Glyph Data	
Last-2	Reserved	Checksum

- The character data follows these header bytes. Characters are represented as raster data and the data bytes are used to build up an image of the character from left to right and from top to bottom, according to the character width and height settings.

- Format (UB) - 15 specifies TrueType font.

- Continuation (B) - specifies whether the character data represents a new character (0) or is a continuation of the character described by the previous character descriptor block (non-zero). If the continuation byte is non-zero the bytes following it are interpreted as character data.

- Descriptor size (UB) - specifies the character descriptor size in bytes.

- Class (UB) - indicates the character format.

Value	Class
1	Bitmap
2	Compressed Bitmap
3	Contour (Intellifont scalable)
4	Compound Contour (Intellifont scalable)
15	TrueType scalable

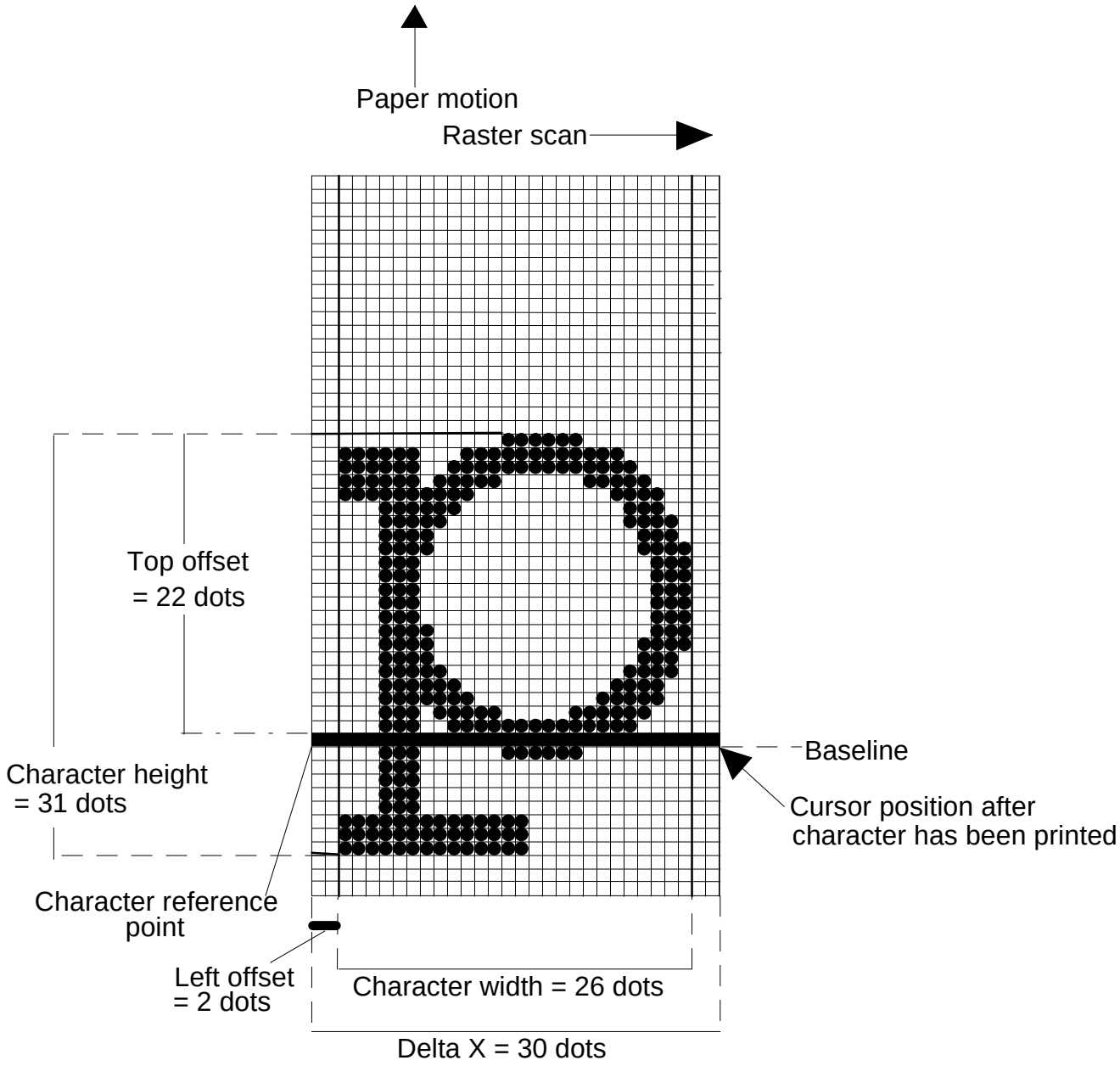
- Character data size (UI) - should be the same value as (the character data size + Glyph ID + TrueType Glyph data) size.

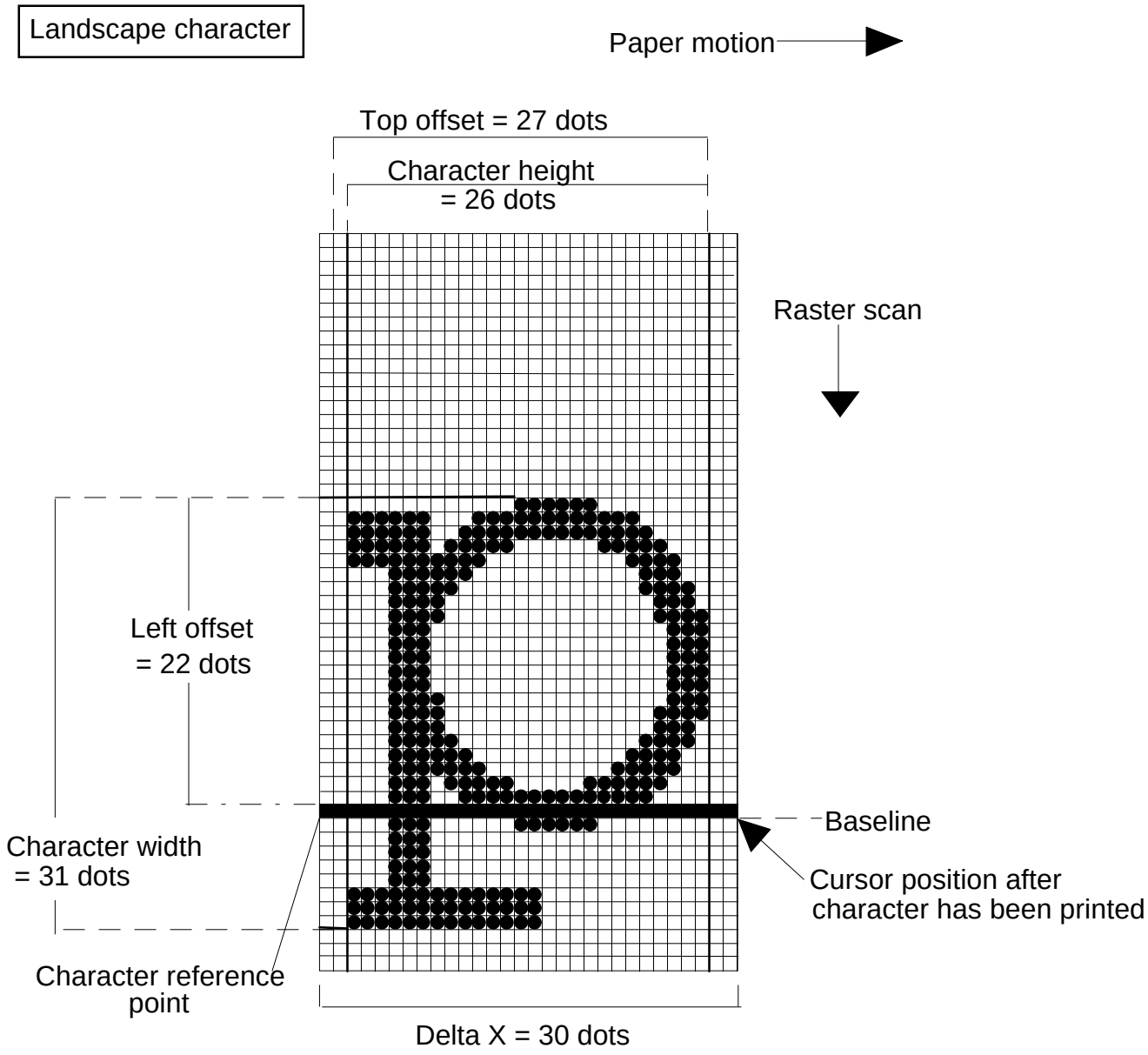
- Glyph ID (UI) - specifies the ID number for glyph data, which is used by TrueType font scaler.

- TrueType Glyph data - includes the data segment which is associated with the given character as found in the glyph table of the original TrueType font file.

- Checksum (UB) - should be a value which, when added to "Character data + Glyph ID + TrueType Glyph data" size, produces a zero result.

Portrait character




Landscape character
Paper motion
Top offset = 27 dots
Character height
= 26 dots
Raster scan
Left offset
= 22 dots
Character width
= 31 dots
Baseline
Cursor position after
character has been printed
Character reference
point
Delta X = 30 dots

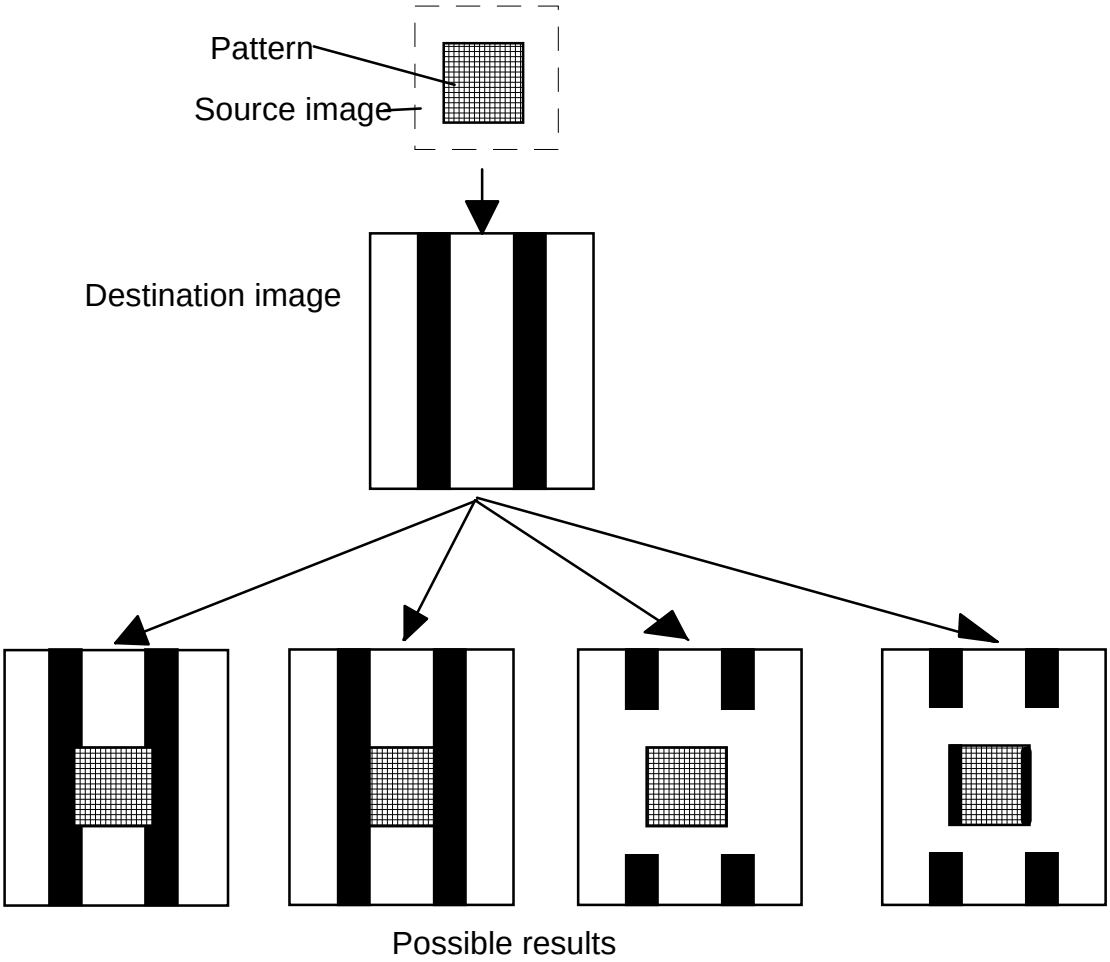
Using graphics

This HL Series printer affords the user considerable flexibility in the creation of graphic images. Vector, raster and rectangle graphics are available, all of which allow a range of shading and filling options. The HP-GL/2 graphics commands that are supported are described in the HP-GL/2 section of this manual.

Source, pattern and destination

We refer to a printing model in which a source image (the image to be drawn) is applied to a destination image (simply the graphics or text that already exist on the page). The source image consists of white space and non-white areas. The non-white areas are covered by a pattern of some description. The pattern may simply be solid black or it may itself consist of white and non-white areas, for example the pattern may consist of vertical spaced lines. You can specify the way in which the white and dark areas of the entire source image and the white and dark areas of the pattern interact with the destination image to produce the finished effect.

For example

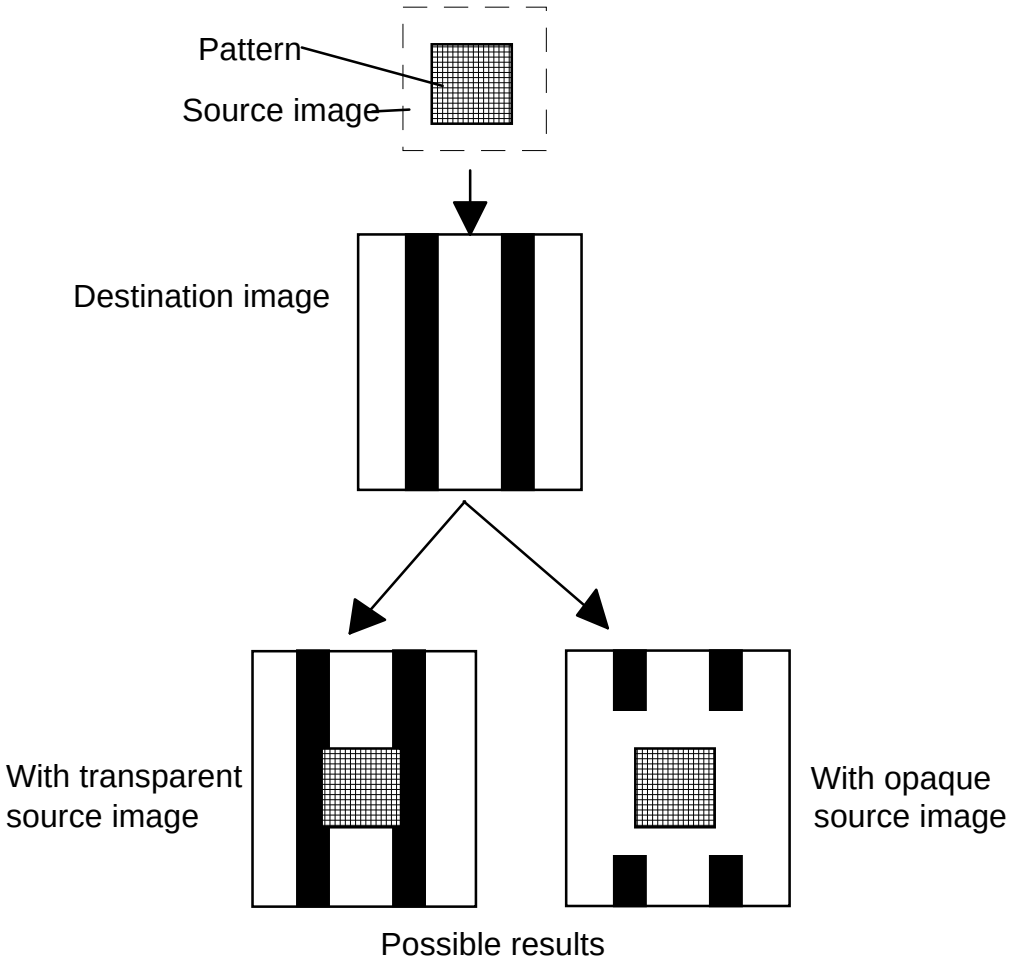


Set source transparency

Esc*v#N (27)(42)(118)#(78) <1Bh><2Ah><76h>#<4Eh>

- This command sets the source image transparency.
- # is either 0 or 1. Set # to 0 to select transparent mode, and to 1 to specify opaque mode.
- Transparent mode means that parts of the destination image will be visible through the white space areas of the source image when the source image has been printed on top of the destination image.
- Opaque mode means that parts the destination image will not be visible through the white space areas of the source image when the source image has been printed on top of the destination image.

For example

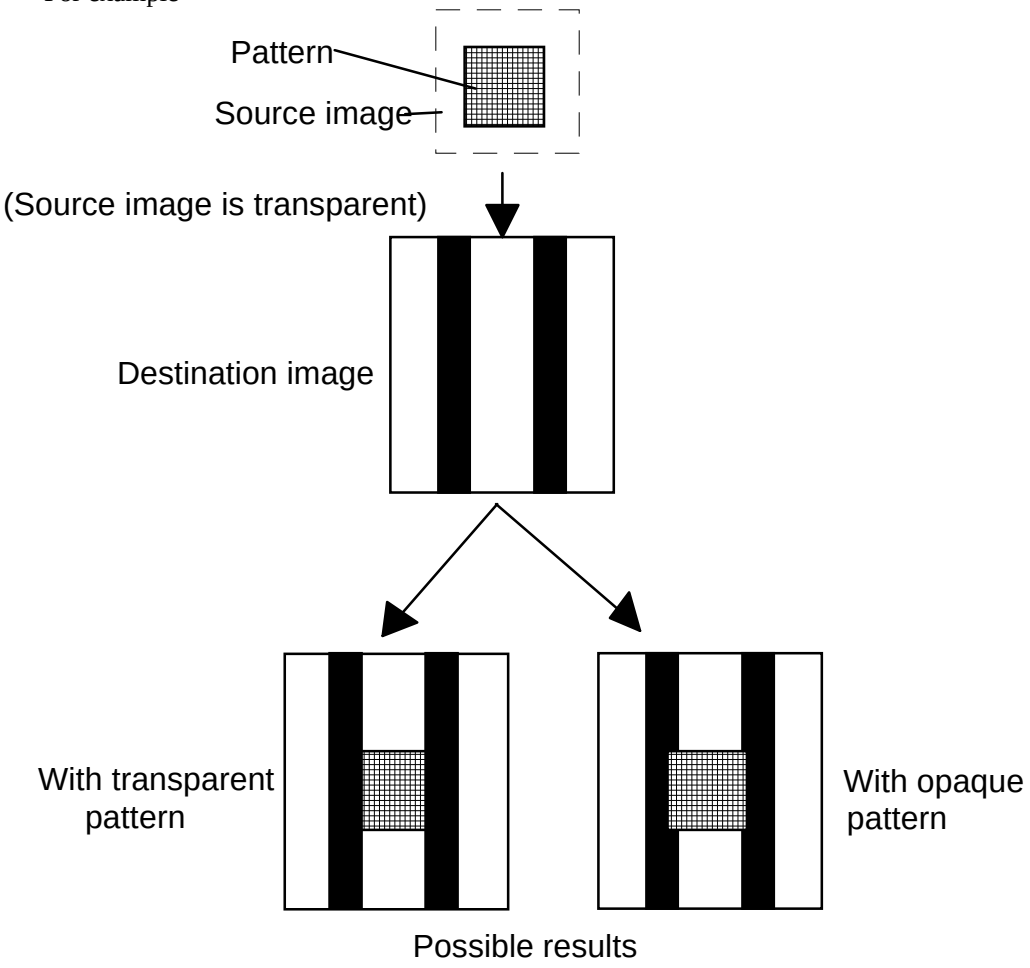


Set pattern transparency

Esc*v#0 (27)(42)(118)#(79) <1Bh><2Ah><76h>#<4Fh>

- This command sets the pattern transparency.
- # is either 0 or 1. Set # to 0 to select transparent mode, and to 1 to specify opaque mode.
- Transparent mode means that parts of the destination image will be visible through the patterned areas of the source image when the source image has been printed on top of the destination image. If the pattern is a solid black fill obviously you will not be able to see any of the destination image through the patterned areas of the source image.
- Opaque mode means that the destination image will not be visible through the patterned areas of the source image when the source image has been printed on top of the destination image.

For example



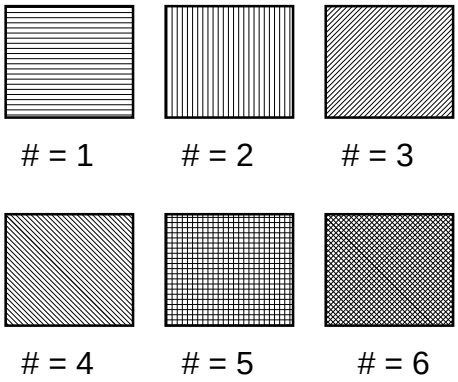
Set area fill identity

Esc*c#G (27)(42)(99)#(71) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<47h>

- This command sets the pattern ID of a shading tone, a fill pattern, or a user-defined pattern for subsequent selection with the Set Pattern Type command.
- # 1 ~ 100 specify the percentage of a gray scale.
- # 1 ~ 6 select a fill pattern.
- # 1 ~ 32767 select a user-defined pattern.
- You can specify a gray scale tone from 1 to 100. To use the specified tone for shading you must then select one of the two gray scale pattern options with the Set Pattern Type command.

For example

Fill patterns



User-defined pattern command

Esc*c#W [data] (27)(42)(99)#(87) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<57h>

- # should be in the range 0 ~ 32767.
- # stands for the number of pattern data bytes.
- User defined patterns can be defined by binary data or an 8 byte pattern descriptor.
- Here are the formats for the pattern descriptor.

< For 300 dpi >

	MSB	LSB
0 - 1	Format (0)	Continuation (0)
2 - 3	Pixel Encoding (1)	Reserved (0)
4 - 5	Height in Pixels	
6 - 7	Width in Pixels	
8 -	Pattern Image	

< For model HL-10h, HL-1260 and HL-660 >

	MSB	LSB
0 - 1	Format (20)	Continuation (0)
2 - 3	Pixel Encoding (1)	Reserved (0)
4 - 5	Height in Pixels	
6 - 7	Width in Pixels	
8 - 9	X resolution	
10 - 11	Y resolution	
12 -	Pattern Image	

- A pattern which is defined at 600 dpi cannot be converted one at 300 dpi.
- Format - set to 0 or 20.
- Continuation - set to 0.
- Pixel Encoding - set to 1.
- Height in Pixels - specifies the pattern height by the number of rows.
- Width in Pixels - specifies the pattern width by the number of pixels.
- Pattern Image - consists of the raster data for the pattern.
- X resolution - specifies the resolution in the X scan direction.
- Y resolution - specifies the resolution in the Y scan direction.

Set pattern reference point

Esc*p#R (27)(42)(112)#(82) <1Bh><2Ah><70h>#<52h>

- This command sets the pattern reference point to the current cursor position.
- # specifies whether the pattern rotates with the print direction or remains fixed.
- The Pattern reference point should be placed on a physical page and the base pattern is positioned at the pattern reference point for tiling.

User-defined pattern control

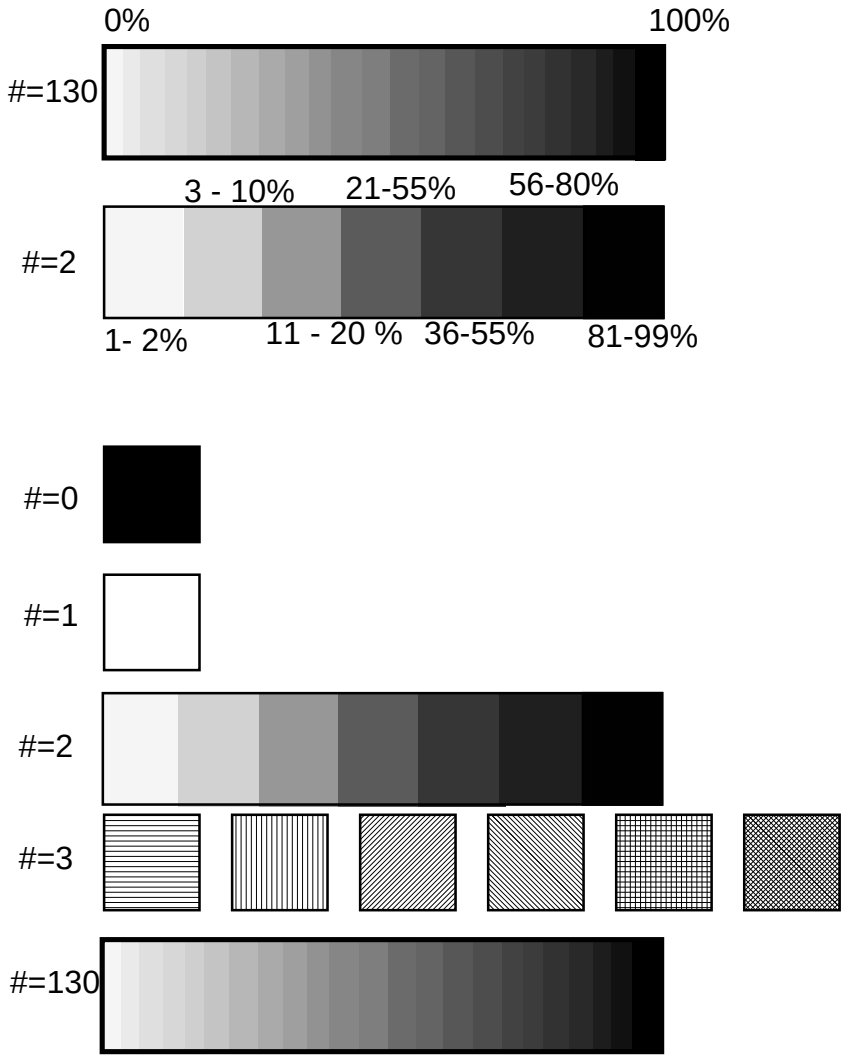
Esc*c#Q (27)(42)(99)#(81) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<51h>

- # = 0 deletes all (temporary and permanent) user-defined patterns from the printer memory.
- # = 1 deletes all temporary user-defined patterns from the printer memory.
- # = 2 deletes the pattern whose ID number was specified most recently.
- # = 4 saves the user-defined pattern as a temporary pattern, whose ID number was specified most recently.
- # = 5 saves the user-defined pattern as a permanent pattern, whose ID number was specified most recently.

Set pattern type

Esc*v#T (27)(42)(118)#(84) <1Bh><2Ah><76h>#<54h>

- This command selects the fill pattern (black, white, gray scale or cross-hatch pattern) for use with subsequent graphics operations.
- # is in the range 0 to 4 or 130.
- # = 0 selects solid black as the fill pattern.
- # = 1 selects white as the fill pattern (all source images will be completely white).
- # = 2 selects one of eight gray scales. Specify the gray scale you require as a percentage (0-100%) with the Set Area Fill Identity command.
- # = 3 selects the cross-hatch pattern you choose with the Set Area Fill Identity.
- # = 4 selects the user-defined pattern
- # = 130 selects one of the 64 gray scales. You can specify the gray scale you require as a percentage (0-100%) with the Set Area Fill Identity command. This feature is unique to this HL-Series printer.



Pattern example

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
20 ESC$ = CHR$(27)
30 REM --- RESET PRINTER ---
40 LPRINT ESC$; "E";
50 REM --- SET SOURCE=TRANSPARENT ---
60 REM --- SET PATTERN=OPAQUE ---
70 LPRINT ESC$; "*v0n1O";
80 REM --- BACKGROUND ---
90 LPRINT ESC$; "*c80G"; ESC$; "*v2T";
100 LPRINT ESC$; "*p100x100Y"; ESC$; "*c1000a300b2P";
110 REM --- PATTERN ---
120 LPRINT ESC$; "*p150x300Y";
130 LPRINT ESC$; "(s1p48v0s0b4101T";
140 LPRINT ESC$; "*c1G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "P";
150 LPRINT ESC$; "*c2G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "A";
160 LPRINT ESC$; "*c6G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "T";
170 LPRINT ESC$; "*c4G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "T";
180 LPRINT ESC$; "*c5G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "E";
190 LPRINT ESC$; "*c3G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "R";
200 LPRINT ESC$; "*c1G"; ESC$; "*v3T"; : LPRINT "N";
210 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
220 LPRINT CHR$(12);
230 END


<  Sample file 6  >
```

Plotting rectangles

Drawing rectangles is a basic case of printing graphics: the source image consists solely of the rectangle itself. Thus only the pattern transparency has any bearing on the final effect - the source transparency is irrelevant.

Cursor position

Position the cursor using the commands described in the chapter entitled “The Page”. You can use units, decipoints or rows and columns as coordinate units. Remember that the y-coordinate value goes up as the cursor moves down the logical page.

Set rectangle width

Esc*c#A (27)(42)(99)#(65) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<41h>

- This command sets the width of the rectangle to be printed in dots.
- # is a number of dots.

Esc*c#H (27)(42)(99)#(72) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<48h>

- This command sets the width of the rectangle to be printed in decipoints.
- # is a number of decipoints.

Set rectangle height

Esc*c#B (27)(42)(99)#(66) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<42h>

- This command sets the height of the rectangle to be printed in dots.
- # is a number of dots.

Esc*c#V (27)(42)(99)#(86) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<56h>

- This command sets the height of the rectangle to be printed in decipoints.
- # is a number of decipoints.

Draw filled rectangle

Esc*c#P (27)(42)(99)#(80) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<50h>

- This command fills a rectangular area with the specified shading option.
- # is 0 to 5 or 130.
- # = 0 uses solid black as the fill pattern.
- # = 1 uses white as the fill pattern.
- # = 2 selects the gray scale you chose with the Set Area Fill Identity command as the fill pattern.
- # = 3 selects the cross-hatch pattern you chose with the Set Area Fill Identity.
- # = 4 selects the user defined pattern, which is a specified ID number selected by the set Area Fill Identity.
- # = 5 uses the pattern specified by the combination of the most recent Set Area Fill Identity command and the most recent Set Pattern Type command.
- # = 130 selects one of the sixty-four gray scales. You can specify the gray scale you require as a percentage (0-100%) with the Set Area Fill Identity command. This feature is unique to this HL Series printer.
- See following two pages for programming examples using gray scales and patterns

#	Fill
0	Solid black
1	White
2	Gray scale (1 - 8)
3	Cross hatch pattern
4	User-defined pattern
5	Current pattern
130	Gray scale (1 - 64)

Gray scale example

```
10 ESC$ = CHR$(27)
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 REM --- DRAW A PATTERN USING 64 GRAY SCALES ---
40 X = 50: Y = 100: XL=50 :YL=200
50 FOR GRAY = 0 TO 100 STEP 2
60 GOSUB 220
70 X=GRAY*10+50 :XL=X-XL
80 GOSUB 260
90 XL=X
100 NEXT GRAY
110 REM --- DRAW A PATTERN USING 8 GRAY SCALES ---
120 Y=400
130 FOR GRAY = 0 TO 100 STEP 2
140 GOSUB 220
150 X=GRAY*10+50 :XL=X-XL
160 GOSUB 320
170 XL=X
180 NEXT GRAY
190 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
200 LPRINT CHR$(12)
210 END
220 REM --- SET THE CURSOR POSITION ---
230 LPRINT ESC$; "*p"; X; "X";
240 LPRINT ESC$; "*p"; Y; "Y";
250 RETURN
260 REM --- PRINT 64-GRAY SCALE PATTERN ---
270 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; XL; "A";
280 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; YL; "B";
290 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; GRAY; "G";
300 LPRINT ESC$; "*c130P";
310 RETURN
320 REM --- PRINT 8-GRAY SCALE PATTERN ---
330 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; XL; "A";
340 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; YL; "B";
350 LPRINT ESC$; "*c"; GRAY; "G";
360 LPRINT ESC$; "*c2P";
370 RETURN
```

< Sample file 7 >

Raster graphics

Positioning the cursor

Position the cursor using the commands described in the chapter entitled “The Page”, using dots, decipoints or rows and columns as coordinate units.

Set raster resolution

Esc*t#R (27)(42)(116)#(82) <1Bh><2Ah><74h>#<52h>

- This command sets the raster image resolution in dots per inch.
- # is 75, 100, 150, 200, 300 or 600.
- The lower the resolution you specify, the less printer memory your raster image will occupy.
- Use this command before you issue a Begin Raster Graphics command, otherwise the resolution that you specify will not take effect until the next time you re-enter raster graphics mode.

Set high resolution control

EscCRRO (27)(13)(82)(79) <1Bh><0Dh><52h><4Fh>

- This command sets high resolution control off.

EscCRRL (27)(13)(82)(76) <1Bh><0Dh><52h><4Ch>

- This command sets high resolution control light level.

EscCRRM (27)(13)(82)(77) <1Bh><0Dh><52h><4Dh>

- This command sets high resolution control Medium level.

EscCRRD (27)(13)(82)(68) <1Bh><0Dh><52h><44h>

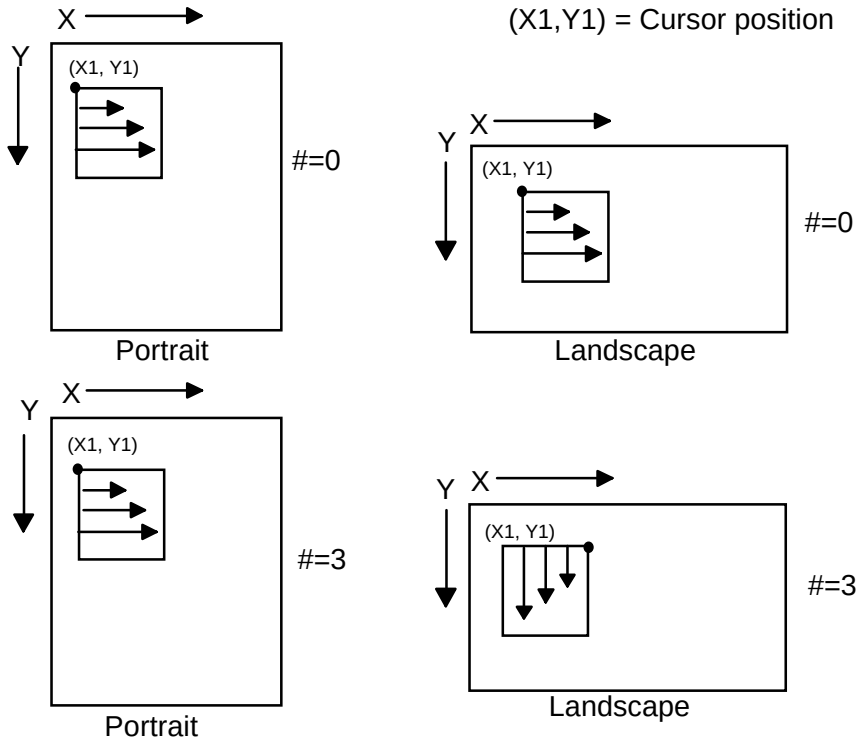
- This command sets high resolution control dark level.

Set raster image orientation

Esc*r#F (27)(42)(114)#(70) <1Bh><2Ah><72h>#<46h>

- This command specifies the orientation of the raster image.
- # is 0 or 3.
- # = 0 determines that the image will be printed from left to right and from top to bottom within the current logical page.
- # = 3 determines that the image will be printed from left to right and from top to bottom within the current physical page irrespective of logical page orientation.

- The default value of # is 3.



Set raster area height

Esc*r#T (27)(42)(114)#(84) <1Bh><2Ah><72h>#<54h>

- This command sets the height of the raster image to be printed.
- # is the number of raster rows.
- If you use this command after using a Start Raster Graphics or a Transfer Raster Data command, it does not take effect until after the next End Raster Graphics command.

Set raster area width

Esc*r#S (27)(42)(114)#(83) <1Bh><2Ah><72h>#<53h>

- This command sets the width of the raster image to be printed.
- # is the number of dots at the specified dots per inch resolution.
- If you use this command after using a Start Raster Graphics or a Transfer Raster Data command, it does not take effect until after the next End Raster Graphics command.

Set raster y-offset

Esc*b#Y (27)(42)(98)#(89) <1Bh><2Ah><62h>#<59h>

- This command sets the offset (number of blank rows to be skipped) for the raster image to be printed.
- # is the number of rows that are left blank at the top of the image.
- # must be in the range 0-32767
- This command is only effective in raster graphics mode, that is, after a Start Raster Graphics mode command.

Set compression mode

Esc*b#M (27)(42)(98)#(77) <1Bh><2Ah><62h>#<4Dh>

Identifies the method of compression used to encode the raster image that is to be sent to the printer.

- # is 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 9, 1152 or 1024.
- # = 0 signifies no compression is to be used.
- # = 1 indicates that run-length encoding is to be used. The raster data bytes are transmitted in pairs. The second byte of each pair specifies the raster output: the first byte specifies the number of times the second byte is successively repeated. A value of 0 for the first byte indicates a single occurrence of the second byte, a value of 1 indicates two consecutive occurrences of the second byte and so on.
- # = 2 indicates that TIFF (tagged image file format) encoding is to be used. In this format the data is transmitted in groups of bytes. The first byte of each group is a control byte and defines how the subsequent data byte or bytes should be interpreted, and how many data bytes there are before the next control byte. If the two's complement value of the control byte is in the range –1 to –127, the following byte is a repeated data byte. The number of successive occurrences of the data byte is given by the absolute value of the control byte plus one - that is if the control byte is -6, the following data byte is repeated 7 times. If the value of the control byte is in the range 0-127 the bytes which follow are unencoded raster data. The number of data bytes is given by the absolute value of the control byte plus one - that is if the control byte is 9, the following ten bytes are unencoded data. If a control byte has the two's complement value –128 it is ignored and the next byte is treated as a control byte.
- # = 3 indicates that delta row compression is to be used. In this method byte sequences identify how each raster row differs from the last row that was transmitted. The first byte identifies a number of consecutive bytes (the value of the senior 3 bits plus 1) to be changed and the position in the line at which to start substituting the replacement bytes (the junior 5 bits plus 1). Hence, if the command byte has a 3 in the top three bits and 10 in the bottom five bits, the 11th, 12th, 13th and 14th bytes of the last row will be replaced by the four data bytes that follow.
  If the junior 5 bits are all 1, the next byte is treated as a further offset value and its value is added to 32 to calculate the offset. If this byte in turn is all ones the next byte is also treated as a continuation byte and its value is added to the offset, and so on until a byte whose value is not 255 is encountered.
  This combination of command bytes and replacement bytes is used to specify all the differences between the last raster row sent (the seed row) and the new row to be transmitted. When the new row has been sent it becomes the new seed row.

- # = 5 indicates that adaptive compression is to be used.

  This compression compresses multiple rows (block) into one transfer graphics command.
  Most of other compression method compresses only one row to one transfer graphics command.
  One transfer graphic command (ESC *b##W) can contain only up to 32,767 bytes.
  As mode 5 compression compresses multiple rows, the amount of transferred data may become large.
  If compressed data exceeds this limit, please reduce the number of rows in one block.
  We can use mode 0 to mode 3 compression to compress each row. We can even compress empty (white) rows and duplicate rows in this compression.

  Command byte
  Mode 5 compressed data consists of multiple elements. Each element contains 3 header bytes at the biginning.
  The first byte of the header bytes is a command byte.

First byte		Second, third byte
0	Unencoded	Number of a block data
1	Run-length Encoding	
2	TIFF	
3	Delta Row compression	
4	Empty Row	Number of empty row or repetition
5	Duplicate Row	

  Command byte

  0 - This element is an uncompressed row. Next two bytes contain byte count of uncompressed data. Uncompressed data follows the header.

  1 - This element identifies compressed row. Compression method is mode 1. Next two bytes (upper byte first) contain byte count of compressed data. Compressed data follows the header.

  2 - This element identifies a compressed row. Compression method is mode 2. Next two bytes (upper byte first) contain byte count of compressed data. Compressed data follows the header

  3 - This element identifies a compressed row. Compression method is mode 3. Next two bytes (upper byte first) contain byte count of compressed data. Compressed data follows the header

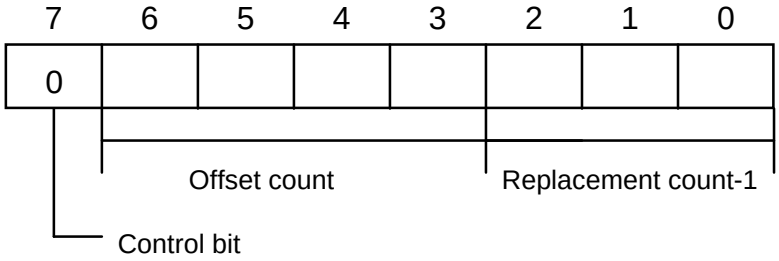
  4 - This element identifies multiple empty rows. Next two bytes (upper byte first) contain empty row count.

  5 - This element identifies duplicate rows. Next two bytes (upper byte first) contain duplicate row count.

- # = 9 Mode 9 compression

  Like mode 3 compression, this compression (mode 9) data contains only the difference of the current row from the preceding row.
  Replacement data often consists of a repetition of a particular byte in mode 3 compression.
  Mode 9 compression is effective in such cases.
  Simple mode 9 compression data consists of a command byte and the replacement data.
  A Command byte consists of 3 parts. They are the control bit, the offset count and the replacement count.
  The Control bit is the most significant bit (bit 7) of a control byte.

Command byte for mode 9 compression (non repeated replacement data)

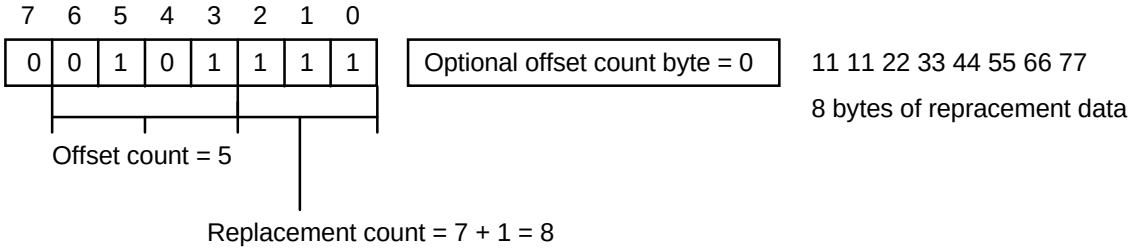


If the control bit is 0, replacement data is not repeated data. Bits 6 to 3 contain the offset count. This field value is from 0 to 15. If this value is 15, the next byte of the control bytes is an optional offset count. The value of this optional offset count byte is from 0 to 255. If this optional offset count value is 255, then the next byte is another (second) optional offset count byte. Optional offset count bytes will continue until the value is less than 255. The total Offset value is the sum of the offset count in the control byte and all the optional offset bytes.
Bits 2 to 0 of the control byte contains the replacement count - 1. The value is from 0 to 7. If this value is 7, optional replacement byte(s) follow the control byte or optional offset byte(s) (if any).
If the first optional replacement count byte is 255, then a second optional count byte follows the first optional count byte. Optional offset count bytes will continue until the value becomes less than 255. The addition of the replacement count in the control byte and all optional replacement count bytes gives the total replacement count.
Replacement data bytes follow the control byte and any optional offset bytes and any optional replacement count bytes.

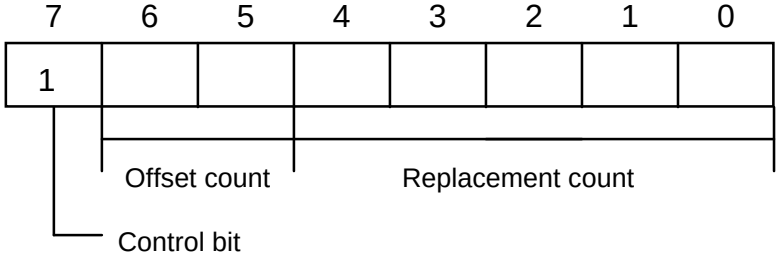
<Example>

Seed row 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55
Current row 55 55 55 55 55 11 11 22 33 44 55 66 77

<Different section 11 11 22 33 44 55 66 77>
Offset count = 5
Replacement count = 8
Replacement data = 11 11 22 33 44 55 66 77



Command byte for mode 9 compression (repeated replacement data)



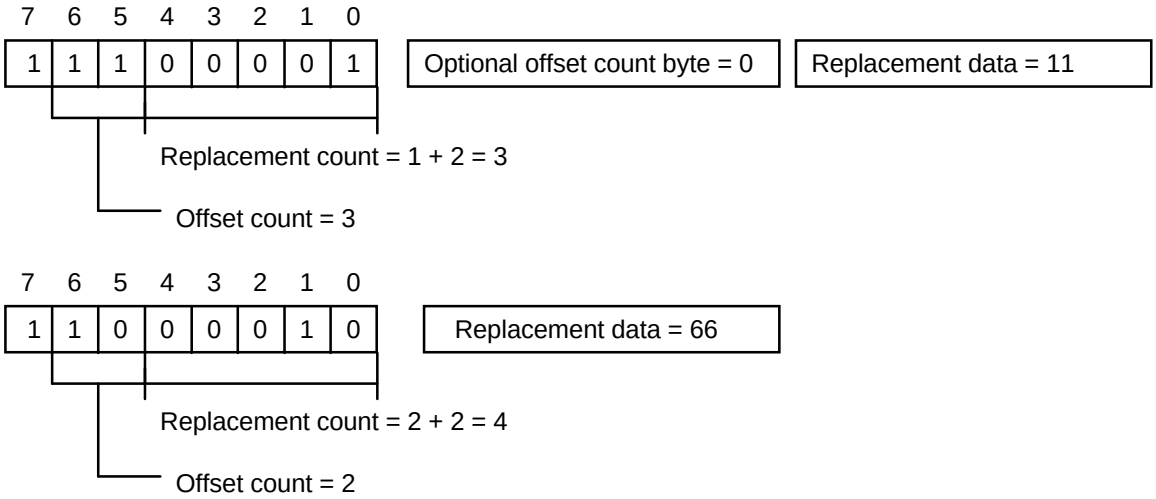
If the control bit is 1, replacement data is repeated data. Bits 6 to 5 contain the offset count and bits 4 to 0 contain the 'replacement count(repeat count) - 2'.
If bit 6 and bit 5 are '1', then an optional offset byte follows the control byte. If the value of this optional offset byte is 255, another (second) optional offset byte follows the first optional offset byte. The addition of the offset count in the control byte and any optional offset bytes gives the total offset count.
If bits 4 to 0 are all '1', an optional replacement count byte follows the control byte or any optional offset byte(s). If the first optional replacement count byte has a value of 255, a second optional replacement count byte follows the first optional replacement count byte. Optional replacement count bytes will continue until the value becomes less than 255.

<Example>

Seed row 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55
Current row 55 55 55 11 11 11 55 55 66 66 66 66 55

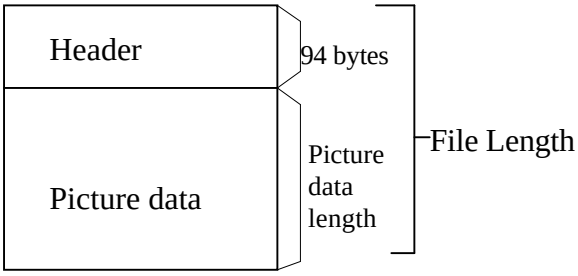
<First section 11 11 11>
Offset count = 3
Replacement count = 3
Replacement data = 11

<Second section 66 66 66 66>
Offset count = 2
Replacement count = 4
Replacement data = 66



- # = 1152 indicates that CCITT G3/G4 data compression is to be used.

This format is popular in optical document storage area as this compression is effective to store black and white type pictures. As G3/G4 format does not have picture size/resolution information, the printer requires a header at the beginning of the picture data. The header size is 94 Byte. Bothe the header and the picture data are transferred by the ESC*b###W(###=data length) command. Normal PCL transfer graphics data command has a limitatino of the data size and ### should not exceed 32767. Unlike other mode, this mode is special and does not have the 32767 size limitation. The data must have the following structure - Header and Picture data. The values in this mode are little endians.



Byte position	Data	Description
0 - 1	6E 6E	'nn' This is header ID.
2 - 3	0A 00	Reserved
4 - 7	5E 00 00 00	Picture data start offset from header top
8 - 11	File length	File length including 94 Byte header. If file length is 65,536 byte, these 4 bytes become "00 00 01 00"
12 - 13	01 00	Reserved
14 - 15	01 00	Reserved
16 - 19	4A 00 00 00	Reserved
20 - 21	Compression mode	02 00: Fax MH format 03 00: Fax MR format 04 00: Fax G4 format
22 - 55	00 ... 00	All zero
56 - 59	Picture data length	If picture data length is 65,442 (65,536 ~-94) byte, these 4 bytes become "A2 FF 00 00."
60 - 61	01 00	bit / pixel
62 - 63	01 00	bit / pixel
64 - 65	Pixels/line	If picture dot width = 2,400, these 2 bytes become "60 09"
66 - 67	Pixels/line	Same as above.
68- 69	Lines/picture	If picture dot count = 3,100, these 2 bytes become "1C 0C."
71 - 71	Lines/picture	Same as above.
72 - 73	00 00	Reserved
74 - 75	Photometrics 00 00 or 01 00	00 00 : data 0 = white 01 00 : data 0 = black
76 - 77	02 00	Reserved
78 - 79	Fill order 01 00 or 02 00	01 00 : filled from MSB 02 00 : filled from LSB
80 - 81	01 00	Reserved
82 - 83	00 00	Reserved
84 - 85	01 00	Reserved
86 - 87	Resolution 200, 300, 400, 600	C8 00 00 00 : 200 dpi, 2C 01 00 00 : 300 dpi, 90 01 00 00 : 400 dpi, 58 02 00 00 : 600 dpi 400 and 600 dpi are available when printer operates in 600 dpi.
88 - 89	Resolution 200, 300, 400, 600	C8 00 00 00 : 200 dpi, 2C 01 00 00 : 300 dpi, 90 01 00 00 : 400 dpi, 58 02 00 00 : 600 dpi 400 and 600 dpi are available when printer operates in 600 dpi.
90 - 91	02 00	Reserved
92 - 93	00 00	Reserved

About CCITT G3/G4 data format, please refer to CCITT (The International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee) BLUE BOOK Volume VII.

- # = 1024 indicates the TIFF format. This is valid only for 600 dpi data. The raster graphics data is transferred with the ESC*b###W (### = data length) command. The TIFF file follows this mode set command. This printer does not support LZW compression. Pages that contain TIFF data are printed in the gray scale mode. The TIFF data contains the header, tag, and print data.

  This mode supports TIFF Version 5.0 file format. In this mode, transfer graphics data command by te count does not have a limitation of 32,767 byte. Ths printer supports bothe "MM" (big endian) format and "II" (little endian) format. Print model is not applied to this type of data transfer. The printer has some limitations on the TIFF format.

  1. Tags position has to be prior to the picture (strip) data.

  2. Compression tag - Tag ID : 259
     The printer supports 1, 2, 3, 4 and 32773.
     1 : no compression (Bits/Sample=1,4,8)
     2 : CCITT G3 MH (Bits/Sample=1)
     3 : CCITT G3 MR (Bits/Sample=1)
     4 : CCITT G4 (Bits/Sample=1)
     32773 : Pack Bits (Bits/Sample=1)

  3. Sample/pixel - Tag ID : 277
     This value should be 1. This means the printer accepts only monochrome TIFF file.

  4. Bits/Smple - Tag ID: 258
     The printer supports 1,4 and 8.
     If you specify 4 or 8 and the printer resolution is 600 dpi, the printer prints that the page utilizing APT.

  5. Horizontal resolution (Tag ID=282) and Vertical resolution (Tag ID=283)

Compression type	Bits/Sample	Available Resolution	APT
No Compression	4,8	From 1 dpi to 300 dpi	ON
No Compression Pack Bit	1	Printer's Resolution (300 or 600 dpi)	OFF
CCITT G3 & G4	1	200,300,400,600 dpi 400 & 600 dpi are only when printer operates in 600 dpi.	OFF

  We recommend 150 dpi or less resolution for APT to reduce data size.

- # = 1025 indicates the Brother origianl Compression Method.

- # = 1026 indicates the Brother Advanced Data Transfer Mode.

Start raster transfer

Esc*r#A (27)(42)(114)#(65) <1Bh><2Ah><72h>#<41h>

- This command signals the start of the transfer of a raster image to the printer.

- # is 0 or 1.

- # = 0 denotes that the image will be printed starting from the left edge of the logical page.

- # = 1 denotes that the image will be printed starting from the current cursor position.

- The transfer of raster data to the printer continues until either an End Raster Transfer command is sent or a command other than Send Raster Data, Set Compression Mode, or Set Raster Y-Offset is sent.

Send raster data

Esc*b#W<data> (27)(42)(98)#(87) <1Bh><2Ah><62h>#<57h>

- This command sends a single row of the raster image to the printer for printing.
- # signifies the number of bytes to be sent.
- If more data is transmitted than can be fitted onto one row of the specified raster area, the excess data will be ignored.

Compress transfer graphics

Esc*b#C<image data> (27)(42)(98)#(67) <1Bh><2Ah><62h>#<43h>

- As a more efficient alternative to the Send Raster Data command, this command sends a single row of the raster image to the printer for printing, in a compressed form.
- # signifies the number of data bytes that the uncompressed row would consist of.
- Pairs of bytes describe the data which follows.
- If the MSB of the first byte of a pair is 1, the byte that follows the pair is repeated. The number held in the remaining fifteen bits of the byte pair is the number of times the data byte is repeated.
- If the MSB of the first byte of the pair is 0, the bytes that follow the pair are not repeated. The number held in the remaining fifteen bits of the byte pair is the number of bytes of unrepeated raster data that follow.
- A raster row is made up of a sequence of byte pair-image data combinations.

End raster transfer

Esc*rB (27)(42)(114)(66) <1Bh><2Ah><72h><42h>

- This command signals the end of a transfer of a raster image to the printer.
- After execution of this command the cursor is positioned a distance of one raster row (at the last specified number of dots per inch) down from the bottom of the raster area.

Esc*rC (27)(42)(114)(67) <1Bh><2Ah><72h><43h>

- This command signifies the end of the raster graphic data transfer and this is a modified version of the **ESC *rB**.
- After receiving this command, the printer resets the compression seed, compression mode, and left-graphics margin to 0.
- Also, the cursor is positioned a distance of one raster row (at the last specified number of dots per inch) down from the bottom of the raster data.
- This command resets the compression mode setting to 0.
- This command defaults the left graphics margin to 0.

Raster graphics example

```
10 REM ***** A EXAMPLE OF RASTER GRAPHICS *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- SET GRAPHICS RESOLUTION TO 300 DPI ---
50 LPRINT ESC$+"*t300R";
60 REM --- START RASTER GRAPHICS ---
70 LPRINT ESC$+"*r1A";
80 REM --- TRANSFER RASTER GRAPHICS ---
90 FOR I=1 TO 28
100 REM --- TRANSFER 1 LINE OF DOTS (4 byte = line) ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"*b4W";
120 FOR J=1 TO 4
130 READ A$
140 LPRINT CHR$(VAL("&H"+A$));
150 NEXT J
160 NEXT I
170 REM --- END RASTER GRAPHICS ---
180 LPRINT ESC$+"*rB"
190 LPRINT
200 LPRINT
210 REM --- CHANGE GRAPHIC RESOLUTION
220 LPRINT ESC$+"*t75R";
230 REM --- START RASTER GRAPHICS ---
240 LPRINT ESC$+"*r1A";
250 REM --- TRANSFER RASTER GRAPHICS ---
260 RESTORE 410
270 FOR I=1 TO 28
280 REM --- TRANSFER 1 LINE OF DOTS (4 byte = line) ---
290 LPRINT ESC$+"*b4W";
300 FOR J=1 TO 4
310 READ A$
320 LPRINT CHR$(VAL("&H"+A$));
330 NEXT J
340 NEXT I
350 REM --- END RASTER GRAPHICS ---
360 LPRINT ESC$+"*rB"
370 REM --- PAPER EJECT ---
380 LPRINT CHR$(12);
390 END
400 REM --- RASTER DATA ---
410 DATA 00,1F,E0,00
420 DATA 00,7F,F8,00
430 DATA 01,F0,3E,00
440 DATA 03,C0,0F,00
450 DATA 07,00,03,80
460 DATA 0E,00,01,C0
470 DATA 1C,38,70,E0
480 DATA 18,70,70,60
490 DATA 38,38,70,70
500 DATA 30,00,00,30
510 DATA 70,00,00,38
520 DATA 61,00,02,18
530 DATA 61,00,02,18
540 DATA 6F,80,07,98
550 DATA 67,80,07,D8
560 DATA 61,80,06,18
570 DATA 61,C0,0E,18
580 DATA 70,E0,1C,38
590 DATA 30,70,78,30
600 DATA 38,3F,F0,70
610 DATA 18,0F,C0,60
620 DATA 1C,00,00,E0
630 DATA 0E,00,01,C0
640 DATA 07,00,03,80
650 DATA 03,C0,0F,00
660 DATA 01,F0,3E,00
670 DATA 00,7F,F8,00
680 DATA 00,1F,E0,00
690 REM --- DATA END ---
```

< Sample file 8 >

Vector graphics

For large-scale graphic images it is more efficient to use vector graphics. In Laserjet 4 emulation mode you can set up the page area on which to print vector graphics images. The vector graphics capabilities of this HL Series printer working in HP-GL/2 mode are described in the HP-GL/2 section of this manual.

Enter HP-GL/2 mode

Esc%#B (27)(37)#(66) <1Bh><25h>#<42h>

- This command enters HP-GL/2 graphics mode.
- # = 0 the cursor is positioned at the previous HP-GL/2 cursor position. If this is the first time you have switched to HP-GL/2 mode since switching the printer on, the cursor is placed at the origin of the HP-GL/2 graphics window.
- # = 1 the cursor remains at its current position.

The picture frame

The PCL picture frame is the rectangular area of the page on which you can print graphic images. You can position and size the picture frame to suit your requirements and achieve effects such as scaling or distortion of vector graphics images.

The default picture frame

The default picture frame size and position is determined by the default logical page size and text length for each given paper size.

Set picture frame anchor point

Esc*c0T (27)(42)(99)(48)(84) <1Bh><2Ah><63h><30h><54h>

- This command sets the anchor point (top left hand corner) of the picture frame to the current cursor position.

Set picture frame vertical size

Esc*c#Y (27)(42)(99)#(89) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<59h>

- This command sets the vertical size of the picture frame.
- # is the height of the picture frame in decipoints.

Set picture frame horizontal size

Esc*c#X (27)(42)(99)#(88) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<58h>

- This command sets the horizontal size of the picture frame.
- # is the width of the picture frame in decipoints.

Specify vertical plot size

Esc*c#L (27)(42)(99)#(76) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<4Ch>

- This command specifies the height in inches of an imported image.
- # is the height of the image in inches.
- # can be in the range 0 to 32767 and can have up to four places of decimals.
- This command is only applicable to existing graphic images which are being imported from an application.
- The imported graphic will be scaled so that its height matches that of the HP-GL/2 graphics window.

Specify horizontal plot size

Esc*c#K (27)(42)(99)#(75) <1Bh><2Ah><63h>#<4Bh>

- This command specifies the width in inches of the image being imported.
- # is the width of the image in inches.
- # can be in the range 0 to 32767 and can have up to four places of decimals.
- This command is only applicable to existing graphic images which are being imported from an application.
- The imported graphic will be scaled so that its width matches that of the HP-GL/2 graphics window.

Macros

The purpose of a macro

A macro is a sequence of commands that you wish to execute. You can specify the command sequence and download it to the printer after which you can execute it with a single command. For example, you might wish to draw a raster image at the top of each page you print. Rather than sending the same sequence of commands every time you print a new page, it is more efficient to define a macro to draw the image and store the macro in the printer's memory. Having done this, you can draw the picture on each page simply by running the macro, that is, with a single command.
Like downloaded fonts, macros take up printer memory. To alleviate this, some macros are available on cartridges that can be plugged into the printer's cartridge slots. A cartridge-based macro must have a unique ID number or else you will not be able to access it. If a downloaded macro has the same ID number as a cartridge macro, all references to the ID number will be interpreted as references to the downloaded macro. To access the cartridge macro you would first have to delete the downloaded macro.

Another method of storing Macros is uniquely available on the HL-10h/1260 printer. This is the use of PCMCIA format memory cards type I or type III in the card slot of the printer. Macros can be saved to this card as required and then executed from the card. A delete facility is also included to allow the removal of macros when no longer required. The rules for identifying and calling Macros from this card are exactly the same as for cartridge stored Macros detailed above.

One macro can call another, however, only two levels of nesting are permitted.
A printer reset will delete macros from the printer's memory unless they have been explicitly designated as permanent.

The PCL picture frame commands, the printer reset command and HP-GL/2 graphic language commands cannot be invoked from within a macro.

Defining a macro

To define a macro you must first assign an ID number to it, then send to the printer a Start Macro Definition command, the macro definition itself (consisting of a sequence of PCL commands) and finally an End Macro Definition command.

Macro ID

Esc&f#Y (27)(38)(102)#(89) <1Bh><26h><66h>#<59h>

- This command assigns an identity number to a macro that is to be downloaded, or references an existing macro in the printer's memory.
- # is the ID number of a macro. The ID number must be in the range 0-32767.
- If you specify the ID number of an existing macro and then download a new macro definition to the printer, the new macro will overwrite the existing macro.

Start macro definition

Esc&f0X (27)(38)(102)(48)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><30h><59h>

- This command signifies that the following commands constitute a macro definition.

End macro definition

Esc&f1X (27)(38)(102)(49)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><31h><59h>

- This command terminates the macro definition.

Running a macro

Macros can be invoked in three different ways: they can be executed, called or enabled for overlay. When a macro is 'executed' it uses the current modified print environment. Any changes it makes to the environment are permanent. A macro that is 'called' also uses the current modified print environment, however, any changes it makes to the environment are discarded when the macro has performed its function. When a macro is 'enabled' for overlay, the macro's command sequence is performed as the final operation every time a page is printed. Overlaid macros use the overlay environment. The overlay environment is a combination of the user default environment and the modified print environment. This environment has effect only while the macro is running.

Page length	Paper source
Page size	Number of copies
Orientation	Cursor position stack
Registration	

Execute macro

Esc&f2X (27)(38)(102)(50)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><32h><59h>

- This command executes the macro whose ID number was specified most recently.
- Any changes made to the modified print environment during the execution of a macro, such as font selection or margin settings, are retained after macro execution has been completed.

Call macro

Esc&f3X (27)(38)(102)(51)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><33h><59h>

- This command calls the macro whose ID number was specified most recently.
- Any changes made to the modified print environment during a macro call, such as raster graphics settings, are temporary and remain in effect only while the macro is running. They are not retained after the macro has finished.

Enable macro for overlay

Esc&f4X (27)(38)(102)(52)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><34h><59h>

- This command overlays the macro whose ID number was specified most recently.

Disable macro for overlay

Esc&f5X (27)(38)(102)(53)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><35h><59h>

- This command stops overlaying the macro whose ID number was specified most recently.

Handling macros

Delete all macros

Esc&f6X (27)(38)(102)(54)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><36h><59h>

- This command deletes all macros from the printer's memory.

Delete all temporary macros

Esc&f7X (27)(38)(102)(55)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><37h><59h>

- This command deletes all temporary macros from the printer's memory. Temporary macros are those which have not been made permanent with the Esc&f10X command.

Delete macro

Esc&f8X (27)(38)(102)(56)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><38h><59h>

- This command deletes from printer memory the macro whose ID number was specified most recently.

Make macro temporary

Esc&f9X (27)(38)(102)(57)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><39h><59h>

- This command makes the macro whose ID number was specified most recently temporary (that is, it will not be retained if the printer is reset).

Delete all macros from PCMCIA memory card

Esc&f1030X (27)(38)(102)(49)(48)(51)(48)(89)
<1Bh><26h><66h><31h><30h><33h><30h><59h>

- This command deletes all macros and all data from the installed PCMCIA memory card.

Delete macro from card

Esc&f1036X (27)(38)(102)(49)(48)(51)(54)(89)
<1Bh><26h><66h><31h><30h><33h><36h><59h>

- This command delete the macro whose ID number was specified most recently from the installed PCMCIA memory card.

Save macro into PCMCIA memory card

Esc&f1038X (27)(38)(102)(49)(48)(51)(56)(89)
<1Bh><26h><66h><31h><30h><33h><38h><59h>

- This command saves the macro whose ID number was specified most recently into the installed PCMCIA memory card.

Make macro permanent

Esc&f10X (27)(38)(102)(49)(48)(89) <1Bh><26h><66h><31h><30h><59h>

- This command makes the macro whose ID number was specified most recently permanent (that is, it will be retained if the printer is reset).

Macro example

```
10 REM ***** A EXAMPLE OF A MACRO *****
20 ESC$=CHR$(27)
30 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
40 REM --- RESET PRINTER ---
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E":
60 REM --- SET MACRO ID TO 0 ---
70 LPRINT ESC$+"&f0Y";
80 REM --- START MACRO DEFINITION ---
90 LPRINT ESC$+"&f0X";
100 REM --- SET CURSOR POSITION X=1800 DOT, Y=0 DOT ---
110 LPRINT ESC$+"*p1800x0Y";
120 REM --- SET FONT TO LETTER GOTHIC (18 DOTS WIDE) ---
130 LPRINT ESC$+"(s0p16.66h8.5v0s0b130T";
140 REM --- PRINT COMMENT ---
150 LPRINT "Printed by this printer";
160 REM --- SET CURSOR POSITION X=1790 DOT, Y=-40 DOT ---
170 LPRINT ESC$+"*p1790x-40Y";
180 REM --- PERFORM SHADING ---
190 REM --- SET SHADING WIDTH TO 23 CHARACTERS + 20 DOTS ---
200 LPRINT ESC$+"*c";23*18+20;"A";
210 REM --- SET SHADING HEIGHT TO 30 DOTS ---
220 LPRINT ESC$+"*c60B";
230 REM --- DRAW SHADING PATTERN (5% GRAY SCALE) ---
240 LPRINT ESC$+"*c5g2P";
250 REM --- END MACRO DEFINITION ---
260 LPRINT ESC$+"&f1X";
270 REM --- MACRO OVERLAY ON (PRINT THE MESSAGE ON EVERY PRINTOUT) -
- 280 LPRINT ESC$+"&f4X";
290 REM --- SET FONT TO BROUGHAM 10 ---
300 LPRINT ESC$+"(s0p10h12v0s0b128T";
310 REM --- MACRO OVERLAY ON, PAPER EJECT ---
320 LPRINT "MACRO OVERLAY ON"
330 LPRINT CHR$(12);
340 REM --- MACRO OVERLAY ON, PAPER EJECT ---
350 LPRINT "MACRO OVERLAY ON"
360 LPRINT CHR$(12);
370 REM --- MACRO OVERLAY OFF (PRINT WITHOUT THE MESSAGE) ---
380 LPRINT ESC$+"&f5X";
390 REM --- MACRO OVERLAY OFF, PAPER EJECT ---
400 LPRINT "MACRO OVERLAY OFF"
410 LPRINT CHR$(12);
420 END
```

Execute data

The data saved in the PCMCIA card by using Printer's control panel "SAVE DATA" function can be printed by the following command. It is also printed by the operation of Printer control panel.

EscCR!#E (27)(13)(33)#(69) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<45h>

- # indicates the DATA ID.
- Execute the data which is saved in the flash memory card or Hard Disk card.
- The printer uses the current environment when this command is executed.
- During execiting the data, it is possible to change the emulation or reset the printer.
- If this command is included on the last of the data which is saved by "SAVE DATA" operation from the printer's control panel, the printer enters the permanent roop so that the saved data such as DEMO printing keeps printing. To stop it, press the RESET key on the printer's control panel. This function is available only for the Flash ROM card.

AppleTalk Configuration

Esc&b#W[key]<sp>[value] (27)(38)(98)#(87)[Key](32)[value]
<1Bh><26h><62h>#<57h>[Key]<20h>[value]

- # value can be from 0 to 32767.
- # stands for number of bytes in the data which is followed this command.
- [key] should be [RENAME], [JOB] or [TYPE].
- If the key is [RENAME], this command allows the printer to change the name field of AppleTalk name binding protocol.

  <ESC>&b#WRENAME<sp>printername
  printername should be specified with 1 to 31 characters.
  The character $00 to $FF (except for $00, @, :, *, =, $C5) can be used for printername.
  $00 is used for terminater.
  If invalid characters are used, this command is ignored.

- If the [key] is set to [JOB], this command changes the current job name.
  <ESC>&b#WJOB<sp>jobname
  All character from $00 to $FF can be used for jobname.
  jobname can have maximum 127 characters.

- If the [key] is set to [TYPE], this command allows the printer to change the type field of AppleTalk name binding protocol.
  <ESC>&b#WTYPE<sp>devicetype
  devicetype should be specified with 1 to 31 characters.
  The character $00 to $FF (except for $00, @, :, *, =, $C5) can be used for devicetype.
  $00 is used for terminater.

  If invalid characters are used, this command is ignored.

MIO Video I/O port control

HL-1260 has only "VSREQ" signal for vertical syncronization signal to be sent to MIO port. This cause a little delay of actual printing start after sending VSREQ signal, if the video controller have interrupt. This delay causes the incorrect printing position vertically. To avoid the problem, the following command is useful.

EscCR!12340M (27)(13)(33)(49)(50)(51)(52)(48)(77)
<1Bh><0Dh><21h><31h><32h><33h><34h><30h><4Dh>

- Laser diode drive port of video interface of MIO port is closed.

EscCR!12341M (27)(13)(33)(49)(50)(51)(52)(49)(77)
<1Bh><0Dh><21h><31h><32h><33h><34h><31h><4Dh>

- Laser diode drive port of video interface of MIO port is opened.

EscCR!12342M (27)(13)(33)(49)(50)(51)(52)(50)(77)
<1Bh><0Dh><21h><31h><32h><33h><34h><32h><4Dh>

- Laser diode drive port of video interface of MIO port is opened and send the print start command to printer engine immediately after sending the VSREQ signal.

Status readback

Introduction

Status readback features are explained in this section. The printer sends a status response message after receiving a request for its status by these commands. You can get the information as shown below from the printer.

- available printer(user) memory
- current available fonts and symbol sets
- the ID numbers of downloaded macros and user-defined patterns to verify their presence

The computer system must have a device driver for bi-directional communication to get the printers status response. Bi-directional communication is supported on the HL-10h and HL-6V by the printer driver which comes with these machines.

Memory status request

You can identify the capacity of the user memory in the printer by using the memory status request. You can determine whether to execute "downloading" or not, by knowing the available memory and thus avoid printer memory overrun errors.

Entity Status

You can request the printer to send the status of its entities. A font, symbol set, macro, or user-defined pattern in the printer can be an entity. In order to request entity status, a position type and a position unit must be identified first and then the entity request command must be sent.

Location type is the memory positions that contain the entities. Memory positions are internal ROM, RAM, cartridges/cards, PCMCIA memory card and one additional position specified as "currently selected". Currently selected means the entity is active. However, "currently selected" can be applied only for fonts and user-defined patterns.

Location unit means more specific position within the location type.

When the location type and unit are identified, you can request the status with the Inquire Status Readback Entity command. The entity (font, symbol set, macro, or user-defined pattern) is specified by this command and the printer sends the response.

When an invalid request is sent, the printer sends an error response back.

Status Response

If a status request (command) is received, the printer produces the response data. The printer accumulates this data in an I/O status buffer and saves the response in this buffer until a user reads it or you turn off the printer.

The printer clears the status responses when Printer resolution or Page protection or Emulation language is changed.

The printer processes status requests and their related response in the order in which the printer receives them.

According to the internal printer operations, the number of responses the printer can accumulate is different. If you use multiple applications or share the printer, you should read the response to a request before making a new request.

You should use the Echo command so that your applications request will synchronize with the printer's responses, because an earlier application might have requested a status and the printer might retain it.

A status response gets routed back to the I/O port that it was requested from.

Status response syntax

All of the status responses begin with "PCL", Carriage Return control code and a Line Feed control code. The response is ended by a Carriage Return and a Line Feed control code. At the end of the transaction, status responses are ended by a Form Feed Control code. The fundamental syntax for the status response is as shown below.

```
PCL<CR> <LF>
INFO TITLE<CR><LF>
KEYWORDn=DATAn<CR><LF>
KEYWORDn=DATAn<CR><LF>
     .
     .
     .
<FF>
```

TITLE, KEYWORDn, and DATAn are strings which differ according to the status readback command being operated. One or more keyword lines related to the status readback response accompanies every status readback response. Echo command response differs from this, and is as shown below.

```
PCL<CR><LF>
ECHO ValueField<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

ValueField is the decimal number which comes from the Echo command value field.

For future printers, keywords might be added. Applications in which the status readback is used should be made to disregard lines with keywords they do not understand.

Set Status Readback Location Type

ESC*s#T (27)(42)(115)#(84) <1Bh><2Ah><73h>#<54h>

This command determines the status location type to the value of #.
The location type is used in association with the location unit in order to specify an entity location for a status request.

- #=0 specifies an invalid location. When the printer receives an Inquire Entity Command, an error response is generated. This is the default value. When you execute a printer reset, this value is reset to 0.
- # = 1 specifies the currently selected location.
- # = 2 specifies all locations.
- # = 3 specifies the printer's internal location.
- # = 4 specifies the downloaded entity.
- # = 5 specifies the user-installed card/cartridge

The location type setting is retained by the printer. When the printer does not send the set status readback location type command in order to change the setting for an entity request, then the printer uses the currently available location type setting.

Set Status Readback Location Unit

ESC*s#U (27)(42)(115)#(85) <1Bh><2Ah><73h>#<55h>

- The status location unit is selected by the value of #.
- The printer uses the location unit in association with the location type in order to specify an entity location for a status request.

Type	Unit	
0	-	invalid location
1	-	currently selected location
2	-	all locations
3	0	all internal entities
4	0	all downloaded entities
	1	downloaded entity as temporary
	2	downloaded entity as permanent
5	0	All cartridge/cards
	1	the cartridge/card which has the highest priority.
	n	the cartridge/card which has the lowest priority

- When the location value is 0, 1 and 2, it ignores the unit value which might be set to any value. The default value is 0, and whenever you reset the printer, the value is reset to default value.
- The location unit setting is retained by the printer. If the printer does not send this command to change the setting for an entity request, then it uses the currently available location units.
- The printer may set the location type and unit in order. It does not identify any invalid combinations until it receives the inquire entity command. Hence, if the unit value is not in the correct range, it sets the unit to the value for a proper error response to be sent when the inquire entity command is received.

Inquire Status Readback Entity

ESC*s#I (27)(42)(115)#(73) <1Bh><2Ah><73h>#<49h>

- Specifies the entity type and makes the printer produce a status response for the entity identified in the status readback location (type and unit).

Value	entity type
0	Font
1	Macro
2	User-defined Pattern
3	Symbol set
4	Font extended

Entity Status Response

The status response for an inquire status readback entity command differs according to the type of the requested entity.

Font Response

Keywords returned from the printer depend on whether the printer font is a bitmap, unbound scalable, or bound scalable. Below is the list of keywords for a font request.

```
SELECT =
SYMBOLSETS=
LOCTYPE=
LOCUNIT=
```

Below is an example of a font status response for inquire status command.

```
Internal, bitmap, LetterGothic 16.66
Internal, unbound scalable, PcTennessee italic
Downloaded, bound scalable, Portugal
```

Font status:

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>(8U<ESC>(s0p16.66h9.5v0s0b130T"
SELECT="<Esc>(s1p__v1s0b4101T"
SYMBOLSETS="0D, 0I, 0N, 0S, 0U, 1E, 1F, 1G, ..."
SELECT="<Esc>(1U<Esc>(s1p__v0s0b5111T<Esc>(22X"
    .
    .
    .
```

In a font status response, the "SELECT=" keyword line specifies the individual fonts. The font is identified by this line by specifying the font selection characteristics such as symbol set, spacing, pitch, height, style, stroke weight, and typefaces. It returns the "SELECT=" for all font types.

In a status response, the five characters such as "<", "E", "s", "c", and "&>" represent an escape character.

Keywords following a "SELECT=" keyword mean the font specified by that "SELECT=" keyword.

Bitmap Fonts

With regard to bitmap fonts, the printer returns the "SELECT=" line. This specifies the font selection features. For instance, the printer returns the printer's internal, bitmap, Roman-8 LetterGothic font as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT"=<Esc>(8U<Esc>(s0p16.66h8.5v0s0b130T"
```

Bound Scalable Fonts

With regard to bound scalable fonts, an underscore("...s1p__v0s...,") in the "SELECT=" line means it is a bound scalable font. Also, the related features are indicated. Either the height or pitch is indicated depending upon whether the font is proportional or fixed spaced. The printer, for instance, returns the printer's internal scalable Symbol font (proportionally spaced) as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>(19M<Esc>(s1p__v0s0b16901T"
```

Unbound Scalable Fonts

With regard to unbound fonts, the printer adds the "SYMBOLSETS=" keyword to specify the symbol sets which can be used, as the symbol sets can also be used with an unbound font, and there is no symbol set sequence in the "SELECT=" line. The printer, for instance, returns the printer's internal unbound scalable Brougham (medium, fixed spaced) font and Pc Tennessee (bold italic, proportional spaced) fonts as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>(s0p__h0s0b4099T"
SYMBOLSETS="0D, 0I, 0N, 0U, 1E, 1F, 1G, ..."
SELECT="<Esc>(s1p__v1s1s3b4101T"
SYMBOLSETS="0D, 0I, 0N, 0S, 0U, 1E, 1F, 1G, ..."
```

Download Fonts

With regard to download fonts (bitmap, bound scalable or unbound scalable), the font ID number is included at the end of the "SELECT=" line. For instance, the printer returns a downloaded bitmap Brougham with a font ID of 40 and a downloaded, unbound scalable, Dom Casual typeface with a font ID of 79 as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>(8U<Esc>(s0p11.00h12.0v0s0b3T<Esc>(40X"
SELECT="<Esc>(s1p__v1s0b5259T<Esc>)79X"
SYMBOLSETS="0D, 0D, 0N, 0S, 0U, 1E, 1F, 1G, ..."
```

Location Type 1 (currently selected) Font

With regard to a status location type 1 (currently selected) font, the printer returns a single font, the printer font which is currently selected. The following are the keywords and data returned.

The printer returns the "LOCTYPE=" and "LOCUNIT=" after the "SELECT=" line for every font.

"SELECT=" line changes for bound and unbound scalable fonts.

For all scalable fonts, the actual size (height or pitch) is indicated instead of the underscores.

For unbound scalable fonts, the symbol set which is bound to the font at present is indicated.

Forall fonts, when the font is a secondary font, ")" replace the "(" characters in the "SELECT=" line.

"LOCTYPE=" specifies the location type of the font which is selected at present. The value field of the Set Status Readback Type command is related to the value returned.

"LOCUNIT=" specifies the location unit of the font which is selected at present. The value field of the Set Status Readback Unit command is related to the value returned.

For instance, if the printer font which is selected at present is a bold 12 point Presentation bitmap font which is selected from a cartridge, and a font entity request with the location type set to 1 is produced, the response will be returned as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>(2U<Esc>(s0p10.00h12.0v0s3b11T"
LOCTYPE=5
LOCUNIT=1
```

For instance, suppose the printer font which is selected at present is unbound scalable Dom Casual font with the features below:

```
downloaded (font ID of 78)
temporary
Roman-8(specified for printing)
secondary font
18 point
```

When an entity request is produced with the location type set to 1(selected at present), it returns the response below.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
SELECT="<Esc>)8U<Esc>)s1p18.00v1s0b4148T<Esc>)78X"
LOCTYPE=4
LOCUNIT=1
```

Font Extended Response

The font extended response supplies a method to return the name and internal ID number of the font as well as the "SELECT=" line. It is the same as a font status response since "SELECT=", "SYMBOLSETS=", "LOCTYPE=", and "LOCUNIT=" are returned in the same way. With regard to a font extended request, it returns the two additional keywords, "DEFID=" and "NAME=" as follows.

"DEFID" specifies the internal ID number of the font which is shown on the test print (font list). This is the number which is used to select the font as the default font from the control panel of printer or from PJL. The "DEFID=" number is made of two parts, which are a location and an ID number. The locations which are likely are as follows;

I - Internal
C - Cartridge (printer with single cartridge)
Cn - Cartridge (printer with multiple cartridge/card when n is specified by printer.)
S - Permanent download fonts

For temporary download fonts, it returns "DEFID=NONE" because temporary download fonts do not have an internal ID number.

The printer assigns the internal ID number of the temporary download font with the Font ID (ESC*c#D) command. This internal ID number differs from the downloaded ID number assigned to a downloaded font.

It returns "NAME=" only for font extended status requests. The name of the font is the same as shown on the font printout.

For instance, it returns the font extended response for the printer's internal bitmap LetterGothic font and a downloaded unbound Portugal temporary font as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS EXTENDED
SELECT="<Esc>(8U<Esc>(s0p10.00h12.0v0s0b0T"
DEFID="I 45"
NAME="Line Printer"
SELECT="<Ec>(s1p__v1s3b4111T<Esc>(7X"
SymbolSETS="0D, 0I, 0N, 0S, 0U, 1E, 1F, 1G,..."
DEFID=NONE
NAME="CG Palacio  BdIt"
SELECT="...
.
.
.
```

For instance, a font extended response with the location type set to 1(selected at present) where the font which is selected at present is the internal Pc Tennessee (18 point identified for printing) bold, returns the response as follows.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS EXTENDED
SELECT="<Esc>(8U<Esc>(s0p18.00h0s3b4101T"
DEFID="<Esc>(8U<Esc>s0p18.000s3b4101T"
DEFID="I 2"
NAME="PcTennessee  Bd"
LOCTYPE=1
LOCUNIT=1
```

Macro Response

The status response for macros indicates all of the macro IDs ("IDLIST=") for the macros in a particular location.

Status location type 1(selected at present) is an ineffective location for macros and an error is returned.

A macro status response may be shown as follows.

```
PCL
INFO MACROS
IDLIST="1, 3, 8, 29, 32"
```

Use-Defined Pattern Response

The status response of user-defined patterns indicates all of the user-defined patterns and all of the user-defined pattern IDs ("IDLIST") for the patterns in a particular location.

A user-defined pattern response may be shown as follows.

```
PCL
INFO PATTERN
IDLIST="1, 2, 9, 13, 27, 456"
```

When the location type is specified to 1 (selected at present), "LOCTYPE=" and "LOCUNIT=" lines are added.

It returns the "LOCTYPE=" only for a status location type 1 requirement. It specifies the location type of the pattern which is selected at present.

It returns the "LOCUNIT=" only for a status location type 1 requirement. It specifies the location unit of the pattern which is selected at present.

A user-defined pattern response for the pattern selected at present may be shown as follows.

```
PCL
INFO PATTERNS
IDLIST="88"
LOCTYPE=4
LOCUNIT=2
```

When the pattern selected at present is set to one of the internal HP-specified patterns, there is no number available and it returns the response "ERROR=NONE".

```
PCL
INFO PATTERNS
ERROR=NONE
```

Symbol Set Response

The symbol set response indicates all of the symbol set IDs ("IDLIST") for all of the symbol sets in the identified location. There can be bound and unbound scalable fonts in the identified location (type and unit).

A symbol set response may be shown as follows.

```
PCL
INFO SYMBOLSETS
IDLIST="0U, 2K, 8M, 11U"
```

Status location type 1 (selected at present) is an incorrect location for unbound font symbol sets and returns an error.

Example responses in this section for "SYMBOLSETS=" do not indicate the complete list of symbol sets which are available internally, but only a partial list . The internal symbol sets depend on the printer and might differ according to the printer.

Entity Error Codes

When an out-of-range value exists in the command value fields, or when the entity is not supported or does not exist, or the request is inadequate, the printer replies with one of four likely errors as follows:

```
Invalid Entity
Invalid Location
None
Internal Error

ERROR=INVALID ENTITY
```

When the identified entity type is not in the range or not supported, it returns an invalid entity error.

```
PCL
INFO ENTITY
ERROR=INVALID ENTITY

ERROR=INVALID LOCATION
```

When the entity type is correct, but the location (the type, the unit, or the combination) is not, or when the identified device is not installed, it returns an invalid location error.

```
PCL
INFO FONTS
ERROR=INVALID LOCATION

ERROR=NONE
```

When the entity type and location are correct, but there are not any entities of the identified type in the location, or when the type is not correct for the identified entity, it generates the NONE error response.

```
PCL
INFO SYMBOLSETS
ERROR=NONE

ERROR=INTERNAL ERROR
```

The status response for some requirements could be quite big. When status replies are requested, it returns an internal error if the printer runs out of memory as follows:

```
PCL
INFO SYMBOL SETS
ERROR=INTERNAL ERROR
```

Free Space Command

ESC*s1M (27)(42)(115)(48)(77) <1Bh><2Ah><73h><31h><4Dh>

The amount of memory which is free for use is returned by this command. Two values are returned: the total amount of free memory and the largest block of free memory.

When you send a value other than 1, an error ("ERROR = INVALID UNIT")is returned.

The Free Space command is sent to check the free memory space and you can acknowledge whether the printer has enough memory for a job or not before you execute your job. Also you can check the amount of memory which an entity or any other data used.

> Free memory space will always be changing during different printing conditions.
> *** For example, when the printer receives print data, it is stored in the printer memory. So, the free space in the printer memory becomes smaller. After the data is printed, the printer memory becomes empty, so the free space becomes larger again.

Certain action is needed when you decide there is not enough memory to hold the data to be downloaded.

Font Cache

In order to print characters from a scalable font, the printer changes the scalable character outlines into sized bitmaps. These bitmapped characters are produced on a character-by-character basis and produced bitmapped characters are stored in memory. As it prints more pages using more fonts, more memory is consumed by the bitmaps. The bitmap characters used on the first page of a job can stay in memory till the end of a job. These stored bitmap characters are known as the font cache.

If a Brother HL-10h printer encounters a memory low condition, all of the font cache is automatically deleted. Also, font cache and temporary entities can be cleared by a Printer Reset command.

Memory Status Response

The total available memory is specified by "TOTAL=" and the largest continuous block size of available memory is specified by "LARGEST=".

```
PCL
INFO MEMORY
TOTAL = 10000
LARGEST = 3500
```

Memory Error Response

When the value field of the free memory command is out of range, the response for this command would be as follows;

```
PCL
INFO MEMORY
ERROR = INVALID UNIT
```

Flush All Pages Command

ESC&r#F (27)(38)(114)#(70) <1Bh><26h><72h>#<46h>

This command suspends accepting data from a PC and clears the user memory.

- #=0 suspends receiving data and ejects all complete data. Incompleted data remains in the printers memory.
- #=1 suspends receiving data and ejects all data remaining in the printer memory.

Echo Command

ESC*s#X (27)(42)(115)#(88) <1Bh><2Ah><73h>#<58h>

This command is used to distinguish each request and response. In networking/sharing environments, some requests may be sent from a number of PCs to one printer. This command sends the user selected value to the printer and the printer can return the same value. Adding this command before the status request command allows this echo value to distinguish the corresponding status response.

INDEX

A

adaptive compression, 80
anchor point, 87
AppleTalk Configuration, 94
APT, 84
area fill, 71

B

Backspace, 6
binding, 12
Bitmap fonts, 32
bold, 44
Bound fonts, 33

C

Carriage return, 6
CCITT G3/G4, 83
character code, 61
character descriptor and data, 61
character spacing, 35
Compress transfer graphics, 85
compression mode, 79
Condensed, 43
Control codes, 6
Coordinates, 18
Criteria for font selection, 34
cursor position stack, 29

D

Decipoints, 18, 26
default fonts, 34
Define Symbol Set, 37
destination, 68
Display functions mode, 8
Downloadable font, 46
Downloading, 47
Draw filled rectangle, 75
Duplex, 12

E

Echo Command, 105
emulation mode, 14
End macro definition, 90
End raster transfer, 85
End-of-line wrap, 8
Enter HP-GL/2 mode, 87
Entity Error Codes (Status Readback), 103
Entity Status, 95
Entity Status Response, 98
envelope, 10
envelopes, 11
Environments, 9
Esc, 7
Escape, 6
Exit current emulation mode, 14

F

factory default environment, 9
factory default settings, 13
fill pattern, 73
fixed spacing, 41
fixed underlining, 45
floating underlining, 45
Flush All Pages Command, 105
font descriptor, 47
Font ID, 46
Font orientation, 45
Font Response (Status Readback), 98
fonts, 32
Form feed, 6
Free Space Command, 104

G

graphics, 68
graphics window, 15

H

Half line feed, 29
Height, 35
height - raster area, 78
high resolution control, 77
HMI, 22
horizontal margins, 20
horizontal motion index, 22
horizontal plot size, 88
Horizontal position, 26
horizontal size of picture frame, 87

I

Inquire Entity, 98
Italic, 43

J

Job separation command, 13

L

landscape, 30
Left long-edge offset registration, 11
left margin, 19
Line feed, 6
line pitch, 21
line spacing, 23
Line termination, 8
Location Type - Status Readback, 97

Location Unit - Status Readback, 97
Logical page, 15
lower cassette, 11

M

macro execution, 90
Macro ID, 89
macro overlay environment, 9
Macro Response (Status Readback), 102
Macros, 89
manual paper feed, 11
measurement, 18
Memory status, 95
MIO Video I/O port control, 94
Mode 9 compression, 80
modified print environment, 9
multi-purpose tray, 11

O

Operations on downloaded fonts, 46
orientation, 30
orientation - raster image, 77

P

page, 15
page dimensions, 16
Page length, 24
Page size, 10
Paper Side Selection, 12
Paper source, 11
pattern, 68
pattern reference point, 72
pattern type, 73
PCL, 7
Perforation skip, 24
Physical page, 15
picture frame, 87
Pitch, 35, 42
point, 42
portrait, 30
Positioning the cursor, 25
primary font, 6
Printable area, 15
proportional spacing, 41

R

Raster graphics, 77
raster resolution, 77
rectangle height, 75
rectangle width, 74
rectangles, 74
RESET, 9, 13
right margin, 19
Rows, 25
Rows and columns, 18

S

Scalable fonts, 32
Scaling of scalable fonts, 43
secondary font, 6
Selecting a downloaded font, 47
Selecting the height, 42
Selecting the pitch, 42
Selecting the stroke weight, 44
Selecting the style, 43
Selecting the symbol set, 39
Selecting the type of character spacing, 41
self test, 14
Send raster data, 85
sequences, 7
Simplex/Duplex printing, 12
solid, 43
Source, 68
Space, 6
Start macro definition, 89
Start raster transfer, 84
Status readback, 95
Status Response, 96
Status response syntax, 96
Stroke weight, 35, 44
Style, 35, 43
Symbol collections, 35
Symbol set, 34
Symbol set control command, 39
Symbol Set ID Code, 36
Symbol Set Response (Status Readback), 103

T

test sheet, 14
Text area, 15
Text direction, 31
Text length, 23
text wrap, 8
TIFF, 79, 84
top margin, 20
Top offset registration, 12
transparency pattern, 70
transparency source, 69
Transparent print data, 45
type of paper, 10
Typeface, 35, 44

U

Unbound fonts, 33
Underlining text, 45
Unit of Measure, 18
Units, 18, 25
upper cassette, 11
Upright, 43
Use-Defined Pattern Response (Status Readback), 102
user default environment, 9
user settings, 13
User-defined pattern, 71
User-defined pattern control, 72

V

Vector graphics, 87
vertical motion index, 21
vertical plot size, 88
vertical size of picture frame, 87
VMI, 21

W

width - raster area, 78

Y

y-offset (raster), 79

Chapter 3
PJL
Printer Job Language

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS **2**

1. INTRODUCTION **4**

1.1 ABOUT PJL 4
1.2. IN CASE OF USING PJL WITH NON-PJL PRINTER 5
1.3. PJL SYNTAX AND FORMAT 6
1.4. VARIABLES 7
1.5. INVALID COMMANDS 7

2. HOW TO USE PJL **8**

2.1. OVERVIEW 8
2.2. PJL JOB REQUIREMENT 8

3 COMMAND GROUP **9**

4. KERNEL COMMANDS **10**

4.1. INTRODUCTION 10
4.2. UEL COMMAND 10
4.3. EXECUTE COMMAND 11
4.4. ENTER COMMAND 11
4.5. COMMENT COMMAND 12
4.6. PRINTER LANGUAGE SWITCHING 13

5. JOB SEPARATION COMMENTS **14**

5.1. INTRODUCTION 14
5.2. JOB COMMAND 14
5.3. EOJ COMMAND 15

6. ENVIRONMENT COMMANDS **17**

6.1. INTRODUCTION 17
Print environment *17*
PJL reset conditions *18*
Remember about environments *19*
PJL environment variables *19*
6.2. VARIABLES 20
Variables for HL-10h *20*
Variables for HL-660 ..... *22*
Variables for HL-1260 ..... *26*
6.3. DEFAULT COMMAND 29
6.4. INITIALIZE COMMAND 30
6.5. RESET COMMAND 31
6.6. SET COMMAND 32

7. STATUS READBACK COMMANDS 33

7.1. INTRODUCTION 33
Synchronization with the printer *33*
Basic Format of Status Readback Responses *33*
7.2. INQUIRE COMMAND 34
7.3. DINQUIRE COMMAND 36
7.4. ECHO COMMAND 38
7.5. INFO COMMAND 39
ID Category *40*
CONFIG Category *40*
MEMORY Category *42*
STATUS Category *43*
VARIABLES Category *43*
USTATUS Category *45*
7.6. USTATUS COMMAND 47
Device Variable *48*
JOB Variables *49*
PAGE Variables *49*
TIMED Variable *50*
7.7. USTATUSOFF COMMAND 51
7.8. JOB RECOVERY 51

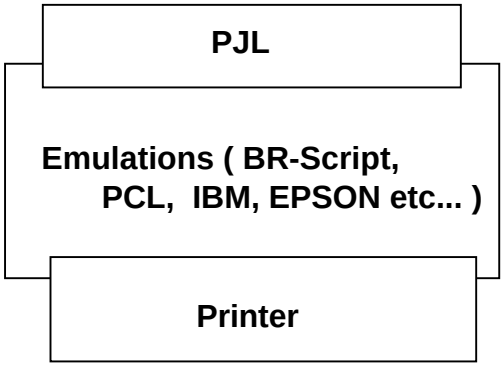
8. DEVICE ATTENDANCE COMMANDS 52

8.1. INTRODUCTION 52
8.2. RDYMSG COMMAND 53
8.3. OPMSG COMMAND 54
8.4. STMSG COMMAND 55

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 About PJL

Printer Job Language(PJL) provides job status control by sending the printer status information to the application. PJL can be a valuable tool for the single-user environment, but is a much more useful tool for the networking / sharing environment.



PJL allows job-level control that cannot be accomplished with PCL, Postscript or other emulations. PJL includes five major features.

(1) Printer language switching
With PJL, it is possible to switch positively between the printer languages, such as PCL, Postscript, Epson, IBM and Diablo directly from applications.

(2) Printer status readback
PJL can provide information such as printer model, configuration, printer feature setting, error information and other status information to the application.

(3) Front panel control
PJL can remotely control the printer's control panel settings and messages.

(4) Easy of utilization
All PJL commands except **UEL** command have a user-friendly construction using printable characters and English words.

(5) Spooler control
PJL provides an improved spooler which can manage the printer better, particularly in a network environment.

Note :
The commands for Printer status readback or Front panel control can be invoked in modes other than PCL or BR-Script. However, the commands for printer status readback get the information from PCL or BR-Script, and the commands for front panel control perform the settings for PCL or BR-Script.

1.2. In case of using PJL with non-PJL Printer

Our resent printer models HL-10h, HL-600 series, HL-660 and HL-1260 support PJL, however, earlier models do not . If the PJL commands are sent to a non-PJL printer, the printer acts as follows;

PCL Jobs

For a PCL printer which does not support the PJL language, the PJL command is printed as ASCII text until initial PCL printer reset command (**<ESC>E**) is received. After receiving the PCL reset command, the printer ejects a page and proceeds with the PCL print job on a new page.
The print job is possibly followed by more printed PJL commands.
Without the PCL reset command, the PJL commands are printed as ASCII text on the same page as the PCL print job.

Postscript Jobs

For Postscript printers, when the printer receives a PJL command, a Postscript error is reported. The Postscript job is discarded.

Other Printer Languages

According to the active emulation, the PJL command is understood differently. To avoid the problem, you should not use PJL commands on any non-PJL printer.

1.3. PJL Syntax and Format

Syntax :

<For Example>

```
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = emulation [<CR>]<LF>
```

@PJL	PJL Prefix
ENTER	Command name
LANGUAGE	Option name
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE	Enter this portion verbatim
[ ]	The words in brackets [...] indicates optional parameters. You should not type the brackets themselves in the command.
< .. >	The words in < .. > indicates a control code character
<LF>	Required line feed

< HT >	Horizontal tab character (ASCII 9)
< LF >	Line feed character (ASCII 10)
< CR >	Carriage Return (ASCII 13)
< SP >	Space (ASCII 32)
< ESC >	Escape (ASCII 27)
< FF >	Form Feed (ASCII 12)
< WS >	White space which consists of some < SP > and < HT >
< words >	Printable characters

Format :

PJL commands have 4 types of format as shown below.

Format 1<ESC>%-12345X

This format is only used for Universal Exit Language(UEL) command.

Format 2@PJL[<CR>]<LF>

This format allows a PJL line without a command, and is used to break several PJL command lines visually, to make it easier to see the PJL command lines.

Format 3@PJL command [<words>] [<CR>] <LF>

This format is used only for the COMMENT and ECHO commands.

Format 4@PJL command [command modifier : value] option=value[<CR>]<LF>

This format is used for all other PJL commands.

PJL Syntax Rules :

PJL Syntax should be written according to the following rules.

* "**@PJL**" must be uppercase. The other words of a PJL command are not case-sensitive.
* Spacing between characters consists of one or more of either the space character (ASCII 32) or the horizontal tab character(ASCII 9).
* White space should be placed as follows, depending on the location within the command.
  - White space should be placed between **@PJL** and the PJL command name, and between the PJL command and command modifiers.
  - If a white space is placed in any other place in a command, it is optional.
  - If a white space is not placed between two portions of a command, the command is not valid.

1.4. Variables

PJL can use alphanumeric, numeric variables and strings.

Alphanumeric variables

The first character must always be a character in any combination of letters and digits Letters consists of the uppercase characters (ASCII 65-90) and lowercase characters (ASCII 97-122). Digits consists of the numbers 0-9 (ASCII 48-57).

<Example>
Brother2245

Numeric variables

The number consists of some digits with one optional decimal point and an optional + or - sign preceding the first digit.

<Example>	<Wrong>
0.1234	
-123.4	+.05
+123.0	-.05

Strings

Strings consist of any combination of characters from ASCII 32 to 255, plus ASCII 9, except ASCII 34 (quotation marks), which are used to define the start and end of a string.

<Example>
"Print Job KKK"
"This is a sample string"

1.5. Invalid Commands

There are two general types of invalid commands. Each type operates differently.
Syntax errors include :

- unrecognized command and command modifier
- strings which are missing quotation marks
- numeric values which are missing digits before the decimal point

etc ....

Syntax errors

Commands received with Syntax errors cause the printer to ignore the entire PJL command.

Syntax warning and semantic warning

Syntax warnings and semantic warnings are issued for commands which include unsupported options, values which are out of range, or wrong or missing commands, etc. When the printer receives commands which would create a syntax warning or semantic warning, it operates the command as long as possible, however, the portion of the command which would create a warning is ignored.

2. HOW TO USE PJL

2.1. Overview

PJL resides "above" printer languages such as Postscript and PCL. Each job can be distinguished from the other jobs by PJL, and it can switch between PJL commands and printer language commands for each job.

PJL Code	PCL Job	PJL Code	Postscript Job	PJL Code

2.2. PJL Job Requirement

Some conditions are required in order for PJL commands to work correctly. Jobs which follow these conditions will work correctly with a PJL printer in single user and network environments.

* All PJL jobs must begin and end with a **UEL** command.
* The **@PJL** prefix must be placed immediately after the **UEL** command which starts PJL jobs, and can be followed by **<CR>** and <**LF**>. Characters, including control characters, must not be placed between the **UEL** command and the **@PJL** prefix.
* Nothing must be placed after the **UEL** command which ends a PJL job.
* <**LF**> is required to terminate all PJL commands. <**CR**> can be placed before <**LF**>, however, <**CR**> is optional and is ignored.
* Blank lines must not exist. If a blank line is required, the **@PJL** <**CR**><**LF**> line can be used.

3 COMMAND GROUP

Command Group	Command	Command Description
Kernel Commands	UEL	Exits current printer language and returns control to PJL.
	EXECUTE	Orders the printer to execute the specified operation.
	SUPERUSER (HL-1260, HL-660 only)	Moves to the SUPERUSER mode.
	SUPERUSEROFF (HL-1260, HL-660 only)	Exit from the SUPERUSER mode.
	WNVRAM (HL-1260, HL-660 only)	Write the specified data on the specified address of the printer's NVRAM.
	RNVRAM (HL-1260, HL-660 only)	Retrieve the data from the specified address of the printer's NVRAM.
	COMMENT	Comments can be placed in the command line
	ENTER	Selects a printer language
Job Separation Commands	JOB	Informs printer of job start
	EOJ	Informs printer of job end
Environment Commands	DEFAULT	Sets default value
	SET	Sets an environment value which is available during a PJL job
	INITIALIZE	Resets the current and default PJL variables to factory values
	RESET	Resets current PJL variables to default values
Status Readback Commands	INQUIRE	Requests the current value for a specified environment
	DINQUIRE	Requests the default value for a specified environment
	ECHO	Returns the <words> to the host computer
	INFO	Requests a specified category.
	USTATUS	Allows the printer to send unsolicited status information
	USTATUSOFF	Stops the printer sending all unsolicited status information
Device Attendance Commands	RDYMSG	Replaces the READY message on the control panel
	OPMSG	Displays altered message on the control panel and takes the printer off-line
	STMSG	Displays altered message on the control panel and takes the printer off-line. If status readback is enabled, returns name of the key.

4. KERNEL COMMANDS

4.1. Introduction

This section explains three PJL command, **UEL**, **ENTER** and **COMMENT**. These commands provide the minimum set of tools to operate job control.

UEL command (Universal Exit Command)
ENTER command
COMMENT command

4.2. UEL Command

The Universal Exit Command causes the printer to exit the current printer language and sets the printer into PJL mode.

Syntax :

<ESC>%-12345X

- The **UEL** command is a data stream sequence.
- The **UEL** command indicates to the current printer language to finish a job. If PJL is available, PJL commands which have not yet been executed are cancelled and the printer is ready to accept the next PJL command.
- The **UEL** command must be placed in the first and last position of all PJL job command sequences.
- Printers which have an Auto I/O switching feature can use the **UEL** command in order to settle job boundaries.
- The **@PJL** prefix which is placed at the beginning of a PJL job must follow immediately after the **UEL** command .
- If the printer receives codes other than the PJL prefix, it enables the default printer language and prints the job.
- **ENTER** command should be used in order to specify the printer language.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E.......PCL JOB........<ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X
```

4.3. EXECUTE command

The **EXECUTE** command orders the printer to execute the specified operation.
This command is supported only by HL-660 series printer.

Syntax :

@PJL ENTER *operation* [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

- *operation*

  SHUTDOWN : The printer goes into the sleep mode.
  DEMOPAGE : The printer prints the demo page.
  RESIFONT : The printer prints the list of resident fonts.
  PERMFONT: The printer prints the list of permanent download fonts.
  PRTCONFIG: The printer prints the list of printer settings.

- If the printer receives this command, it immediately executes the specified operation.

- If this command specifies the operation which is not supported, this command is ignored.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL EXECUTE DEMOPAGE <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

4.4. ENTER command

The **ENTER** command specifies which emulation the printer uses to print data.

Syntax :

@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = emulation [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

- *emulation*
  The valuables varies according to your printer model.

- The **ENTER** command must be placed immediately before print data.

- The specified emulation will be used immediately after the terminator <**LF**> of the **ENTER** command.

- If the printer does not receive the **ENTER** command, it uses the default printer language which is set by the control panel or the printer language which is set by **SET PERSONALITY** command.

- In the case that the printer emulation is selected by the **ENTER** command, the printer must switch to the defined printer language.

- If this command specifies an emulation which is not supported, data after this command is ignored until the next **UEL** command.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E.......PCL JOB........<ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X
@PJL COMMENT Start of Postscript job <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = POSTSCRIPT <CR><LF>
%!PS-ADOBE......Postscript JOB.....^D
<ESC>%-12345X
@PJL COMMENT End of Postscript job <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

4.5. COMMENT command

The **COMMENT** command is used to add an information line, such as an explanation for the PJL command.

Syntax :

@PJL COMMENT *remarks* [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

- *remarks*
  Printable character(ASCII 33-255 and White space which contains <**HT**> and <**SP**>)

- The **COMMENT** command is helpful for placing an explanation of a PJL command.

- The **COMMENT** command can be placed on the PJL line anywhere between the UEL command and the **ENTER** command.

- The **COMMENT** command is terminated by <**LF**>.

- Comments can only be one line long. If you wish to add more text, start a new comment line.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ----------------------------<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT --    PCL & PS JOB         --<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ----------------------------<CR><LF>
@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL SET RET = ON <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E.......PCL JOB........<ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Start of Postscript job <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = POSTSCRIPT <CR><LF>
%!PS-ADOBE......Postscript JOB.....^D
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT End of Postscript job <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

4.6. Printer Language Switching

There are three methods of switching printer languages.

Explicit Switching

Explicit switching means the method which uses the PJL ENTER LANGUAGE command to switch to the desired emulation. As the desired emulation is explicitly specified, this method is the most reliable.

Implicit Switching

If a default printer language is configured, and the PJL ENTER command is not described on a PJL line, the printer uses the default printer emulation. This may not always select your desired emulation.

Context Switching

If the printer is set to 'automatic emulation selection', and the PJL ENTER command is not described in the PJL command, the printer investigates the incoming data and decides the required printer emulation. The printer can select the printer language by this switching , however, the PJL ENTER command is recommended most to select the printer language accurately.

5. JOB SEPARATION COMMANDS

5.1. Introduction

This section explains two PJL command, **JOB** and **EOJ**. These commands are used to determine the boundaries of a job. When these commands are used with status readback, the printer also can send status information at the beginning and end of each job.

5.2. JOB Command

The **JOB** Command sends information at the start of a PJL job to the printer and aligns the job with the page status information. It also specifies which pages of a job are to be printed.

NOTE: JOB and EOJ command are always used in pairs. You should not use one without the other.

Syntax :

@PJL JOB [NAME = "*job name*"][START = *first page*]
[END = *last page*] [PASSWORD = "*password*"][<CR>]<LF>

- NAME = "*job name*"
  This option NAME describes the print job as a job name. Printable characters(ASCII 33-255) and spaces or horizontal tab characters can be used for the job name. It can contain 80 characters max. and must be enclosed in double quotes. If the NAME option is set, the job name is included in the unsolicited job.

- START = *first page*
  This option START is used to provide a non-printing mode. You can specify from which page printing is to start. If the START option is not set, the printer starts printing at the beginning of the job.
  first page = 1 to 2,147,483,647 Default value = 1

- END = *last page*
  This option END indicates the page number of the last page to be printed. If the END option is not set, the printer prints to the end of the job. If the end of job is encountered before the START page, no pages are printed. If the end of job is encountered before the END page, printing terminates.

  last page = 1 to 2,147,483,647 Default value = prints entire job

- PASSWORD = *password* (HL-1260 only)
  When the password is set by DEFAULT command, modifying the NV RAM by DEFAULT or INITIALIZE command is locked with the password. Sending the correct password by this command can unlock this until the EOJ command is executed.

  password = 0 to 65,535 Default value = 0

- When the printer receives the **JOB** command, the **UEL** command is not recognized as a job boundary until an **EOJ** command.

- If the **UEL** command is placed between the **PJL JOB** and **EOJ** commands, it is handled as a printer language reset. In this case, UEL resets the printer environment to the PJL Current environment, not to the User Default Environment.

- If your application supports status readback capabilities, you can monitor the job status by the **USTATUS** command with the **JOB** option.

- If job status is available and a **JOB** command is received, the printer returns a job status message.
- NOTE: Resetting the page count according to unsolicited page status information does not affect the current page.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL JOB NAME = "KKK data from spooler" <CR><LF>

    <ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
    @PJL COMMENT Postscript Job <CR><LF>
    @PJL JOB NAME = "YYY data from spooler 2" <CR><LF>
    @PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = POSTSCRIPT <CR><LF>
    %!PS.......PS JOB........^D
    <ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
    @PJL EOJ NAME = "End of YYY data" <CR><LF>

<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E.........PCL JOB........<ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL EOJ NAME = "End of KKK" <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
```

5.3. EOJ Command

The EOJ command indicates to the printer that the job is completed. Use this command whenever you use the JOB command.

NOTE: JOB and EOJ command always are used in pairs. You should not use one without the other.

Syntax :

@PJL EOJ [*NAME = "job name"*] [<CR>]<LF>

- NAME = "*job name*"
  The **EOJ** command can name the print job. The job name is a string and must be enclosed in double quotes in the command syntax. The job name need not be same as the "job name" of the **JOB** command. If the NAME option is described, the unsolicited end-of-job status includes the job name. Job names can use printable characters(ASCII 33-255) and spaces or horizontal tab characters up to a maximum of 80 characters.
- The **EOJ** command indicates the end of job.
- Resets the PJL Current Environment variables to the default values.
- Terminates the non-printing mode.
- When the **EOJ** command is received, the printer returns unsolicited job status information.
- The **EOJ** command resets the page number associated with unsolicited page status.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL JOB NAME = "KKK data from spooler" <CR><LF>

    <ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
    @PJL COMMENT Postscript Job <CR><LF>
    @PJL JOB NAME = "YYY data from spooler 2" <CR><LF>
    @PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = POSTSCRIPT <CR><LF>
    %!PS.......PS JOB........^D
    <ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
    @PJL EOJ NAME = "End of YYY data" <CR><LF>

<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E.........PCL JOB........<ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL EOJ NAME = "End of KKK" <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

6. ENVIRONMENT COMMANDS

6.1. Introduction

The HL-10h, HL-1260 and HL-660 printers have many features which you are able to set using printer commands or through the printer control panel (remote printer console program). A combination of PJL commands and printer emulation commands allows you to set printer features to the desired state. This chapter describes the setting of printer features known as printer environments, and PJL commands you are able to use to set printer features to a desired state as follows;

- DEFAULT
  Set the default value for environment variables. (storing them in non volatile RAM , so called NV-RAM)

- INITIALIZE
  Reset the current and default PJL variables to the factory default values

- RESET
  Reset the current PJL values to the default values

- SET
  Set an environment variable to a specified value until the next PJL reset condition.

Print environment

The printer constantly maintains four environments, which are listed below in priority order

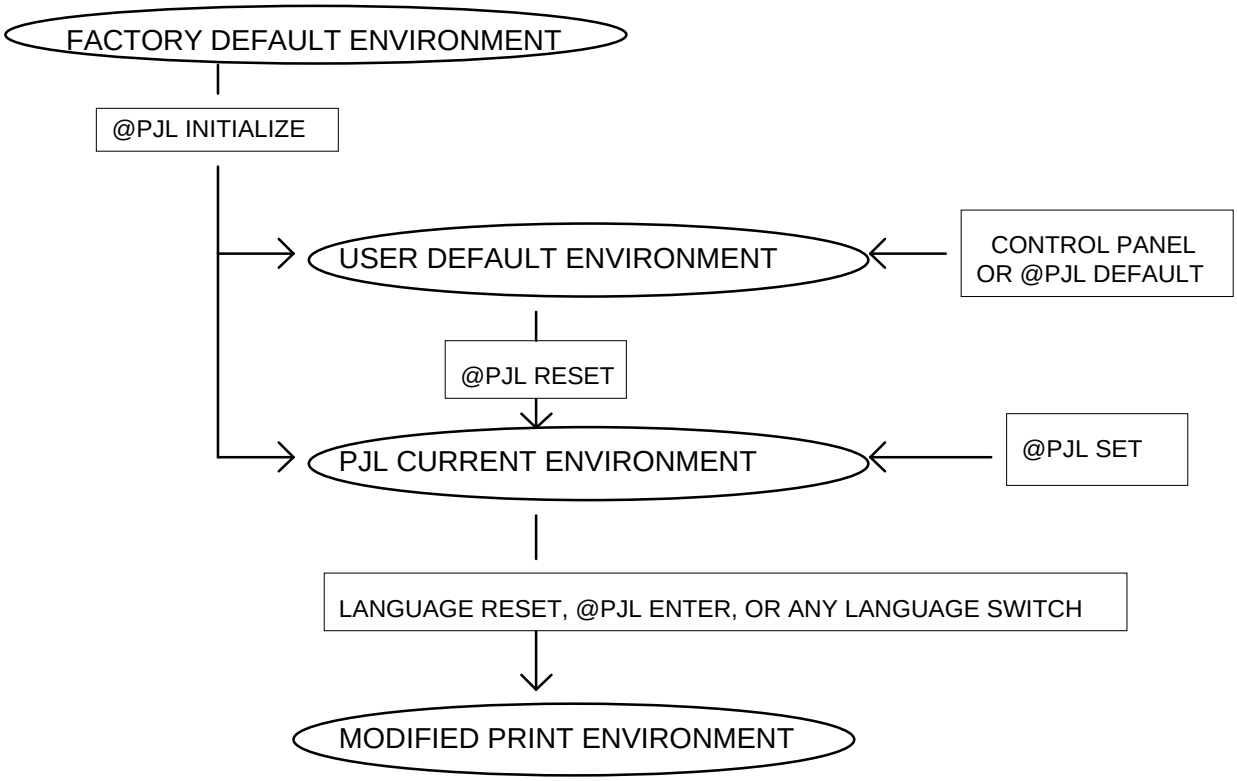
1. Factory Default Environment
These environment setting values are permanently stored in the printer. The printer uses these settings values when it is powered on for the first time after shipping from the factory, and after the @PJL INITIALIZE command is performed.

2. User Default Environment
These environment setting values are stored in the printer's NV-RAM through the printer's control panel (Remote Printer Console) or @PJL DEFAULT command. These values are placed into the PJL Current Environment following any PJL reset condition.

3. PJL Current Environment
These environment setting values contain the current PJL feature settings. Current settings are based on the User Default values and include any settings modified by the @PJL SET command. These setting values are changed to the User Default values as the default when a PJL reset occurs.

4. Modified Print Environment
These environment settings become active just after a printer language is entered. At that time, the PJL Current environment values are loaded into the Modified Print Environment and act as a base set of features. Then, Printer language commands are used to change or modify feature settings to the desired state. Whenever an emulation is activated or a reset command is received (reset command includes any printer language reset or PJL reset), the PJL Current environment settings are loaded into the Modified Print environment.

The diagram below illustrates how the environments interact and how the modified print environment is affected.



PJL reset conditions

The result of PJL reset conditions is different from that of a printer language reset (for example, **ESC E**). Printer language reset loads the PJL Current Environment values into the Modified Print Environment. PJL reset conditions load the User Default values into the PJL Current Environment, which are then loaded into the Modified Print Environment.

PJL reset occurs on the following events.

1. Power on
2. **UEL** command (when not between a **JOB** and **EOJ** command pair)
3. **@ PJL INITIALIZE** command
4. **@ PJL RESET** command
5. **@ PJL JOB** or **EOJ** command
6. Other printer-specific events
   - Reset from Control Panel
   - Language specific exit command
   - Emulation switching command

Remember about environments

Remember the following points when you use PJL to set the printer to a desired state.

1. The current feature settings are the same as the control panel values (or values in the remote printer console program) when beginning a PJL job.

2. The current feature settings (Modified Print Environment) become the same as the PJL Current Environment when the printer enters a printer language. The feature settings are modified by the printer language command once a printer language is started. All other settings are overridden by printer language commands.

3. The **SET** command changes the PJL Current Environment settings. These settings are effective until the next PJL reset condition.

4. The Control Panel, the remote printer console program or the **DEFAULT** command changes the User Default Environment (= Control Panel settings or remote printer console program settings)

5. Printer language commands change the Modified Print Environment. These settings are effective during a printer language job. The PJL Current Environment settings are loaded into the Modified Print Environment by a printer language specific reset, for example, **ESC E** for PCL.

6. Always use the **PJL RESET** command after a job is completed if the **SET** command is used in the PJL job.

PJL environment variables

This section lists the PJL environment variables. There are two kinds of PJL environment variables, General PJL environment variables and Printer language -specific variables. For all variables except the read-only variables, value settings can be modified using **@PJL SET**, **@PJL RESET**, **@PJL DEFAULT**, and **@PJL INITIALIZE**.

Using the **@ PJL INQUIRE** and **@ PJL DINQUIRE**, you can request value settings for the printer features. For the details of these commands, see the next section.

NOTE:
1. Use PJL commands only when no printer language commands are available for a desired feature.
2. When setting printer features with PJL, use the SET and RESET commands when you want to affect the current PJL job only.
   If you want to affect more than the current job, use the DEFAULT and INITIALIZE commands.
3. Supported valuables varies according to your printer mode.

6.2. Variables

Variables for HL-10h

1) General PJL Environment Variables

The PJL environment variables which are not printer language-specific are listed in the following table. When using these valuables, do not use the LPARM.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
COPIES	Number of uncollated copies for each page of the job.	1 to 999
PAPER	Paper size.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM 10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5
ORIENTATION	Page orientation.	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE
FORMLINES	Number of lines per page.	5 to 128
MANUALFEED	Manual feed mode.	ON, OFF
RET	Configuration of the High Resolution Control hardware.	LIGHT, MEDIUM, DARK, OFF
PAGEPROTECT	Configuration of the Page protection mode. This mode reserves a block of printer memory to avoid 31 PRINT OVERUN error.	OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4
RESOLUTION	Printer resolution setting. If the printer can not print a large file at 600 dpi because of insufficient memory, the printer decreases the resolution to 300 dpi automatically	300, 600
PERSONALITY	Personality (emulation) can be switched with the @ PJL ENTER command or ESC CR ## command. If the AUTO option is selected (factory default), the printer senses the data from the computer and switches the emulation automatically.	AUTO, PCL , POSTSCRIPT (BR-SCRIPT), Interactive, IBMProprinterXL, EPSONFX850, HPGL, Diablo630
TIMEOUT	The time out is the duration during which another automatic emulation change is not allowed. Duration of the timeout is set in seconds.	1 to 99
INTRAY 1 (Read Only)	Returns the auto-selection lock status for the standard paper tray.	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY 2 (Read Only)	Returns the auto-selection lock status for the optional second paper tray.	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
AUTOCONT (Read Only)	Returns the configuration for the continue mode.	ON, OFF
LOWTONER (Read Only)	Returns the configuration for TONER EMPTY message action. If OFF, the printer goes off line. If ON, the printer continues printing.	ON, OFF
INTRAY1SIZE (Read Only)	Returns the size of the paper currently installed in the standard paper tray.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5
INTRAY2SIZE (Read Only)	Returns the size of the paper currently installed in the lower paper tray.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5

2)PCL-Specific Variables

The following values are PCL (HP LaserJet 4 emulation) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. These variables must be set using LPARM : PCL option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
FONTSOURCE	The valid values for FONTSOURCE are I (Internal Fonts) C(Cartridge Fonts) C1 (Card Fonts) S (Permanent Soft Fonts) If the specified value becomes invalid, it is automatically changed to the default value.	I, C, C1, S,
FONTNUMBER	Font number. This value can be seen on the Print Font Test selected from the Control Panel. This value is automatically changed to the lowest value whenever the FONTSOURCE setting is changed.	0, 1, 2, ..n
PITCH	Pitch of the default font in units of characters per inch. The pitch value can be specified to two decimal points	0.44, 0.45, 99.99
PTSIZE	Height of the default font in units of points. The point size is significant to a quarter of a point	4.00, 4.25, ...999.75
SYMSET	Symbol set	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO 14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO 25, ISO 57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT

3) PostScript-Specific Variable

The currently defined PostScript specific variable is listed as follows. This variable can be set using the LPARM : POSTSCRIPT option.

Variable	Description	Sample Value Range
PRTPSERRS	The printing of a PostScript error page is enabled or disabled by this variable	OFF, ON

Variables for HL-660

1) General PJL Environment Variables

The PJL environment variables which are not printer language-specific are listed in the following table. When using these valuables, do not use the LPARM.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
COPIES	Number of uncollated copies for each page of the job.	1 to 200
MANUALFEED	Feed the paper from manual feed slot or not.	ON or OFF
ECONOMODE	Turn the economy mode (toner saving mode) ON or OFF.	ON or OFF
ECONOLEVEL	Select the toner saving level from 1 (high) to 3 (low).	1 to 3
PERSONALITY	Set the emulation mode.	AUTO, PCL, IBM, EPSON, POSTSCRIPT
XOFFSET	Set the X offset (horizontal offset) value.	-500 to 500 dots
YOFFSET	Set the Y offset (vertical offset) value.	-500 to 500 dots
AUTOCONT	Auto Continue Mode	ON or OFF
TIMEOUTEMU	Set the time-out value for automatic emulation switching.	1 to 99 seconds
PRIORITY	Set the priority between EPSON or IBM for automatic emulation switching.	EPSON or IBM
AUTOFF	Set the auto FF setting to ON or OFF.	ON or OFF
TIMEOUTFF	Set the timeout value for auto FF.	1 to 99 seconds
TIMEOUT	Set the time-out value for Automatic interface switching	1 to 99 seconds
CDCCHIGH	Set the high-speed transfer mode of Centronics interface to ON or OFF.	ON or OFF
DTRCTRL	Select when DTR becomes low. 0 = the printer is turned off-line by SEL switch, input buffer is full, or printer error occurs. 1 = the printer is turned off-line by SEL switch or printer error occurs. 2 = the printer is turned off-line by SEL switch.	0 to 2
AUTOSLEEP	Set the automatic sleep mode ON or OFF.	ON or OFF
TIMEOUTSLEEP	Set the timeout value for automatic sleep mode.	1 to 00 minutes.
IBMCHARE1		BETA or ESSZET
REPRINT	Set the reprint function ON or OFF.	ON or OFF
DEMOPRINT	Enable the Demo page printing or not.	ON or OFF
PAGEPROTECT	Configuration of the Page protection mode. This mode reserves a block of printer memory to avoid 31 PRINT OVERUN error.	AUTO, OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4
RESOLUTION	Printer resolution setting. If the printer can not print a large file at 600 dpi because of insufficient memory, the printer decreases the resolution to 300 dpi automatically	300, 600
LANG	Select the language for RPC program.	ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, DUTCH or NORWEGIAN
KEEP PCL	If set to ON, the printer keeps the permanent font and permanent macro of PCL when the emulation is changed to the other mode.	ON or OFF
DOUBLESTRIKE	Enable the bold printing in IBM or EPSON mode	ON or OFF

2) PCL-Specific Variables

The following values are PCL (HP LaserJet 4 emulation) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. These variables must be set using LPARM : PCL option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
PAPER	Set the paper size.	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG
ORIENTATION	Set the orientation.	PORTRAIT or LANDSCAPE
LEFTMARIN	Set the left margin.	0 to 126 columns
RIGHTMARGIN	Set the right margin	0 to 136 columns
TOPMARGIN	Set the top margin	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
BOTMARGIN	Set the bottom margin.	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
FORMLINES	Set the number of lines.	5 to 128 lines
FONTSOURCE	Set the font source to Internal fonts or	I or S
FONTNUMBER	Set the font number	0 to n
PITCH	Pitch of the default font in units of characters per inch. The pitch value can be specified to two decimal points	0.44, 0.45, 99.99
PTSIZE	Height of the default font in units of points. The point size is significant to a quarter of a point	4.00, 4.25, ...999.75
SYMSET	Set the symbol set.	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO 14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO 25, ISO 57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT, OCRA, OCRB, SYMBOL, WDINGS
AUTOLF	Set the AUTO LF to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOCR	Set the AUTO CR to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOWRAP	Set the AUTO WRAP to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOSKIP	Set the AUTO SKIP to ON or OFF	ON or OFF

3) EPSON-Specific Variables

The following values are EPSON (EPSON FX-850 emulation) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. These variables must be set using LPARM : EPSON option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
PAPER	Set the paper size.	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, B5, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG
ORIENTATION	Set the orientation.	PORTRAIT, LANDSCALPE
LEFTMARIN	Set the left margin	0 to 126
RIGHTMARGIN	Set the right margin	0 to 136
TOPMARGIN	Set the top margin	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
BOTMARGIN	Set the bottom margin.	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
FORMLINES	Set the number of lines.	5 to 128 lines
FONTNUMBER	Set the font number	0 to n
PITCH	Pitch of the default font in units of characters per inch. The pitch value can be specified to two decimal points	0.44, 0.45, 99.99
PTSIZE	Height of the default font in units of points. The point size is significant to a quarter of a point	4.00, 4.25, ...999.75
SYMSET	Set the symbol set.	USASCII, GERMAN, UKASCI1, FRENCH1, DANISH1, ITALY, SPANISH, SWEDISH, JAPAN, NORWEG, DANISH2, UKASCI2, FRENCH2, DUTCH, SAFRICA, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC860, PC863, PC865, PC8TK, SYMBOL, WDINGS, OCRA, OCRB
AUTOLF	Set the AUTO LF to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOMASK	Set the AUTO MASK to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
SELREADOUT		ON or OFF

4) IBM-Specific Variables

The following values are IBM (IBM Proprinter XL emulation) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. These variables must be set using LPARM : IBM option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
PAPER	Set the paper size.	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, B5, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG
ORIENTATION	Set the orientation.	PORTRAIT, LANDSCALPE
LEFTMARIN	Set the left margin	0 to 126
RIGHTMARGIN	Set the right margin	0 to 136
TOPMARGIN	Set the top margin	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
BOTMARGIN	Set the bottom margin.	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch
FORMLINES	Set the number of lines.	5 to 128 lines
FONTNUMBER	Set the font number	0 to n
PITCH	Pitch of the default font in units of characters per inch. The pitch value can be specified to two decimal points	0.44, 0.45, 99.99
PTSIZE	Height of the default font in units of points. The point size is significant to a quarter of a point	4.00, 4.25, ...999.75
SYMSET	Set the symbol set.	PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC860, PC863, PC865, PC8TK, OCRA, OCRB, SYMBOL, WDINGS
AUTOLF	Set the AUTO LF to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOCR	Set the AUTO CR to ON or OFF	ON or OFF
AUTOMASK	Set the AUTO MASK to ON or OFF	ON or OFF

4) PostScript-Specific Variables

The following values are PostScript (BR-Script) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. The BR-Script mode is available only when the optional BR-Script 2 ROM board is installed into the printer. These variables must be set using LPARM : IBM option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
PAPER	Set the paper size.	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, B5, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG
ORIENTATION	Set the orientation.	PORTRAIT, LANDSCALPE
PRTPSERRS	The printing of a PostScript error page is enabled or disabled by this variable	OFF, ON
CRLFCONV	When set to ON, CR codes in the PostScript data is converted to LF codes.	ON or OFF
APPLETALKPS	When set to ON, the printer fixes the emulation to BR-Script 2 mode for the data from AppleTalk. When set to OFF, the printer's auto emulation switching function judges the emulation.	ON or OFF

Variables for HL-1260

1) General PJL Environment Variables

The PJL environment variables which are not printer language-specific are listed in the following table. When using these valuables, do not use the LPARM.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
COPIES	Number of uncollated copies for each page of the job.	1 to 999
PAPER	Paper size.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM 10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6,
ORIENTATION	Page orientation.	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE
FORMLINES	Number of lines per page.	5 to 128
MANUALFEED	Manual feed mode.	ON, OFF
RET	Configuration of the High Resolution Control hardware.	LIGHT, MEDIUM, DARK, OFF
PAGEPROTECT	Configuration of the Page protection mode. This mode reserves a block of printer memory to avoid 31 PRINT OVERUN error.	AUTO, OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4
RESOLUTION	Printer resolution setting. If the printer can not print a large file at 600 dpi because of insufficient memory, the printer decreases the resolution to 300 dpi automatically	300, 600
PERSONALITY	Personality (emulation) can be switched with the @ PJL ENTER command or ESC CR ## command. If the AUTO option is selected (factory default), the printer senses the data from the computer and switches the emulation automatically.	AUTO, PCL , POSTSCRIPT, IBM, EPSON, HPGL
TIMEOUT	The time out is the duration during which another automatic emulation change is not allowed. Duration of the timeout is set in seconds.	1 to 99
AUTOCONT	Returns the configuration for the continue mode.	ON, OFF
LOWTONER	Returns the configuration for TONER EMPTY message action. If STOP, the printer stops printing. If CONTINUE, the printer continues printing.	CONTINUE, STOP
INTRAY 1 (Read Only)	Returns the auto-selection lock status for the MP tray.	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY 2 (Read Only)	Returns the auto-selection lock status for the upper paper tray.	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY 3 (Read Only)	Returns the auto-selection lock status for the optional lower paper cassette.	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY1SIZE (Read Only)	Returns the size of the paper currently installed in the standard paper tray.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6
INTRAY2SIZE (Read Only)	Returns the size of the paper currently installed in the lower paper tray.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6
INTRAY3SIZE (Read Only)	Returns the size information for the optional lower paper cassette.	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
DUPLEX	Duplex mode	ON, OFF
BINDING	Returns the setting of binding edge for duplex printing.	LONGEDGE, SHORTEDGE
FIRSTPRINT	First print mode. This makes the first print speed faster by moving the polygon motor at Power On. Setting to MIDDLE is effective only the first page after the Power ON. Setting to HIGH makes scanner moving everytime.	NORMAL, MIDDLE, HIGH
DENSITY	Returns the printing density level from 1 to 15. The default value is 8.	1 (lighter) to 15 (darker)
LANG	Returns the language for control panel, status readback information.	ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, DUTCH, SPANISH, ITALIAN, FINNISH, NORWEGIAN, PORTUGUESE, DANISH
CPLOCK	Returns the lock status control panel. If OFF, the control panel is unlocked. If ON, the control panel is locked.	OFF, ON
PASSWORD	Password for lock to write on NVRAM by DEFAULT/INITIALIZE command.	0 to65535
ECONOMODE	Toner Saving Mode	OFF, ON
ECONOLEVEL	Level for Toner saving mode. If set to 1, approx. 50 % toner is saved. If set to 2, approx. 25% toner is saved.	1, 2
MPTRAY	MP Tray Priority For AUTO feeder selection mode.	CASSETTE, FIRST
AUTOSLEEP	Power Save Mode	ON, OFF
TIMEOUTSLEEP	Timeout for Power Save mode. The printer goes into the power save mode after time-out.	1 to 99
MEDIATYPE	Media Type. The temperature of fixing unit is adjusted depending on this setting.	REGULAR, THICK, TRANSPARENCY
HUMIDITY	Depending on this setting, the fixing voltage of the printer is adjusted.	LOW, HIGH

2)PCL-Specific Variables

The following values are PCL (HP LaserJet 4 emulation) specific and can be set and requested using PJL. These variables must be set using LPARM : PCL option.

Variables	Description	Sample Value Range
FONTSOURCE	The valid values for FONTSOURCE are I (Internal Fonts) C (Cartridge Fonts) C1 (Card Fonts) S (Permanent Soft Fonts) If the specified value becomes invalid, it is automatically changed to the default value.	I, C, C1, S,
FONTNUMBER	Font number. This value can be seen on the Print Font Test selected from the Control Panel. This value is automatically changed to the lowest value whenever the FONTSOURCE setting is changed.	0, 1, 2, ..n
PITCH	Pitch of the default font in units of characters per inch. The pitch value can be specified to two decimal points	0.44, 0.45, 99.99
PTSIZE	Height of the default font in units of points. The point size is significant to a quarter of a point	4.00, 4.25, ...999.75
SYMSET	Symbol set	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO 14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO 25, ISO 57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT

3) PostScript-Specific Variable

The currently defined PostScript specific variable is listed as follows. This variable can be set using the LPARM : POSTSCRIPT option.

Variable	Description	Sample Value Range
PRTPSERRS	The printing of a PostScript error page is enabled or disabled by this variable	OFF, ON

6.3. Default command

The **DEFAULT** command changes the User-Default environment which is stored in NV-RAM and it is activated following a PJL reset condition. The current print environment is not affected by the **DEFAULT** command, but when a PJL reset condition happens, this command takes effect. This doesn't change the current print environment, but is activated when a PJL reset condition happens.

It is recommended to restrict the use of the **DEFAULT** command when the printer is shared by several users such as in a network environment. This allows use of the standard print environment and avoids changing default features for each print job. If you have to change the default for a particular print job, use the **SET** command.

Syntax :

@PJL DEFAULT [LPARM : *personality*] variable = value [<CR>]<LF>

- LPARM : *Personality*
  This optional parameter is used to set personality-specific (emulation) environment variables.

- variable = *Value*
  This parameter is used to set one of the environment variables to the specified value. For example, **@ PJL DEFAULT RESOLUTION = 300** command sets the user-default resolution to 300 dpi. Use the **@PJL INFO VARIABLES** command to obtain valid variables and the range of values for each variable. This command can request the information directly from the printer.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Control Panel Defaults <CR><LF>
@PJL DEFAULT PAGEPROTECT = LEGAL <CR><LF>
@PJL DEFAULT LPARM : PCL SYMSET = PC850 <CR><LF>
@PJL RESET <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

6.4. Initialize command

The **INITIALIZE** command resets the PJL Current Environment and User Default Environment variables to the Factory Default values. I/O configuration values and the unsolicited status settings are not affected by this command.

It is recommended to restrict the use of the INITIALIZE command when the printer is shared by several users such as in a networking environment in order to use a standard environment and avoid having default features changed by different print jobs.

Syntax :

```
@PJL INITIALIZE [<CR>]<LF>
```

Parameters :

- The **INITIALIZE** command has no parameters.
- The **INITIALIZE** command resets the following environment variables to the Factory Default values.
- If any additional personality (emulation) is added to the printer, the printer may support more personality-specific variables than the variables listed above. In any case, the **INITIALIZE** command resets the PJL Current and User Default environment values for all personalities to their factory default.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT setting to <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT factory defaults <CR><LF>
@PJL INITIALIZE <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

6.5. Reset command

The **PJL RESET** command resets the PJL Current Environment variables to the User Default values. Use this command at the end of any PJL jobs which use the **PJL SET** command.

Syntax :

@PJL RESET [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

- The **RESET** command has no parameters
- When an application such as a Spooler or Print Data Generator uses the **SET** command to set PJL variables, the application has to conclude with the **RESET** command (before the **UEL** command) to return the variables to the previous state.
- The **RESET** command resets the following environment variables to their user default values. In any case, the **RESET** command resets the PJL Current for all personalities to User Default values.
- Use the **@PJL INFO VARIABLES** command to obtain valid variables and the range of values for each variable. This command requests this information directly from the printer.

Examples :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Reset variables to <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT control panel settings <CR><LF>
@PJL SET RESOLUTION = 300 <CR><LF>
@PJL SET RET = DARK <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E ....PCL job ...<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Reset to return to <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT control panel settings <CR><LF>
@PJL RESET <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

6.6. Set command

The SET command enables you to change the value of PJL Current Environment variables during a PJL job, or until a PJL reset condition resets the default values.
Use this command to make a job-specific environment.

Syntax:

@PJL SET [LPARM : *personality*] variable = *value* [<CR>]<LF>

- LPARM : *Personality*
  This optional parameter is used to set personality(emulation) -specific environment variables.

- variable = *value*
  This parameter sets one of the environment variables to the specified value.

  For example, **@ PJL SET RESOLUTION = 300** command sets the current resolution to 300 dpi. For a list of variables and values, see the following table.

- Use the **@PJL INFO VARIABLES** to obtain valid variables and the range of values for each variable. This command can request this information directly from the printer.

Parameters:

- The printer control panel setting values and the feature settings stored in NV-RAM are not affected by the values modified with the **SET** command.

- The setting values selected with the **SET** command are valid until the next PJL reset condition occurs.

- If the SET command is used in a job, use the **RESET** command after the job to reset the printer to User default settings.

Examples:

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Setting PCL job <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT to desired state <CR><LF>
@PJL SET RET = DARK <CR><LF>
@PJL SET PAGEPROTECT = OFF <CR><LF>
@PJL SET RESOLUTION = 600 <CR><LF>
@PJL  ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC> E....PCL job .... <ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL RESET <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

7. STATUS READBACK COMMANDS

7.1. Introduction

Applications can request, by sending a PJL command to the printer, information such as configuration and status of the printer. The printer can be programmed to send back this information when requested, and also can send back voluntarily unsolicited information of its status such as cover open, off-line state, toner empty, displayed prompt message on the LCD, and other necessary information.

PJL Status Readback will help you to program the application to appropriately set the printer settings.

In this chapter, you can learn how to use PJL Status Readback in programming an application. The following Status Readback Commands are described :

- **INQUIRE** ... requests the information of the specified PJL Default setting (PJL Current Environment) set by **@PJL SET** or **@PJL RESET** command
- **DINQUIRE** ... requests the information of the specified User Default setting (User Default Environment) set by **@PJL DEFAULT** or **@PJL INITIALIZE** command or control panel
- **ECHO** ... request the printer to send back to the host computer a comment for the purpose of synchronization with each other in order to start communication
- **INFO** ... requests a specified category of information from the printer
- **USTATUS** ... gives the printer permission to send back unsolicited information.
- **USTATUSOFF** ... turns off all unsolicited status information set by **USTATUS**

Job Recovery is also described in this chapter.

Synchronization with the printer

The printer sends the status responses to the same I/O port as it received the request from. Therefore, in a shared or network environment, if the I/O port was used by another user and the printer is still processing the previous job, the printer may send a response of the status of the previous user's job against the request from the current application. In order to make sure that an application can receive correct responses for its request, it must synchronize itself with the printer by sending the **ECHO** command so as to be assured that the printer is ready for communication to you.

Basic Format of Status Readback Responses

The printer sends its status information to the host computer in the following format :

- starts with the **@PJL** prefix
- ends with a <**FF**> character
- All the data is in a readable ASCII format.

Each line in the PJL status responses is in the following format :

- starts with a specific keyword
- ends with <**CR**><**LF**>

For example, the readback response against the **@PJL DINQUIRE** is :

```
@PJL DINQUIRE [LPARM : personality] variable<CR><LF>
value<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

The application must read all the data between the **@PJL** and <**CR**><**LF**> codes. If the application can not understand the meaning of the lines, it must ignore them. Future printers may send currently unused keywords.

Refer to each command description to learn about the format of responses from the printer.

7.2. Inquire Command

The **INQUIRE** command is used in order to get the information of the current value of a specified variable in the PJL DEFAULT setting. (PJL environment). It is possible to get the information of variables the value of which PJL can not change (Read-only).
This **INQUIRE** command can request only one variable at a time. If you would like to get the information from multiple variables, send multiple **INQUIRE** commands or the **PJL INFO VARIABLES** command which responds with all the variables in the PJL Default settings (PJL Default Environment).

Syntax :

@PJL INQUIRE [LPARM : *personality*] *variable*
[<CR>]<LF>

Response Syntax :

@PJL INQUIRE [LPARM : personality] variable
<CR><LF>
value <CR><LF>
<FF>

If the variable is not supported by the printer, it returns the response in the following syntax :

@PJL INQUIRE [LPARM : personality] variable
<CR><LF>
"?" <CR><LF>
<FF>

- LPARM : *personality*
  This optional parameter must be used when requesting the information of printer language-specific variables, such as the font number in the PJL DEFAULT setting.

- ***variable*** : variable
  This is a parameter which specifies which variable you would like to get the information about, among the PJL Default settings (PJL Current Environment). The variables which can be used in this command are listed Appendix A. You can also check by sending the @PJL INFO VARIABLES command to the printer.

- **value**
  This is the value of the parameter requested by the variable parameter.

Examples :

Example 1 :
This example requests the current print environment settings for RET, PAPER, and ORIENTATION :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ***Requesting*** <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT about PJL Default Settings** <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO 19:15:00 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
@PJL INQUIRE RET <CR><LF>
@PJL INQUIRE PAPER <CR><LF>
@PJL INQUIRE ORIENTATION <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may return, for example, the following response against the above **INQUIRE** commands :

```
@PJL ECHO 19:15:00 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INQUIRE RET<CR><LF>
LIGHT<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INQUIRE PAPER<CR><LF>
LETTER<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INQUIRE ORIENTATION<CR><LF>
PORTRAIT<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Example 2 :
This example requests the PCL-specific settings.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ***Inquiring PCL settings*** <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO 19:20:05 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
@PJL INQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTSOURCE<CR><LF>
@PJL INQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTNUMBER<CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may return the following response for the above **INQUIRE** commands :

```
@PJL ECHO 19:20:05 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTSOURCE <CR><LF>
I<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTNUMBER <CR><LF>
13<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

7.3. DINQUIRE Command

The **DINQUIRE** command is used so as to get the information of the default value of a specific variable in the PJL Environment. (User Default Settings). It is also possible to get the value from variables which PJL can not change (Read-only).
The returned value of User Default Settings is identical to the Control Panel Setting.
This **DINQUIRE** command can request only one variable at a time. If you would like to get information from more variables, send multiple **DINQUIRE** commands.

Syntax :

@PJL DINQUIRE [LPARM : *personality*] *variable*
[<CR>]<LF>

Response Syntax :

@PJL DINQUIRE [LPARM : personality] variable
<CR><LF>
value <CR><LF>
<FF>

If the variable is not supported by the printer, it returns the response in the following syntax :

@PJL DINQUIRE [LPARM : *personality*] *variable* <CR><LF>
"?" <CR><LF>
<FF>

- **LPARM** : *personality*
  This optional parameter must be used when requesting information about printer language-specific variables such as the font number in the User Default setting.

- variable
  Variable is a parameter which specifies what you would like to get the information about, among the User Default settings (User Default Environment). The valid variables are listed in the following tables.

- value
  Value is the returned value for the requested variable. See the tables following to learn about values for specific variables.

Examples :

Example 1 :
This example requests the current print environment settings for RET, PAPER, and ORIENTATION :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ***Requesting*** <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT about User Default Settings** <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO 20:30:00 02-20-1993<CR><LF>
@PJL DINQUIRE RET<CR><LF>
@PJL DINQUIRE PAPER<CR><LF>
@PJL DINQUIRE ORIENTATION<CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may return, for example, the following response against the above **DINQUIRE** commands:

```
@PJL ECHO 20:30:00 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL DINQUIRE RET<CR><LF>
LIGHT<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL DINQUIRE PAPER<CR><LF>
LETTER<CR>LF>
<FF>
@PJL DINQUIRE ORIENTATION<CR><LF>
LANDSCAPE<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Example 2 :
This example requests the PCL-specific settings.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT ***Inquiring PCL settings*** <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO 20:33:05 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
@PJL DINQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTSOURCE <CR><LF>
@PJL DINQUIRE LPARM:PCL FONTNUMBER <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may return the following response for the above **DINQUIRE** commands :

```
@PJL ECHO 20:33:05 02-20-1993 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL DINQUIRE LPARM : PCL FONTSOURCE <CR><LF>
I<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL DINQUIRE LPARM : PCL FONTNUMBER <CR><LF>
15<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

7.4. ECHO Command

The **ECHO** command requests the printer to send back a specified message, in order to ensure that the printer is ready for communication with the application and that the received answer from the printer is what the application requested. The application must send this command before starting PJL communication.
After sending the **ECHO** command, the application must ignore any status information from the printer before it receives the response for this command, because not receiving the response for this command means that the printer is still processing the previous job and its status information is for the previous job environment. When the application receives the correct response for the requested **ECHO** command, the printer is now ready for the application and you can be sure that the status information following is for the requested command by the application.

Syntax :

```
@PJL ECHO [< words >] [<CR>]<LF>
```

Response Syntax :

```
@PJL ECHO [< words >] <CR><LF>
<FF>
```

- < *words* >
  The beginning of this parameter must be a printable character. Then this parameter consists of characters from ASCII 33 to 255 and space characters, and horizontal tab characters.
  This < *words* > parameter can be written without quotation marks as this is not a string of variables.
  The parameter is recommended to be unique, distinguishable words from other print jobs, such as the time determined by the real time clock and user name, so as to confirm the received message from the printer is definitely the answer for the **ECHO** command which the application sent.
  The length of the < *word* > must be within 80 characters.

Parameters :

Parameter	Valid characters
< *words* >	ASCII 33 to 255, <**SP**>, <**HT**>

Example :

The application sends the following example to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT the ECHO command follows <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 22:03:00 <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer sends back the answer for the above **ECHO** command :

```
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 22:03:00 <CR><LF>
<FF>
```

After receiving the above answer, all the messages from the printer are the requested information from the application, except for unsolicited status information.

7.5. INFO Command

The INFO command requests the printer to send back information on a specific category of the printer such as 'ID' (model name), 'CONFIG' (printer configuration), 'MEMORY' (available printer memory), 'STATUS' (current printer status), 'VARIABLES' (list of setting variables), 'USTATUS' (list of unsolicited status variables), 'PAGECOUNT' (total printing page number of the printer), 'PHYSICALMEMORY' (Physical memory size of printer) as shown in the following table.
This **INFO** command can request the information from only one category at a time. If you would like to get the information from more categories, send multiple **INFO** commands.

Syntax :

@PJL INFO *category* [<CR>]<LF>

Response Syntax :

```
@PJL INFO category <CR><LF>
[lines of printable characters or <WS> with
<CR><LF> at the end of each line]
<FF>
```

If the variable is not supported by the printer, it returns the response in the following syntax :

```
@PJL INFO category <CR><LF>
"?"<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Parameters :

Category	Information requesting
ID	The printer model number. For example the HL-10h will return 'Brother HL-10h'.
CONFIG	A list of the printer configuration information (available options) within the format of the number of types and/or the description of each available type of; paper sources paper sizes languages USTATUS (unsolicited status) commands font sources RAM number of lines and characters on the LCD
MEMORY	The total number of bytes of free memory space (user memory) and the largest free memory block.
STATUS	The printer status of the current message displayed on the LCD, on-line/off-line status, and the status code.
VARIABLES	A list of the current settings of all the environmental & language-specific variables, and the selectable values for each variable
USTATUS	A list of the current settings of all the unsolicited status variables, and selectable values for each variable
PAGECOUNT	Total page number which the printer prints.
PHYSICALMEMORY	Physical printer memory. This value is as same as the response for INFO CONFIG.
FEATURES (HL-660 only)	The list of the printer features.

ID Category

The application can use **@PJL INFO ID** command to find out the printer model name. As the features of the printer may be changed by future revisions, the application should check them by using the **@PJL INFO CONFIG** command.

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL INFO ID <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer sends back the answer for the above **INFO** command if the printer name is HL-10h :

```
@PJL INFO ID<CR><LF>
"Brother HL-10h"<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

CONFIG Category

The application can use **@PJL INFO CONFIG** command to have the printer return a list of printer configuration information. The list consists of the information on paper sources, paper sizes, languages, **USTATUS** (unsolicited status) commands, font sources, RAM size, number of lines and characters on the LCD supported by the printer, with the format of the number of available types and/or the description of each type. The printer sends back a list of multiple information for one **@PJL INFO CONFIG** command.

Syntax :

```
@PJL INFO CONFIG <CR><LF>
```

Response Syntax :

```
@PJL INFO CONFIG <CR><LF>
feature[=value][value feature information] <CR><LF>
[<HT>returned option[ attribute] <CR><LF>]
...
...
...
...
feature[=value][value feature information] <CR><LF>
[<HT>returned option[ attribute] <CR><LF>]
<FF>
```

Parameters :

Parameter	Range of Characters	Description
feature	alphabetical letters (ASCII 65-90 or 97-122), numbers (ASCII 48-57) * Beginning with a letter	Name of an item of the printer configuration : for example) IN TRAYS (paper sources) OUT TRAYS (output trays) PAPER (paper sizes) LANGUAGES (printer languages) USTATUS (unsolicited status) FONT CARTRIDGE SLOTS MEMORY (RAM size) DISPLAY LINES (number of lines available on the LCD) DISPLAY CHARACTER SIZE (number of characters available on the LCD) etc.
value	numbers	Value for the *feature*, or value which shows a number or range of options to follow
feature information	alphabetical letters (ASCII 65-90 or 97-122), numbers (ASCII 48-57) * separated from others by spaces	Type of the following information: ENUMERATED RANGE READONLY etc.
returned option	alphabetical letters (ASCII 65-90 or 97-122), numbers (ASCII 48-57)	An option of the item, such as PCL of the item of LANGUAGES
attribute	alphabetical letters (ASCII 65-90 or 97-122), numbers (ASCII 48-57)	Further information for a *returned option*. For example, a PC *attribute* following an INTRAY2 *returned option* indicates INTRAY2 means LC (optional tray2)

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL INFO CONFIG<CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above INFO command :

```
@PJL INFO CONFIG<CR><LF>
IN TRAYS [1 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    INTRAY1 PC<CR><LF>
    INTRAY2 LC<CR><LF>
OUT TRAYS [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    NORMAL FACEDOWN<CR><LF>
PAPER [9 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    LETTER<CR><LF>
    LEGAL<CR><LF>
    A4<CR><LF>
    EXECUTIVE<CR><LF>
    MONARCH<CR><LF>
    COM10<CR><LF>
    DL<CR><LF>
    C5<CR><LF>
    B5<CR><LF>
```

```
LANGUAGES [5 EMULATED]<CR><LF>
    PCL<CR><LF>
    POSTSCRIPT<CR><LF>
    IBM<CR><LF>
    EPSON<CR><LF>
    HPGL<CR><LF>
USTATUS [4 ENUMERATED]
    DEVICE<CR><LF>
    JOB<CR><LF>
    PAGE<CR><LF>
    TIMED<CR><LF>
FONT CARTRIDGE SLOTS [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    CARTRIDGE<CR><LF>
    CARTRIDGE1<CR><LF>
MEMORY=2097152<CR><LF>
DISPLAY LINES=1<CR><LF>
DISPLAY CHARACTER SIZE=16<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

In this example, IN TRAYS [2 ENUMERATED] indicates that there are two options in IN TRAYS (paper sources), and MEMORY=2097152 indicates the RAM size in the printer is 2097152 bytes.

MEMORY Category

The application can use **@PJL INFO MEMORY** command to check the size of total free memory and the largest free memory block in the printer.
The free memory size may vary according to the personality (printer language). In order to know the free memory size in PCL, use the <**ESC**>***s1M** (Free Space command) in the PCL status readback commands.

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT the INFO MEMORY command follows<CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:03:00<CR><LF>
@PJL INFO MEMORY<CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer sends back the answer for the above command :

```
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:03:00<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INFO MEMORY<CR><LF>
TOTAL=159984<CR><LF>
LARGEST=53322<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

STATUS Category

The application can use **@PJL INFO STATUS** command to check the printer on-line/off-line status, the current message on the LCD, and a status code. The ONLINE=TRUE indicates the printer is online, while the ONLINE=FALSE shows it is off-line. Refer to the list of the PJL Status Codes in the Appendix for the meanings of the returned status codes.

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT the INFO STATUS command follows<CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:10:00<CR><LF>
@PJL INFO STATUS<CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer sends back the answer for the above command when BR-Script mode and letter sized paper are selected and it is in idle status:

```
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:10:00<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INFO STATUS<CR><LF>
CODE=10001<CR><LF>
DISPLAY="00 IDLE  001P LT"<CR><LF>
ONLINE=TRUE<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

VARIABLES Category

The application can send the **@PJL INFO VARIABLES** command to get a list of possible variables for printer environment settings, possible language-specific variables, and the current settings for both, and the possible values or range for those variables. Refer to the "Environment Variables" in Chapter 6 for more information about the variables for the environment settings.

The language-specific variables returned from the printer depend on the current environment and are indicated with LPARM: *personality*.

The value and options for the FONTSOURCE variable depend on the installed font sources such as cartridge, downloaded permanent soft fonts.

The range of fonts listed for FONTNUMBER variable is only for the current font source. The upper limit value of the range varies according to the number of fonts in the current font source.

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT the INFO VARIABLES command <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:35:00 <CR><LF>
@PJL INFO VARIABLES <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command :

```
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 19:35:00 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INFO VARIABLES<CR><LF>
COPIES=3 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    1<CR><LF>
    999<CR><LF>
PAPER=LETTER [9 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    LETTER<CR><LF>
    LEGAL<CR><LF>
```

```
    A4<CR><LF>
    EXECUTIVE<CR><LF>
    MONARCH<CR><LF>
    COM10<CR><LF>
    C5<CR><LF>
    DL<CR><LF>
    B5<CR><LF>
ORIENTATION=PORTRAIT [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    PORTRAIT<CR><LF>
    LANDSCAPE<CR><LF>
FORMLINES=60 [2 RANGE]
    5<CR><LF>
    128<CR><LF>
MANUALFEED=OFF [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
RET=MEDIUM [4 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    LIGHT<CR><LF>
    MEDIUM<CR><LF>
    DARK<CR><LF>
PAGEPROTECT=OFF [4 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    LETTER<CR><LF>
    LEGAL<CR><LF>
    A4<CR><LF>
RESOLUTION=600 [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    300<CR><LF>
    600<CR><LF>

PERSONALITY=AUTO EPSON [8 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    AUTO<CR><LF>
    PCL<CR><LF>
    POSTSCRIPT<CR><LF>
    Interactive<CR><LF>
    IBMProprinterXL<CR><LF>
    EPSONFX850<CR><LF>
    HPGL<CR><LF>
TIMEOUT=10 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    1
    99
INTRAY1=UNLOCKED [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    UNLOCKED<CR><LF>
    LOCKED<CR><LF>
INTRAY2=UNLOCKED [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    UNLOCKED<CR><LF>
    LOCKED<CR><LF>
AUTOCONT=ON [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
LOWTONER=OFF [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
INTRAY1SIZE=LETTER  [9 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    LETTER<CR><LF>
    LEGAL<CR><LF>
    A4<CR><LF>
    EXECUTIVE<CR><LF>
    MONARCH<CR><LF>
    COM10<CR><LF>
    C5<CR><LF>
    DL<CR><LF>
    B5<CR><LF>
INTRAY2SIZE=LEGAL [9 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    LETTER<CR><LF>
    LEGAL<CR><LF>
    A4<CR><LF>
    EXECUTIVE<CR><LF>
    MONARCH<CR><LF>
    COM10<CR><LF>
    C5<CR><LF>
    DL<CR><LF>
```

```
    B5<CR><LF>
LPARM:PCL FONTSOURCE=I [4 EMULATED]<CR><LF>
    I<CR><LF>
    C<CR><LF>
    C1<CR><LF>
    S<CR><LF>
LPARM:PCL FONTNUMBER=0 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    0<CR><LF>
    70<CR><LF>
LPARM:PCL PITCH=10.00 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    0.44<CR><LF>
    99.99<CR><LF>
LPARM:PCL PTSIZE=12.00 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    4.00<CR><LF>
    999.75<CR><LF>
LPARM:PCL SYMSET=ROMAN8 [43 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    ROMAN8<CR><LF>
    ISOL1<CR><LF>
    ISOL2<CR><LF>
    ....
    ....
    WIN30<CR><LF>
    HPGERM<CR><LF>
    HPSPAN<CR><LF>
    MCTEXT<CR><LF>
LPARM:POSTSCRIPT PRTPSERRS=OFF [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

USTATUS Category

The application can send the **@PJL INFO USTATUS** command to check the possible unsolicited status types of the printer, and the current setting value and possible values for them.

Syntax :

@PJL INFO USTATUS [<CR>]<LF>

Response Syntax :

@PJL INFO USTATUS <CR><LF>
***variable*=*value* [*value feature information*] <CR><FF>**
[<HT>*returned option* <CR><LF>]
...
...
...
...
***variable*=*value* [*value feature information*] <CR><FF>**
[<HT>*returned option* <CR><LF>]
<FF>

Parameters:

Variable	*Value*	**Description**
DEVICE	ON	Makes unsolicited device status valid for any status change
	VERBOSE	Makes unsolicited device status valid for any of PJL parser warning, error, and status change
	OFF	Makes unsolicited device status invalid for any status change
JOB	ON	Makes unsolicited job status (reporting job start/job end) valid
	OFF	Makes unsolicited job status invalid
PAGE	ON	Makes unsolicited page status (reporting respective page printed and ejected) valid
	OFF	Makes unsolicited page status invalid
TIMED	5 to 300	Makes timed unsolicited status (allowing the printer to send back unsolicited status after an interval specified in seconds) valid
	0	Turns TIMED USTATUS off (Makes timed unsolicited status invalid)

Example :

The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT the INFO USTATUS command <CR><LF>
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 21:15:00 <CR><LF>
@PJL INFO USTATUS <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the following answer for the above command :

```
@PJL ECHO This is a sample 2-28-1993 21:15:00 <CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL INFO STATUS<CR><LF>
DEVICE=VERBOSE [3 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
    VERBOSE<CR><LF>
JOB=ON [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
PAGE=ON [2 ENUMERATED]<CR><LF>
    OFF<CR><LF>
    ON<CR><LF>
TIMED=0 [2 RANGE]<CR><LF>
    5<CR><LF>
    300<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

7.6. USTATUS Command

Sending the **USTATUS** command makes unsolicited printer status (sending the printer status information to the host computer automatically without being requested for it) valid or invalid. If the unsolicited status is set to ON with the **USTATUS** command, the printer sends unsolicited status information to the host computer at the time interval set by **USTATUS TIMED** command from when the status changes. On the other hand, the **DINQUIRE**, **INQUIRE**, and **INFO** commands make the printer send a response only once, just after they are received.

The printer status to be sent to the host computer are ;

- Device status changes - printer cover open, paper jams, paper out, etc
- Job status changes - completion of the printing of a job, receiving a **JOB** command
- Page status changes - eject of a printed page

All the unsolicited status information (USTATUS DEVICE, JOB, PAGE and TIMED) is turned off at once by the USTATUSOFF command. Each status can be turned off individually by the corresponding USTATUS command.

The USTATUS TIMED command specifies after which time period the printer sends the unsolicited status information, and it is turned off by setting the time increment to zero with this command.

To get information about the current settings or possible settings for unsolicited status, use the INFO USTATUS command.

Syntax :

```
@PJL USTATUS variable = value [<CR>]<LF>
```

Response Syntax :

```
@PJL USTATUS variable <CR><LF>
returned option [printable characters or <WS>]
<CR><LF>
...
...
...
...
returned option <CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Parameters:

Variable	*Value*	**Description**
DEVICE	ON	Makes unsolicited device status valid for any status change (printer errors)
	VERBOSE	Makes unsolicited device status valid for any of PJL parser warning, error, and status changes
	OFF	Makes unsolicited device status invalid for any status change
JOB	ON	Makes unsolicited job status (reporting job start/job end) valid
	OFF	Makes unsolicited job status invalid
PAGE	ON	Makes unsolicited page status (reporting respective page printed and ejected) valid
	OFF	Makes unsolicited page status invalid
TIMED	5 to 300	Makes timed unsolicited status (allowing the printer to send back unsolicited status after an interval specified in seconds) valid
	0	Turn TIMED USTATUS off (Makes timed unsolicited status invalid)

Device Variable

The **@PJL USTATUS DEVICE** command allows the printer to send status messages when the printer status changes. The printer will send the status by the status code shown in the table below.

Status code	Status
10000 - 10999	Status information such as printer on-line or off-line.
11000 - 11999	Status of available paper in paper input sources, such as paper empty, and auto-switching to another paper source.
20000 - 20999	PJL parser errors. The entire command line of a PJL command is ignored when an error (except for code 20004) occurs.
25000 - 25999	PJL parser errors. Part of a PJL command is ignored when the error occurs.
27000 - 27999	PJL semantic errors, which means that they are grammatically acceptable but cannot be executed. For example, locking the only sole unlocked paper tray causes this error.
30000 - 30999	Errors which do not stop the printing procedure if the CONTINUE is set to AUTO (auto continue mode). If the CONTINUE mode is set to STOP, the printer stops printing and goes to off-line status, and resumes when the CONTINUE or SEL key are pressed.
35000 - 25999	Errors which may cause incorrect printing results, such as loss of some print data on a page. The operator's mediation may be required.
40000 - 40999	Errors such as paper empty, cover open, or paper jams, which suspend printing until the operator takes the corresponding corrective action.
41000 - 41999	Errors in the paper source such as running out of paper in current paper tray and not available from any other paper sources.

Example :

Example 1 :
The application sends the following command to the printer :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS DEVICE = VERBOSE <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command :

```
@PJL USTATUS DEVICE<CR><LF>
CODE=40021<CR><LF>
DISPLAY='12 COVER OPEN  '<CR><LF>
ONLINE=FALSE<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Example 2 :
When the following wrong PJL command is sent :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS DEVICE = VERBOSE <CR><LF>
@PJL ECO wrong sample 3-6-1993 23:12:00 <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command :

```
@PJL USTATUS DEVICE<CR><LF>
CODE=20002<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

JOB Variables

The **@PJL USTATUS JOB = ON** command allows the printer to send the job processing status. This is sent to the application whenever a **JOB** and **EOJ** command is issued so that the application knows when a job starts and ends.

Example :

The application sends the following commands to the printer.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS JOB = ON <CR> <LF>
@PJL JOB NAME = "JOB 88554" <CR> <LF>
    <ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR> <LF>
    @PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR> <LF>
    <ESC>E . . . PCL Job . . . <ESC>E <ESC>%-12345X
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL EOJ NAME = "JOB 88554" <CR> <LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command.

```
@PJL USTATUS JOB<CR><LF>
START<CR><LF>
NAME="JOB 88554"<CR><LF>
<FF>
[ . . time period while job is printing . . . ]
@PJL USTATUS JOB<CR><LF>
END<CR><LF>
NAME = "JOB 88554"<CR><LF>
PAGES=5<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

PAGE Variables

The **@PJL USTATUS PAGE = ON** command allows the printer to send the information about the print completion of a particular page. Using this command, you can monitor the job process on a page-by-page basis.

Example :

The application sends the following commands to the printer.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS PAGE = ON <CR> <LF>
@PJL JOB <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E . . . Four-page PCL Job . . . <ESC>E
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL EOJ <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command.

```
@PJL USTATUS PAGE<CR><LF>
1<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL USTATUS PAGE<CR><LF>
2<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL USTATUS PAGE<CR><LF>
3<CR><LF>
<FF>
@PJL USTATUS PAGE<CR><LF>
4<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

TIMED Variable

The **@PJL USTATUS TIMED = XXX** command enables the printer to send printer status information to the application at the specified time period.
This time interval can be set to 0 and from 5 to 300 seconds. If set to 0, this function is turned off. If set to any value between 5 and 300, the printer automatically sends to the application "CODE = XXXXX" (a status code number), "DISPLAY = XXXXXXXXXX" (the message currently displayed on the printer's control panel), and "ON LINE = XXXXXXX" (printer's on-line/off-line status) at the specified time interval.

Example :

The application sends the following commands to the printer.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS TIMED = 30 <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

The printer may send back the answer for the above command.

```
@PJL USTATUS TIMED<CR><LF>
CODE=10001<CR><LF>
DISPLAY="00 READY 001P LT"<CR><LF>
ONLINE=TRUE<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

7.7. USTATUSOFF command

The **@PJL USTATUSOFF** command makes all unsolicited status reporting inactive.

Syntax :

@PJL USTATUSOFF [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

- There are no parameters for this command.

Example :

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUSOFF <CR><LF>
@PJL USTATUS DEVICE = ON <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

7.8. JOB Recovery

You can recover a failed job with the combination of **JOB** and **EOJ** commands and the **USTATUS PAGE** command. **JOB/EOJ** commands inform the printer of the beginning and ending each job and the **USTATUS PAGE** command informs the application of completion of printing each page of a job.

When the spooler finds a job failure, it can recover the failed job. It can send the **JOB** command with the START option. The START page should be set to the last printed page, which can be found by the **USTATUS PAGE** command.

8. DEVICE ATTENDANCE COMMANDS

8.1. Introduction

You can change display messages on the printer control panel by using PJL. The Operator can be alerted by this feature to what specific actions should be taken. This chapter shows you three device attendance commands.

RDYMSG

By using this command, you can change the message "00 READY" on the printer control panel into whatever message you like. This command does not change the printer's online/offline state.

OPMSG

By using this command, the printer can display a message you specify on the printer switch panel LCD and set the printer to off-line (non-ready state for printing).

STMSG

By using this command, the printer can display a message you specify on the printer control panel LCD and the printer will go off-line. After the operator puts the printer back on-line by the on-line / off-line key, the printer name is returned by the printer to the application.

8.2. RDYMSG Command

With the **RDYMSG** command, you can change the message "00 READY" on the printer control panel into a specified message. The printer will be kept online.

Syntax :

@PJL RDYMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

Parameter	Functional Range	Default
DISPLAY = "*message*"	ASCII 33 and ASCII 35 through 255, <**SP**>, <**HT**>	N/A

- DISPLAY = "*message*"

- You can use any combination of characters available on the printer except for the quotation marks (ASCII 34) within 16 characters. Also you can use spaces or horizontal tab. Characters must be enclosed in double quotes.

Comments :

- This RDYMSG command keeps the printer online. You can display whatever message you like, for example, job name, person name etc..

- @PJL RDYMSG DISPLAY = ""
  This command returns the display to "00 READY".

Example :

The following example shows how to display the name of person who is printing the job.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL JOB NAME = "Tom's job" <CR><LF>
@PJL RDYMSG DISPLAY = "TOM'S JOB" <CR><LF>
```

The following is an example of how to restore the display to the normal ready message.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL COMMENT Normal READY message <CR><LF>
@PJL RDYMSG DISPLAY = "" <CR><LF>
@PJL EOJ NAME = "End of Tom's Job" <CR><LF>
<ESC>%-12345X
```

8.3. OPMSG Command

With the **OPMSG** command, you can display any message you like on the printer switch panel LCD. The printer will go off-line and stop printing until the operator presses the ON LINE key or resets the printer (Press SHIFT key and RESET key, then press SET key.)

Syntax :

@PJL OPMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>

Parameters :

Parameter	Functional Range	Default
DISPLAY = "*message*"	ASCII 33 and ASCII 35 through 255, <**SP**>, <**HT**>	N/A

- DISPLAY = "*message*"
- You can use any combination of characters available on the printer except for the quotation marks (ASCII 34) within 16 characters. Also you can use spaces or horizontal tab. Characters must be enclosed in double quotes.

Example :

The following example shows how to display "LOAD C5 ENVELOPE" on the printer switch panel.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL JOB NAME = "JOB C5 envelope" <CR><LF>
@PJL OPMSG DISPLAY = "LOAD C5 ENVELOPE" <CR><LF>
@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E This is C5 Envelope<ESC>E
```

8.4. STMSG Command

With the **STMSG** command, you can display any message you like on the printer switch panel LCD. The printer will go off-line and stop printing until the operator presses the ON LINE key or resets the printer (Press SHIFT key and RESET key, then press SET key.) When the printer is put back to on-line by the operator, the printer returns a status message giving the name of key.

Syntax :

@PJL STMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>

Return Syntax :

```
@PJL STMSG DISPLAY = "message" <CR><LF>
key <CR><LF>
<FF>
```

Parameters :

Parameter	Functional Range	Default
DISPLAY = "*message*"	ASCII 33 and ASCII 35 through 255, <**SP**>, <**HT**>	N/A
key	ONLINE, RESET	N/A

- DISPLAY = "*message*"
- You can use any combination of characters available on the printer except for the quotation marks (ASCII 34) within 16 characters. Also you can use spaces or horizontal tab. Characters must be enclosed in double quotes.
- key
- After the operator presses the key in order to put the printer back to on-line, this variable will be returned with the status response.

Example :

Following example shows how to display "LOAD LETTER SIZE" on the printer switch panel LCD.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL STMSG DISPLAY = "LOAD LETTER SIZE" <CR><LF>
@PJL <CR><LF>
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL <CR><LF>
<ESC>E... PCL job ...<ESC>E<ESC>%-12345X
```

If the operator press the ONLINE key,

```
@PJL STMSG DISPLAY = "LOAD LETTER SIZE"<CR><LF>
ONLINE<CR><LF>
<FF>
```

INDEX

B

Basic Format of Status Readback Responses, 33

C

COMMENT command, 12
conditions, 8
CONFIG Category for INFO command, 41
Context Switching, 13

D

Default command, 29
DEMOPAGE, 11
Device Attendance Commands, 53
Device Variable for USTATUS command, 49
DINQUIRE Command, 37

E

ECHO Command, 39
emulation switching, 11
End of Job, 15
ENTER command, 11
Environment Commands, 17
EOJ Command, 15
EPSON-Specific Variables, 24
EXECUTE command, 11
Explicit Switching, 13

F

Format of PJL, 6

I

IBM-Specific Variables, 25
ID Category for INFO command, 41
Implicit Switching, 13
INFO Command, 40
information line, 12
Initialize command, 30
Inquire Command, 35
Invalid Commands, 7

J

JOB Command, 14
job name, 14
JOB Variables for USTATUS command, 50

K

Kernel Commands, 10

M

MEMORY Category for INFO command, 43

O

OPMSG Command, 55

P

PAGE Variables for USTATUS command, 50
PCL-Specific Variables, 23
PERMFONT, 11
Print environment, 17
PRTCONFIG, 11

R

RDYMSG Command, 54
Reset command, 31
reset conditions, 18
Reset Printer (PJL), **Error! Not a valid bookmark in entry on page** 25
RESIFONT, 11

S

Set command, 32
SHUTDOWN, 11
start of job, 14
STATUS Category for INFO command, 44
Status Readback Commands, 33
STMSG Command, 56
Syntax of PJL, 6

T

TIMED Variable for USTATUS command, 51

U

UEL Command, 10
Universal Exit Command, 10
USTATUS Category for INFO command, 46
USTATUS Command, 48
USTATUSOFF command, 52

V

Variables, 7
VARIABLES Category for INFO command, 44
Variables for HL-10h, 20
Variables for HL-1260, 26
Variables for HL-660, 22

Chapter 4
Diablo 630

Command list

BEL	Bell	6
Esc US n	Set horizontal motion index (HMI)	6
Esc S	Reset horizontal motion index (HMI)	6
Esc RS n	Set vertical index (VMI)	7
SP	Space	7
BS	Backspace	7
Esc BS	Backspace 1/120"	7
Esc 5	Set forward printing mode	8
Esc 6	Set backward printing mode	8
Esc /	Auto backward printing mode	8
Esc \	Cancel auto backward printing mode	8
LF	Line feed	8
Esc U	Half line feed	9
Esc LF	Reverse line feed	9
Esc D	Reverse half line feed	9
FF	Form feed	9
CR	Carriage return	10
Esc "	Set automatic line feed	10
Esc #	Cancel automatic line feed	10
Esc 3	Set graphics mode	10
Esc 4	Cancel graphics mode	11
DC1	Enable printer	11
DC3	Disable printer	11
Esc CR mode	Change emulation mode / reset printer	11
Esc @	Set EPSON emulation mode	12
Esc CR ! # R	User reset	12
Esc EM n	Paper input control	13
Esc FF n	Set page length	13
Esc T	Set top margin at current position	13
Esc L	Set bottom margin at current position	14
Esc C	Clear top and bottom margins	14
Esc 9	Set left margin at current position	14
Esc 0	Set right margin at current position	15
Esc 1	Set horizontal tab at current position	15
Esc 8	Clear horizontal tab at current position	15
HT	Horizontal tab	15
Esc HT n	Absolute horizontal tab	16
Esc -	Set vertical tab at current position	16
VT	Vertical tab	16
Esc VT n	Absolute vertical tab	16
Esc 2	Clear all horizontal and vertical tabs	17
Esc P	Set proportional spacing	17
Esc Q	Cancel proportional spacing	17
Esc O	Set bold print mode	17
Esc F	Set double-strike mode	17
Esc W	Set shadow print mode	18
Esc &	Cancel bold and shadow print modes	18
Esc E	Set underline print mode	18
Esc R	Cancel underline print mode	18
Esc X	Cancel underline, strike-out, shadow and bold print mode	18
Esc H	Set auto strike-out print mode	19
Esc I	Cancel auto strike-out print mode	19
Esc Y	Print character assigned to character code 32	19
Esc Z	Print character assigned to character code 127	19

1. Introduction

In this emulation mode you can drive the printer directly by incorporating control codes and escape sequences in your program, or alternatively, applications software (for example, your word-processing software) may send the necessary commands to the printer automatically. Check the manual that came with your software package for instructions on how to configure your software to run in Diablo 630 mode.

2. Emulation details

The following points should be borne in mind when running the printer in Diablo 630 mode.

2.1. Ignored commands

A few Diablo 630 commands have reduced effect, or no effect at all. These commands are as follows: the **BEL** control code (ASCII 7) which is used to sound the printer bell, is ignored. The **DC1** control code (ASCII 17), used to disable the printer, is also ignored, as is the **Esc** \ escape sequence, normally used to cancel Auto Backward Printing Mode.

2.2 resolution

The resolution of the HL-10h printer is 600 dots per inch. When a line spacing or graphic cannot be implemented exactly at 600 dots per inch the printer prints the closest possible approximation to the specified image using 600 dots per inch.

3. Terminology

3.1. Syntax

The following conventions are used in this description of the Diablo 630 mode software commands:

A letter, control code, word or number in upright bold text is a literal character and should be sent to the printer as the character code.

A letter or word in italics is a variable and you must substitute the appropriate value or values when using the command.

A statement element enclosed in angle brackets < > may be of any size up to some specified maximum.

3.2. Conventions

Although this machine is a laser printer and does not physically have a print head, for the purposes of this emulation description we refer to the location on the page at which the printer is currently positioned to print as the print position.

The printable area is the area of the page where the printer can place a dot.

The units of horizontal and vertical movement on the page are the horizontal motion index (HMI) and vertical motion index (VMI). You can set these units as you wish and then move the print position horizontally or vertically in multiples of them.

The bits that comprise a byte of data are numbered 1 to 8. Bit 1 is the least significant bit (LSB) and bit 8 is the most significant bit (MSB).

The lower case ‘L’ character is shown as an ‘ ℓ ’ in the **Esc** ℓ printer command, to distinguish it from the character ‘1’ (one).

4. Controlling the printer

Commands are invoked using either control codes or escape sequences. You can send them to the printer as part of a program, using the same command that you would use to print a string on the printer. For example in BASIC you would use the LPRINT command.

The printer control panel can also be used to set margins and page size. Ensure that the control panel settings and computer generated settings do not conflict with one another, or you may not get the results you require.

4.1. The control panel

Refer to the Users guide for a description of how to use the printer control panel switches. You should be aware, however, that the following can be set using the control panel: automatic line feed (a line feed is performed with every carriage return), auto mask (two-line top and bottom margins are automatically used on every page), paper size, top, bottom, left and right margins, the number of text lines per page, orientation (portrait or landscape), the current font, character set and emulation mode. Conflict between control panel settings and the settings you establish with software commands (or from applications software) is by far the most likely cause of unexpected printing results. Use this manual in conjunction with the Users guide to resolve these conflicts.

4.2. Control codes

Control codes are ASCII codes that instruct the printer to perform a particular operation, such as a line feed. Send a control code to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print a character using its ASCII code number. For example, the ASCII code for a form feed is 12, so to get the printer to perform a form feed use the following BASIC statement:

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);
```

The CHR$ operator is normally used to convert an ASCII code into its corresponding character.

4.3. escape sequences

Escape sequences tell the printer the Diablo 630 mode function to perform. An escape sequence consists of the **ESC** character followed by one or more characters which define the operation to be performed. Send an escape sequence to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print characters using their ASCII codes. Some escape sequences require parameter values or data following them, for example, commands which turn a particular feature on and off. Numerical parameter data, too, is sent to the printer as if it were a character code to be printed. For example, to move the print position to the third column position on the page the required escape sequence is **Esc HT 3**. In BASIC this would be:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(9); CHR$(3);
```

5. Commands

5.1. Basic printer operation

The most common printer operations are described in this section. Some are invoked using control codes alone - the rest require escape sequences. For the sake of completeness three instructions which are part of the Diablo 630 mode instruction set, but which the HL Series printers ignore are included.

Bell

BEL (07) <07h>

- **BEL** (ASCII code 7) is ignored.

Set horizontal motion index (HMI)

EscUSn (27)(31)n <1Bh><1Fh>n

- This command sets the unit of horizontal movement - the horizontal motion index or HMI. The HMI is the horizontal distance the print position moves on the page when a space is printed. The setting is used for determining the character pitch when monospaced text is printed, and for establishing the distance the print position changes when horizontal tab commands are invoked.
- The HMI is set to be (*n*–1)/120".
- You can use this command to alter the HMI setting while using proportional spacing. However, since character pitch is only applicable to monospaced text the new setting will only affect space and tab operations until you switch to monospacing, at which point the new HMI setting will determine the new character pitch.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(31); CHR$(13); 'Set 1/10" HMI
```

Reset horizontal motion index (HMI)

EscS (27)(83) <1Bh><53h>

- This command resets the horizontal motion index (HMI) to the default value for the current character font. (You select a character font using the control panel).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(83); 'Reset HMI
```

Set vertical motion index (VMI)

EscRSn (27)(30)n <1Bh><1Eh>n

- This command sets the unit of vertical movement - the vertical motion index or VMI. The VMI is the vertical distance the print position moves on the page when a line feed is performed. The setting determines the distance the print position moves when vertical tab commands are invoked.
- The VMI is set to be (*n*–1)/48".
- Line feed and reverse line feed operations cause the print position to move vertically a distance equal to the VMI.
- If you change the VMI the number of lines per page is automatically changed as well, so as to maintain the current page length.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(30); CHR$(9); 'Set 1/6" VMI
```

Space

SP (32) <20h>

- The **SP** control code (ASCII code 32) moves the current print position one space to the right. One space equals the current value of the HMI.

```
LPRINT CHR$(32); 'Print a space
```

Backspace

BS (08) <08h>

- The **BS** control code (ASCII code 8) moves the current print position one space to the left. One space equals the current value of the HMI.

```
LPRINT CHR$(8); 'Backspace
```

Backspace 1/120"

EscBS (27)(08)n <1Bh><08h>n

- This command moves the print position 1/120" to the left.
- If backward printing has been selected with **Esc 6**, this command moves the print position 1/120" to the right.
- This code can move the print position beyond the left and right margins, but not outside the printable area.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(8); 'Backspace 1/120"
```

Set forward printing mode

Esc5 (27)(53) <1Bh><35h>

- This command enables the printer to print text to the right of the right margin.
- Text cannot be printed outside the printable area.
- The Set Backward Printing Mode command, **Esc 6**, the Auto Backward Printing Mode command, **Esc /**, and the carriage return control code, **CR**, all cancel forward printing.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(53); 'Forward printing
```

Set backward printing mode

Esc6 (27)(54) <1Bh><36h>

- This command causes the printer to print text from right to left and also enables the printer to print text to the left of the left margin.
- Text cannot be printed outside the printable area.
- The Set Forward Printing Mode command, **Esc 5**, the Auto Backward Printing Mode command, **Esc /**, and the carriage return control code, **CR**, all cancel backward printing.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(54); 'Backward printing
```

Auto backward printing mode

Esc/ (27)(47) <1Bh><2Fh>

- This command cancels forward printing mode or backward printing mode. Subsequent text is printed within the left and right margins.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(47); 'Normal printing mode
```

Cancel auto backward printing mode

Esc\ (27)(92) <1Bh><5Ch>

- The printer ignores this command.

Line feed

LF (10) <0Ah>

- The **LF** control code (ASCII code 10) moves the current print position down the page by a distance equal to the current VMI.
- This code does not cause a carriage return to be performed.
- A line feed that would move the print position below the bottom margin moves it to the top of the next page instead and performs a page eject.

```
LPRINT CHR$(10); 'Line feed
```

Half line feed

EscU (27)(85) <1Bh><55h>

- This command moves the current print position down the page by a distance equal to half the current VMI.
- If the print position is such that this operation would move it beyond the bottom margin, the print position is moved to the top of the next page instead.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(85); 'Half line feed
```

Reverse line feed

EscLF (27)(10) <1Bh><0Ah>

- This command moves the current print position up the page by a distance equal to the current VMI.
- This command can move the print position above the top margin.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(10); 'Reverse line feed
```

Reverse half line feed

EscD (27)(68) <1Bh><44h>

- This command moves the current print position up the page by a distance equal to half the current VMI.
- This command can move the print position above the top margin.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(68); 'Reverse half line feed
```

Form feed

FF (12) <0Ch>

- The **FF** control code (ASCII code 12) ejects the current page and moves the current print position to the top of the next page.
- If the current page is blank this control code has no effect.
- This code does not cause a carriage return to be performed, hence the print position does not change horizontally.

```
LPRINT CHR$(12); 'Form feed
```

Carriage return

CR (13) <0Dh>

- The **CR** control code (ASCII 13) moves the print position to the left margin on the current line.
- If automatic line feed is on, this code moves the current print position to the left margin on the next line. You can turn on automatic line feed either using the **Esc "** command or with the control panel switches.
- The **CR** code cancels the following modes: shadow printing, bold printing, double-strike printing, forward printing and backward printing.

```
LPRINT CHR$(13); 'Carriage return
```

Set automatic line feed

Esc" (27)(34) <1Bh><22h>

- This command turns on the automatic line feed facility. Every time the printer executes a carriage return it executes a line feed as well.
- Invoking this code overrides any previous “auto LF” control panel setting you have made.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(34); 'Auto line feed on
```

Cancel automatic line feed

Esc# (27)(35) <1Bh><23h>

- This command turns off the automatic line feed facility that you set with the **Esc "** command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(35); 'Auto line feed off
```

Set graphics mode

Esc3 (27)(51) <1Bh><33h>

- In graphics mode the print position does not change when a character is printed, hence consecutive characters printed in this mode will be placed one on top of another.
- In this mode the line feed and reverse line feed commands will move the print position down or up by 1/48", and the space and backspace codes will move the print position right or left by 1/60", irrespective of the current VMI and HMI settings.
- Both the **Esc 4** command and the carriage return control code, **CR**, cancel graphics mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(51); 'Turn graphics mode on
```

Cancel graphics mode

Esc4 (27)(52) <1Bh><34h>

- This command turns off graphics mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(52); 'Turn graphics mode off
```

Enable printer

DC1 (17) <11h>

- The printer ignores this command.

Disable printer

DC3 (19) <13h>

- This command disables the printer, preventing it from accepting or printing any data.

```
LPRINT CHR$(19); 'Put printer off-line
```

Change emulation mode / reset printer

EscCR<mode> (27)(13)mode <IBh><0Dh>mode

- This command enables you to switch emulation mode or to reset the printer.
- Any remaining pages are printed out when this command is invoked.
- Change emulation mode by setting *mode* to the appropriate letter or pair of letters. Set *mode* to ‘E’ to switch to Epson mode, ‘H’ to switch to Laserjet 4 mode, 'A B' to switch to BR-Script Batch mode, 'A I' to switch to BR-Script Interactive mode, 'G L' to switch to HP-GL mode, ‘I’ to switch to IBM Proprinter XL mode, ‘FD’ to switch to Laserjet 4 mode and reset the printer to its factory default settings.
- If you set *mode* to ‘D’ in Diablo mode, a printer reset is performed.
- If you set *mode* to ‘P’ in either Diablo mode, a printer reset is performed.
- The newly selected emulations default settings are restored, except when *mode* is set to ‘FD’.
- If you set *mode* to ‘FD’ to reset the printer to its factory default settings, LaserJet 4 mode (the factory default emulation mode) is selected and the Laserjet 4 factory default environment is restored. For a list of the factory default settings see the sub-section “Factory default environment” in "Chapter 2 - PCL" of this manual.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(13); CHR$(73); 'Change to IBM Proprinter
mode
```

Set EPSON Emulation Mode

Esc@ (27)(64) <IBh><40h>

- Set emulation mode to EPSON FX-850 mode.

User Reset

EscCR!#R (27)(13)(33)#(82) <1Bh><0Dh><21h><#><52h>

- # = 0, the printer is restored to the current user setting.
- # = 1, the printer is restored to user settings 1.
- # = 2, the printer is restored to user settings 2.

5.2. Page set up

Control panel settings

You can use the printer's control panel to set automatic line feed, auto mask (two-line top and bottom margins on every page), paper size, top, bottom, left and right margins, the number of lines per page, the current font and the emulation mode. Refer to the User guide to establish how to make these settings and how they affect the software settings that you make with the following commands.

Paper Input Control

EscEMn (27)(25)n <1Bh><19h>n

- *n* = 0, paper is fed from manual paper feeder.
- *n* = 1, paper is fed from the standard paper cassette.
- *n* = 2, paper is fed from the optional lower paper cassette.
- *n* = 3, printer ejects paper.

Set page length

EscFFn (27)(12)n <1Bh><0Ch>n

- This command sets the page length in lines.
- The actual page length is calculated as the product of the specified number of lines and the current VMI. This value remains constant even if the VMI is altered. Hence, a change in VMI also causes the number of lines per page to be altered.
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 126.
- On receiving this command any data remaining in the printer is printed out.
- If the control panel "auto MASK" feature has been turned off, this command sets the top and bottom margins to their most recent control panel settings.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(12); CHR$(40); '40 lines per page
```

Set top margin at current position

EscT (27)(84) <1Bh><54h>

- This command sets the horizontal line on which the current print position lies to be the top margin.
- If the current print position is below the bottom margin the command is ignored.
- You can set a new top margin above the existing top margin by moving the print position up with the Absolute Vertical Tab, Reverse Line Feed or Reverse Half Line Feed instructions.
- If you change the paper size, perform a printer reset or invoke the **Esc C** command, the top and bottom margin settings are cancelled.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(84); 'Set top margin
```

Set bottom margin at current position

EscL (27)(76) <1Bh><4Ch>

- This command sets the horizontal line on which the current print position lies to be the bottom margin.
- If the current print position is above the top margin the command is ignored.
- You can set a new bottom margin below the existing bottom margin by moving the print position down with the Absolute Vertical Tab instruction.
- If you change the paper size, perform a printer reset or invoke the **Esc C** command, the top and bottom margin settings are cancelled.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(76); 'Set bottom margin
```

Clear top and bottom margins

EscC (27)(67) <1Bh><43h>

- This command clears the top and bottom margins that you set with the **Esc T** and **Esc L** escape sequences.
- Control panel top and bottom margin settings are also cleared.
- When this instruction is performed the default settings that apply to the current paper size and orientation take effect. Refer to the Operation manual for details of these default settings.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(67); 'Clear top and bottom margins
```

Set left margin at current position

Esc9 (27)(57) <1Bh><39h>

- This command sets the vertical line on which the current print position lies to be the left margin.
- The command is ignored if the current print position is to the right of the right margin or if the current print position is within 1/10" of the current right margin.
- You can set a new left margin to the left of the existing left margin by moving the print position with the Absolute Horizontal Tab instruction, the backspace control code, or in backward printing mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(57); 'Set left margin
```

Set right margin at current position

Esc0 (27)(48) <1Bh><30h>

- This command sets the vertical line on which the current print position lies to be the right margin.
- The command is ignored if the current print position is to the left of the left margin or if the current print position is within 1/10" of the current left margin.
- You can set a new right margin to the right of the existing right margin by moving the print position with the Absolute Horizontal Tab instruction, with the space control code, **SP**, in forward printing mode, or with the backspace control code, **BS**, in backward printing mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(48); 'Set right margin
```

5.3. Using tabs

Set horizontal tab at current position

Esc1 (27)(49) <1Bh><31h>

- This command sets a horizontal tab stop at the current print position.
- Up to thirty-two horizontal tab positions can be set.
- You can set tab stops anywhere within the printable area irrespective of the current margin settings.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(49); 'Set horizontal tab
```

Clear horizontal tab at current position

Esc8 (27)(56) <1Bh><38h>

- This command clears the horizontal tab stop at the current print position.
- If there is no tab stop at the current print position the command is ignored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(56); 'Clear horizontal tab
```

Horizontal tab

HT (09) <09h>

- The **HT** control code (ASCII 9) moves the current print position to the right to the next horizontal tab stop.
- The command is ignored if there are no tab stops to the right of the current print position or if the next tab stop is beyond the right margin.
- This code is ignored in backward printing mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(9); 'Horizontal tab
```

Absolute horizontal tab

EscHTn (27)(09)n <1Bh><09h>n

- This command moves the print position a distance of (*n*–1) times the current HMI in from the left edge of the printable area.
- You can use this command to move the print position anywhere within the printable area irrespective of margin settings.
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 126.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(9); CHR$(51); 'Move in 50*HMI
```

Set vertical tab at current position

Esc– (27)(45) <1Bh><2Dh>

- This command sets a vertical tab stop at the current line.
- Up to sixty-four vertical tab positions can be set.
- You can set tab stops anywhere within the printable area irrespective of the current margin settings.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(45); 'Set vertical tab
```

Vertical tab

VT (11) <0Bh>

- The **VT** control code (ASCII 11) moves the current print position downwards to the next vertical tab stop, even if the next tab stop is below the bottom margin.
- The code is ignored if there are no tab stops below the current print position.

```
LPRINT CHR$(11); 'Vertical tab
```

Absolute vertical tab

EscVTn (27)(11)n <1Bh><0Bh>n

- This command moves the print position a distance of (*n*–1) times the current VMI downwards from the top line of the page.
- You can use this command to move the print position anywhere within the printable area irrespective of margin settings.
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 126.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(11); CHR$(41); ' Move in 40*VMI
```

Clear all horizontal and vertical tabs

Esc2 (27)(50) <1Bh><32h>

- This command clears all horizontal and vertical tab stops set with the **Esc 1** and **Esc –** commands.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(50); 'Clear all tabs
```

5.4. Characters

Set proportional spacing

EscP (27)(80) <1Bh><50h>

- This command allows you to turn proportional spacing on. Subsequent text is printed proportionally spaced.
- If the current font can only be printed monospaced this command has no effect.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(80); 'Turn proportional spacing on
```

Cancel proportional spacing

EscQ (27)(81) <1Bh><51h>

- This command allows you to turn proportional spacing off. Subsequent text is printed monospaced.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(81); 'Turn proportional spacing off
```

Set bold print mode

EscO (27)(79) <1Bh><4Fh>

- This command selects bold characters. Subsequent text on the current line only is printed in bold.
- Bold printed characters and shadow printed characters are the same.
- You can use bold print mode in conjunction with underline and auto strike-out modes.
- **Esc &**, **Esc X** and **CR** (the carriage return code) all cancel bold printing

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(79); 'Enable bold printing
```

Set double-strike mode

EscF (27)(70) <1Bh><46h>

- This command is identical to the Set Bold Print Mode command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(70); 'Enable bold printing
```

Set shadow print mode

EscW (27)(87) <1Bh><57h>

- This command selects shadow characters. Subsequent text on the current line only is printed with shadow.
- Bold printed characters and shadow printed characters are the same.
- You can use shadow print mode in conjunction with underline and auto strike-out modes.
- **Esc &**, **Esc X** and **CR** (the carriage return code) all cancel shadow printing

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(87); 'Enable shadow printing
```

Cancel bold and shadow print modes

Esc& (27)(38) <1Bh><26h>

- This command cancels the bold, double-strike and shadow print modes selected with the **Esc O**, **Esc F** and **Esc W** commands.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(38); 'Turn off bold & shadow printing
```

Set underline print mode

EscE (27)(69) <1Bh><45h>

- This command turns character underlining on. Subsequent text including spaces is underlined with a continuous line.
- Horizontal tab spaces are not underlined.
- Shadow, bold and strike-out characters can also be underlined.
- Only characters within the printable area can be underlined.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(69); 'Underline following text
```

Cancel underline print mode

EscR (27)(82) <1Bh><52h>

- This command turns character underlining off.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(82); 'Turn underlining off
```

Cancel underline, strike-out, shadow and bold print mode

EscX (27)(88) <1Bh><58h>

- This command can be used to turn off any combination of underline, strike-out, bold and shadow printing modes.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(88); 'Turn bold printing & underlining off
```

Set auto strike-out print mode

EscH (27)(72) <1Bh><48h>

- This command turns on auto strike-out print mode. Subsequent text is overprinted with hyphens.
- Shadow, bold and underlined characters can also be printed in strike-out mode.
- Spaces are printed normally, that is, without a hyphen to strike them out.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(72); 'Strike out following text
```

Cancel auto strike-out print mode

EscI (27)(73) <1Bh><49h>

- This command turns strike-out mode off.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(73); 'Turn strike-out mode off
```

Print character assigned to character code 32

EscY (27)(89) <1Bh><59h>

- This command prints out the character assigned to character code 32 in the current character set.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(89); 'Print char whose code is 32
```

Print character assigned to character code 127

EscZ (27)(90) <1Bh><5Ah>

- This command prints out the character assigned to character code 127 in the current character set.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(90); 'Print char whose code is 127
```

INDEX

A

auto strike-out, 19
automatic line feed, 10

B

Backspace, 7
backward printing, 8
Bell, 6
bold print, 17
bottom margin, 14

C

Carriage return, 10
Control codes, 5
control panel, 4

D

double-strike mode, 17

E

emulation mode, 11
escape sequences, 5

F

feeder, 13
Form feed, 9
forward printing, 8

G

graphics mode, 10

H

Half line feed, 9
horizontal motion index (HMI), 6
horizontal tab, 6, 15

I

Ignored commands, 3

L

left margin, 14
Line feed, 8

P

page length, 13
Paper Input Control, 13
proportional spacing, 17

R

reset printer, 11
resolution, 3
right margin, 15

S

shadow print mode, 18
Space, 7
strike-out, 18
Syntax, 4

T

top margin, 13

U

underline print mode, 18
User Reset, 12

V

vertical motion index (VMI), 7
vertical tab, 7, 16

Chapter 5
EPSON FX-850

Command list

NUL	Null	7
BEL	Bell	7
SP	Space	7
BS	Backspace	7
CR	Carriage return	7
LF	Line Feed	8
FF	Form Feed	8
Esc SP n	Set inter-character space	8
Esc a n	Select justification mode	9
Esc $ n1 n2	Set absolute print position	9
Esc \ n1 n2	Set relative print position	9
Esc <	Select unidirectional printing	10
Esc U	Select / cancel unidirectional printing	10
Esc =	Set data MSB to 0	10
Esc >	Set data MSB to 1	10
Esc #	Cancel MSB setting	10
Esc x n	Select near letter quality or draft	10
Esc s n	Select / cancel half speed mode	11
DC1	Enable printer	11
DC3	Disable pritner	11
Esc @	Initialize printer	11
Esc CR mode	Reset printer / change emulation mode	11
Esc CR ! # R	User reset	12
Esc EM n	Paper Input Control	12
Esc 9	Enable out-of-paper sensor	12
Esc 8	Disable out-of-paper sensor	12
Esc C n	Set page length	13
Esc C NUL n	Set page length	13
Esc l n	Set left margin	13
Esc Q n	Set right margin	14
Esc N n	Set perforation skip	14
Esc O	Cancel perforation skip	14
Esc 2	Select 1/6" line spacing	15
Esc 0	Select 1/8" line spacing	15
Esc 1	Select 7/72" line spacing	15
Esc A n	Select n/72" line spacing	15
Esc 3 n	Select n/216" line spacing	16
Esc J n	Perform n/216" line feed	16
Esc j n	Perform n/216" reverse line feed	16
Esc D n1 n2 n3 ... NUL	Set horizontal tab stops	17
HT	Horizontal tab	17
Esc B n1 n2 n3 ... NUL	Set vertical tab stops	18
Esc b n m1 m2 m3 ... NUL	Set vertical channel tab stops	19
Esc / n	Select vertical tab channel	20
VT	Vertical tab	20
Esc P	Set pitch to 10 characters per inch	21
Esc M	Set pitch to 12 characters per inch	21
Esc p n	Select / cancel proportional spacing	21
SI	Select condensed character mode I	21
Esc SI	Select condensed character mode II	22
DC2	Cancel condensed character mode	22

Esc E	Select emphasized character mode	22
Esc F	Cancel emphasized character mode	22
Esc G	Select double-strike mode	22
Esc H	Cancel double-strike mode	23
Esc W n	Select / Cancel double-width printing	23
SO	Select single-line double-width printing (I)	23
Esc SO	Select single-line double-width printing (II)	24
DC4	Cancel single-line double-width printing	24
Esc 4	Select italic mode	24
Esc 5	Cancel italic mode	24
Esc S n	Select superscript / subscript mode	25
Esc T	Cancel superscript / subscript mode	25
Esc w n	Select / Cancel double-height printing	25
Esc - n	Select / Cancel underline mode	26
Esc ! n	Select printing mode	26
Esc 6	Select expansion of printable code area	27
Esc 7	Cancel expansion of printable code area	27
Esc l n	Expand printable code area	27
Esc R n	Select international character set	28
Esc t n	Select italic / graphic character table	28
Esc & NUL n1 n2 (n3 <character definition data>)	Define characters	29
Esc % n NUL	Select standard / downloaded characters	30
Esc : 0 0 0	Copy ROM character to RAM	30
Esc * m n1 n2 < image data >	Select image mode	31
Esc ? n m	Reassign image mode	32
Esc ^ a n1 n2	Print 8 dot image	32
Esc K n1 n2 <image data>	Print single-density image	33
Esc L n1 n2 <image data>	Print double-density image	34
Esc Y n1 n2 <image data>	Print double-speed double-density image	35
Esc Z n1 n2 <image data>	Print quadruple-density	36

1. Introduction

In this mode you can control this HL Series printer directly by incorporating control codes and escape sequences into your program. Alternatively, applications software (for example, your word-processing or spreadsheet software) may send the necessary commands to the printer automatically. Check the manual that came with your software for instructions on how to use your application with an Epson FX-850 printer.

2. Emulation details

The following points should be borne in mind when using the printer in Epson FX-850 mode.

2.1 Ignored commands

The following commands are ignored: the **BEL** control code (ASCII code 7) which is normally used to sound a printer's bell, the **DC1** (ASCII 17) and **DC3** (ASCII 19) control codes, used to enable and disable a printer, the **Esc 9** and **Esc 8** commands, which normally enable and disable the out-of-paper sensor, the **Esc <** and **Esc U** commands for enabling unidirectional printing and the **Esc x** control code for choosing between near letter quality and draft printing.

In addition, commands that try to change the printer's printing speed cannot do so, since the HL-Series printers always print as fast as they can. Hence, the **Esc s** command, to select or cancel half-speed printing mode, is also ignored, and the **Esc Y** escape sequence (Print Double-Speed, Double-Density Image), performs the same function as the **Esc L** (Print Double-Density Image) sequence.

2.2 Resolution

The resolution of an HL-10h/1260/660 printer is 600 dots per inch. Some instructions use fractions of an inch by which 600 is not exactly divisible, for example **Esc J** performs a line feed using a line spacing of n/216". Similarly, there are graphics commands which specify resolutions of 72, 120 and 240 dots per inch. When a line spacing or graphic cannot be implemented exactly at 600 dots per inch the printer approximates as closely as possible using 600 dots per inch.

3. Terminology

3.1 Syntax

The following conventions are used in this description of the Epson FX-850 mode software commands:
A single letter, two or three-letter control code mnemonic, or number in upright bold text is a literal character and should be sent to the printer as the character code.
A letter or word in italics is a variable and you must substitute an appropriate value when you use the command.
A statement element enclosed in angle brackets <> consists of a stream of data whose length is defined within the same command. The data consists of numbers represented by bytes which are sent to the printer as if they were ASCII character codes.

3.2 Conventions

Although the machine is a laser printer and does not physically have a print head, for the purposes of this emulation description, we refer to the location on the page at which the printer is currently positioned to print as the print position.
The printable area is the area of the page where the printer can place a dot.
The bits that comprise a byte of data are numbered 1 to 8. Bit 1 is the least significant bit (LSB) and bit 8 is the most significant bit (MSB).
The lower case 'L' character is shown as an '*l*' in the **Esc** *l* printer command, to distinguish it from the character '1' (one).

4. Controlling the printer

Commands are invoked using either control codes or escape sequences. You can send them to the printer as part of a program, using the same command that you would use to print a string on the printer. For example in BASIC you would use the LPRINT command.
The printer's control panel can also be used to set various operating parameters. Try to ensure that the control panel settings and computer generated settings do not conflict with one another, or you may not get the results you require.

4.1 The control panel

Refer to the User's Guide for a description of how to use the printer's control panel switches. You should be aware, however, that the following can be set using the control panel: automatic line feed (a line feed is performed with every carriage return), auto mask (two-line top and bottom margins are automatically used on every page), paper size, top, bottom, left and right margins, the number of lines of text per page, orientation (portrait or landscape), the current font and the emulation mode. Conflict between control panel settings and the settings you establish with software commands (or from applications software) is by far the most likely cause of unexpected printing results. Use this manual in conjunction with the User's guide to resolve these conflicts.

4.2 Control codes

Control codes are ASCII codes that instruct the printer to perform a particular operation, such as a line feed. You can send a control code to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print a character using its ASCII code number. For example, the ASCII code for a form feed is 12, so to make the printer perform a form feed use the following BASIC statement:

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);
```

The CHR$ operator is normally used to convert an ASCII code into its corresponding character.

4.3 Escape sequence

Escape sequences tell the printer what Epson FX-850 mode function to perform. An escape sequence consists of the **Esc** character followed by one or more characters which define the operation to be performed. Send an escape sequence to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print characters using their ASCII codes. Some escape sequences require parameter values or data following them, for example, commands which turn a particular feature on an off, or commands for printing graphic images. Numerical parameter data, too, is sent to the printer as if it were a character code to be printed. For example, to move the print position to the third column position on the page the required escape sequence is **Esc HT 3**. In BASIC this would be:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(9); CHR$(3);
```

In some instances where a numerical parameter can only take the values 0 or 1, you have a choice between sending the number or the character code itself as the numerical parameter. Hence you can use CHR$(0) or CHR$(48) to represent 0, and use CHR$(1) or CHR$(49) to represent 1. The practice of using character code numbers CHR$(48) and CHR$(49) is not recommended, however, as it is not conducive to clear programming and, in any case, is not universally available on commands whose parameters can only be either 0 or 1.

5. Commands

5.1 Basic printer operations

The most common printer operations are described in this section. Some are invoked using control codes alone - the rest require escape sequences. For the sake of completeness, several instructions which are part of the Epson FX-850 mode instruction sets, but which an HL Series printer ignores are included.

Null

NUL (0) <00h>

- **NUL** (ASCII code 0) is ignored.

Bell

BEL (7) <07h>

- **BEL** (ASCII code 7) is ignored.

Space

SP (32) <20h>

- The **SP** control code (ASCII code 32) moves the current print position one space to the right.

```
LPRINT CHR$(32); 'Print a space
```

Backspace

BS (08) <08h>

- The **BS** control code (ASCII code 8) moves the current print position one space to the left.
- This code is only effective when used with left justification, which is the default justification mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(8); 'Backspace
```

Carriage return

CR (13) <0Dh>

- The **CR** control code (ASCII 13) moves the print position to the left margin on the current line.
- If automatic line feed is on, this code moves the current print position to the left margin on the next line. You can turn on automatic line feed using the control panel switches.

```
LPRINT CHR$(13); 'Carriage return
```

Line feed

LF (10) <0Ah>

- The **LF** control code (ASCII code 10) moves the current print position down one line, using the current line space setting.
- This code does not cause a carriage return to be performed.
- If the print position is such that this operation would move it below the bottom margin, the current page is ejected and the print position is moved to the top of the next page instead.

Form feed

FF (12) <0Ch>

- The FF control code (ASCII code 12) ejects the current page and moves the current print position to the top of the next page, unless the current page is blank.
- This code does not cause a carriage return to be performed, hence the print position does not change horizontally.
- If the current page is blank this control code has no effect.

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);  'Form feed
```

Set inter-character space

EscSPn (27)(32)n <1Bh><20h>n

- This command allows you to set the space between successive characters.
- *n* is the space between characters in multiples of 1/120".
- *n* must be in the range 0 to 127.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(32); CHR$(5); 'Set 1/24" char space
```

Select justification mode

Escan (27)(97)n <1Bh><61h>n

- This command allows you to select the justification mode for subsequent text.
- Set *n* to 0 to select left justification.
- Set *n* to 1 to centre subsequent text.
- Set *n* to 2 to select right justification.
- Set *n* to 3 to select full justification (text will be both left and right justified).
- The default justification mode is left justification.
- The horizontal tab, **HT**, and backspace, **BS**, control codes can only be used in left justification mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(97); CHR$(2); 'Right justify text
```

Set absolute print position

Esc$n1n2 (27)(36)n1n2 <1Bh><24h>n1n2

- This command allows you to print characters a specified distance in from the left margin.
- The unit of movement is 1/60".
- The specified distance to be moved is $n_1+(n_2*256)/120$".
- If the specified position is to the right of the right margin the command is ignored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(36); CHR$(120); CHR$(0); 'Print a line 2" in
```

Set relative print position

Esc\n1n2 (27)(92)n1n2 <1Bh><5Ch>n1n2

- This command allows you to print characters a specified distance to the left or right of the current print position.
- The unit of movement is 1/120".
- If you wish to move the print position to the right, the distance the print position is to be moved is calculated as $(n_1+(n_2*256))/120$".
- If you wish to move the print position to the left, the distance the print position is to be moved is calculated as $(65536 – (n_1+(n_2*256)))/120$".
- If the specified position is beyond the left or right margin the command is ignored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(36); CHR$(180); CHR$(0); 'Print a line 1.5"
to the right
```

Select unidirectional printing

Esc< **(27)(60)** **<1Bh><3Ch>**

- This command has no effect.

Select / cancel unidirectional printing

EscU **(27)(85)** **<1Bh><55h>**

- This command has no effect.

Set data MSB to 0

Esc= **(27)(61)** **<1Bh><3Dh>**

- This command enables you to set the most significant bit of incoming data bytes to 0.
- This command does not affect data comprising a graphics image or the data that defines a downloadable character.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(61); 'Set MSB to 0
```

Set data MSB to 1

Esc> **(27)(62)** **<1Bh><3Eh>**

- This command enables you to set the most significant bit of incoming data bytes to 1.
- This command does not affect data comprising a graphics image or the data that defines a downloadable character.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(62); 'Set MSB to 1
```

Cancel MSB setting

Esc# **(27)(35)** **<1Bh><23h>**

- This command cancels the two commands that set the most significant bit of incoming data bytes (**Esc** = and **Esc** >).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(35); 'Cancel MSB setting
```

Select Near Letter Quality or Draft

Escxn **(27)(120)n** **<1Bh><78h>n**

- The printer ignores this command.

Select / cancel half speed mode

Escsn (27)(115)n <1Bh><73h>n

- The printer ignores this command.

Enable printer

DC1 (17) <11h>

- The printer ignores this command.

Disable printer

DC3 (19) <13h>

- The printer ignores this command.

Initialize printer

Esc@ (27)(64) <1Bh><40h>

- This command resets the printer.
- All remaining data is printed out and the printer default settings are restored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(64); 'Printer reset
```

Reset printer / change emulation mode

EscCR<mode> (27)(13)mode <1Bh><0Dh>mode

- This command enables you to switch emulation mode or to reset the printer.
- Change emulation mode by setting *mode* to the appropriate letter or pair of letters. Set *mode* to ‘D’ to switch to Diablo mode, ‘H’ to switch to Laserjet 4 mode, ‘I’ to switch to IBM Proprinter XL mode, 'AB' to switch to BR-Script Batch mode, 'AI' to switch BR-Script Interactive mode, 'GL' to switch to HP-GL mode.
- If you set *mode* to ‘E’ in Epson FX-850 mode , a printer reset is performed.
- If you set *mode* to ‘P’ in Epson FX-850 mode, Diablo 630 mode is selected.
- If you set *mode* to ‘FD’, to reset the printer to its factory default settings, Laserjet 4 mode (the factory default emulation mode) is selected and the Laserjet 4 factory default environment is restored. For a list of the factory default settings see the sub-section “Factory default environment” in Chapter 2 "PCL" of this manual.
- On receiving this command the printer prints any remaining data and performs a page eject (unless the current page is blank). The newly selected emulation mode’s default settings come into effect, except when *mode* is set to ‘FD’.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(13); CHR$(73); 'Change to IBM Proprinter
mode
```

User reset

EscCR!#R (27)(13)(33)#(82) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<52h>

- # = 0, the printer restores to the current user setting.
- # = 1, the printer restores to user settings 1.
- # = 2, the printer restores to user settings 2.

Paper Input Control

EscEMn (27)(25)n <1Bh><45h>n

- *n* = 0, paper is fed from manual paper feeder.
- *n* = 1, paper is fed from the standard paper cassette.
- *n* = 2, paper is fed from the optional lower paper cassette.
- *n* = 3, the printer ejects the sheet of paper.

Enable out-of-paper sensor

Esc9 (27)(57) <1Bh><39h>

- The printer ignores this command.

Disable out-of-paper sensor

Esc8 (27)(56) <1Bh><38h>

- The printer ignores this command.

5.2. Page set up

Set page length

EscC*n* (27)(67)n <1Bh><43h>n

- This command sets the page length in lines.

or

EscCNULn (27)(67)(00)n <1Bh><43h><00h>n

- This command sets the page length in inches.
- The top of form position is set to be the current line.
- *n* is the number of lines that make up one page, or the length of the page in inches, according to which form of the command is used.
- If the first form of the command is used (*n* = the number of lines in the page) the current line spacing setting is used to determine the length of the page.
- If the first form of the command is used, *n* must be in the range 1 to 127.
- If the second form of the command is used (*n* = page length in inches), *n* must be in the range 1 to 14.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(67); CHR$(40); '40 lines per page
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(67); CHR$(0); CHR$(11); '11 inches per page
```

Set left margin

Escln (27)(108)n <1Bh><6Ch>n

- This command sets the left margin in columns from the left edge of the page. The width of a column is the current character width.
- In proportional spacing mode a column width of 1/10" is adopted.
- This command clears all tab settings.
- The minimum space allowed between the left and right margins is 1/5".

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(108); CHR$(10); 'Left margin 1" at 10 cpi
```

Set right margin

EscQn (27)(81)n <1Bh><51h>n

- This command sets the right margin in columns from the left edge of the page. The width of a column is the current character width.
- In proportional spacing mode a column width of 1/10" is adopted.
- This command clears all tab settings.
- The minimum space allowed between the left and right margins is 1/5".

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(81); CHR$(72); 'Right margin 6" at 12 cpi
```

Set perforation skip

EscNn (27)(78)n <1Bh><4Eh>n

- This command sets the bottom margin and enables perforation skip, that is, whenever the print position reaches the bottom margin the printer performs a page eject and moves the print position to the top of the next page.
- *n* = the number of lines at the current line spacing setting between the bottom margin and the bottom edge of the paper.
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 127.
- **Esc C** (Set Page Length) and **Esc O** (Cancel Perforation Skip) cancel automatic perforation skip.
- If the bottom margin specified by this command would be located above the top margin, the command is ignored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(78); CHR$(4); 'Set bottom margin to 4 lines.
```

Cancel perforation skip

EscO (27)(79) <1Bh><4Fh>

- This command cancels the automatic perforation skip feature.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(79); 'Cancel perforation skip.
```

5.3. Line spacing

Select 1/6" line spacing

Esc2 (27)(50) <1Bh><32h>

- This command sets the line spacing to 1/6". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position 1/6" down the page.
- This line spacing is the default setting when the printer is switched on or reset.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(50); 'Set line spacing to 1/6".
```

Select 1/8" line spacing

Esc0 (27)(48) <1Bh><30h>

- This command sets the line spacing to 1/8". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position 1/8" down the page.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(48); 'Set line spacing to 1/8".
```

Select 7/72" line spacing

Esc1 (27)(49) <1Bh><31h>

- This command sets the line spacing to 7/72". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position 7/72" down the page.
- Since the printer resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing will not be exactly 7/72".

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(49); 'Set line spacing to 7/72".
```

Select n/72" line spacing

EscAn (27)(65)n <1Bh><41h>n

- This command sets the line spacing to *n*/72". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position *n*/72" down the page.
- Since the printer's resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing will not be exactly *n*/72".
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 85.
- If *n* is outside the range 1 to 85 the default line spacing, 1/6" is selected.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(65); CHR$(10); 'Set line spacing of 10/72".
```

Select n/216" line spacing

Esc3n (27)(51)n <1Bh><33h>n

- This command sets the line spacing to *n*/216". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position *n*/216" down the page.
- Since the printer's resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing will not be exactly *n*/216".
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 255.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(51); CHR$(25); 'Select line spacing of
25/216".
```

Perform n/216" line feed

EscJn (27)(74)n <1Bh><4Ah>n

- This command performs a single line feed, moving the print position down the page by *n*/216".
- This command does not perform a carriage return.
- The current line spacing setting is not affected.
- *n* must be in the range 0 to 255.
- The actual vertical distance moved may not be exactly the distance you specify due to the printer's 600 dots per inch resolution.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(74); CHR$(54); '1/4" line feed
```

Perform n/216" reverse line feed

Escjn (27)(106)n <1Bh><6Ah>n

- This command performs a single reverse line feed, moving the print position up the page by *n*/216".
- This command does not perform a carriage return.
- The current line spacing setting is not affected.
- *n* must be in the range 0 to 255.
- The actual vertical distance moved may not be exactly the distance you specify due to the printer's 600 dots per inch resolution.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(106); CHR$(108); '1/2" line feed
```

5.4. Using tabs

Set horizontal tab stops

EscDn1n2n3...NUL (27)(68)n1n2n3...(00)
<1Bh><44h>n1n2n3...<00h>

- This command enables you to set up to 32 horizontal tab stops based on the current character width.
- The character width setting is determined by the combination of the current pitch (10 or 12 characters per inch) and the current character mode (condensed, normal or double-width). If proportional spacing is being used the character width is based on a pitch of 10 characters per inch.
- The tab stops must be set in ascending order. If you invoke the command with the tabs in any other order all horizontal tab settings are cleared.
- The value of n_i must be in the range 0 to 255.
- Once you have selected the tab settings they remain fixed - their position does not change if you change the character pitch or character width settings.
- To set up a group of equally spaced tab stops use the **Esc e 0** command.
- **Esc D 0** clears all horizontal tab settings.
- The default tab stop settings are at every eighth column, starting at the ninth column. The default column width is 1/10".
- The default settings are adopted when the printer is first switched on or when you perform a reset with the **Esc @** instruction.
- You can move the print position to the tab stops using the **HT** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(68); CHR$(10); CHR$(20); CHR$(0);
'Set tab stops at columns 10 and 20.
```

Horizontal tab

HT (09) <09h>

- The **HT** control code (ASCII code 9) moves the current print position one tab stop to the right.
- The command is ignored if there are no tab stops to the right of the current print position or if the next tab stop is beyond the right margin.

```
LPRINT CHR$(9); 'Tab
```

Set vertical tab stops

EscBn1n2n3...NUL (27)(66)n1n2n3...(00)
<1Bh><42h>n1n2n3...<00h>

- This command enables you to set up to sixteen vertical tab stops based on the current line space setting.
- The tab stops must be set in ascending order. If you specify the tab settings in any other order, any settings made with a previous **Esc B** command are cleared.
- The value of n_i must be in the range 0 to 255.
- Vertical tab settings are not affected by subsequent changes in the line spacing setting.
- To set up a group of equally spaced tab stops use the **Esc e 1** command.
- **Esc B 0** clears the vertical tab settings set with a previous **Esc B** command.
- You can move the print position to the tab stops using the **VT** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(66); CHR$(12); CHR$(24); CHR$(0);
'Set tab stops at lines 12 and 24.
```

Set vertical channel tab stops

Escbnm1m2m3...NUL (27)(98)nm1m2m3...(00)
<1Bh><62h>nm1m2m3...<00h>

- You can set up to eight different sets of vertical tab stops and select any of these sets for use at any time. Each set of tab stops is called a channel - channels are numbered from 0 to 7.
- Channel 0 normally holds the settings you have selected with the **Esc B** command, or equally spaced tab settings that you have set with the **Esc e 1** command. However, you can also set the channel 0 tab settings using the **Esc b** command.
- To set the tab stops held in channels 1 to 7 you must use the **Esc b** command.
- This command enables you to set up to sixteen vertical tab stops for each channel based on the current line space setting.
- *n* is the channel number whose tab stops are to be set.
- m_i specifies the tab based on the current line space setting.
- The value of m_i must be in the range 0 to 255.
- The tab stops must be set in ascending order. If you specify a channel's tab settings in any other order, any previous settings made for that channel are cleared.
- Vertical tab settings are not affected by subsequent changes in the line spacing setting.
- **Esc b *n* 0** clears the vertical tab settings set for channel *n*.
- You can select a channel using the **Esc /** command and move the print position to its tab stops using the **VT** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(98); CHR$(1); CHR$(10); CHR$(20); CHR$(0);
'Set tab stops at lines 10 and 20.
```

Select vertical tab channel

Esc/*n* (27)(47)n <1Bh><2Fh>n

- This command allows you to select a set of vertical tabs (or channel) that you defined using the **Esc b** command.
- All subsequent vertical tab commands use the selected tab channel's settings.
- *n* must be in the range from 0 to 7.
- The default channel is channel 0. Channel 0 is the current channel when the printer is first switched on, or after a reset with the **Esc @** command.
- There are no default vertical tab settings for any channel.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(47); CHR$(5); 'Select vertical tab channel 5
```

Vertical tab

VT (11) <0Bh>

- The **VT** control code (ASCII 11) moves the current print position one vertical tab stop down the page. The current vertical tab channel's settings are used.
- If you have not previously selected a vertical tab channel with the **Esc /** command, channel 0, the default channel, is used.
- If you have not set any vertical tab stops for the current channel with either the **Esc B**, **Esc b**, **or Esc e 1** commands, the print position is moved down one line using the current line space setting.
- If there are no tab stops below the current print position a line feed is performed.
- If no tab stops have been set a carriage return and line feed are performed.

```
LPRINT CHR$(11); ' Vertical tab
```

5.5. Using standard characters

Set pitch to 10 characters per inch

EscP (27)(80) <1Bh><50h>

- This command sets the printing pitch to 10 characters per inch (cpi).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(80); 'Set pitch to 10 cpi
```

Set pitch to 12 characters per inch

EscM (27)(77) <1Bh><4Dh>

- This command sets the printing pitch to 12 characters per inch (cpi).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(77); 'Set pitch to 12 cpi
```

Select / cancel proportional spacing

Escpn (27)(112)n <1Bh><70h>n

- This command allows you to turn proportional spacing on or off.
- Setting *n* to 1 turns proportional spacing on. Subsequent text is printed proportionally spaced.
- Setting *n* to 0 turns proportional spacing off. Subsequent text is printed monospaced.
- When you specify the value for *n* you can use the character codes for ‘0’ and ‘1’ (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1.
- Selecting proportional spacing cancels condensed character mode.
- You cannot use the backspace, **BS**, code in proportional spacing mode.
- If you change the character pitch using **Esc P** or **Esc M**, proportional spacing is automatically turned off.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(112); CHR$(1); 'Turn proportional spacing on
```

Select condensed character mode I

SI (15) <0Fh>

- This command selects condensed character mode. Subsequent text characters are condensed horizontally when printed.
- Selecting proportional spacing cancels condensed character mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(15); 'Set condensed character mode
```

Select condensed character mode II

EscSI (27)(15) <1B><0F>

- This command selects condensed character mode. Subsequent text characters are condensed horizontally when printed.
- Selecting proportional spacing cancels condensed character mode.
- This command functions exactly like the **SI** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(15); 'Set condensed character mode
```

Cancel condensed character mode

DC2 (18) <12h>

- This command cancels condensed character mode. Subsequent text characters are printed normally.

```
LPRINT CHR$(18); 'Cancel condensed character mode
```

Select emphasized character mode

EscE (27)(69) <1Bh><45h>

- This command turns emphasized character mode on. Subsequent text is printed with a bold stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(69); 'Turn emphasized character mode on
```

Cancel emphasized character mode

EscF (27)(70) <1Bh><46h>

- This command turns emphasized character mode off. Subsequent text is printed with a medium stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(70); 'Turn emphasized character mode off
```

Select double-strike mode

EscG (27)(71) <1Bh><47h>

- This command turns double-strike mode on. Subsequent text is printed with a bold stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(71); 'Turn double-strike printing mode on
```

Cancel double-strike mode

EscH (27)(72) <1Bh><48h>

- This command turns double-strike mode off. Subsequent text is printed with a medium stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(72); 'Turn double-strike printing mode off
```

Select / cancel double-width printing

EscWn (27)(87)n <1Bh><57h>n

- This command turns double-width printing on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is printed using double-width characters. The line spacing setting is doubled.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters. The previous character pitch setting is restored.
- When you specify a value for *n* you may also use the character codes for '0' and '1' (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1.
- Only **Esc W 0** can be used to cancel double-width printing mode set using the **Esc W 1** instruction.
- **Esc W 0** cancels double-width printing mode set using the **Esc W 1** instruction, the **SO** control code or the **Esc SO** instruction.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(87); CHR$(1); 'Set double-width printing
mode
```

Select single-line double-width printing (l)

SO (27) <0Eh>

- This command turns double-width printing mode on for one line only. The subsequent line of text is printed using double-width characters and with the line spacing setting doubled.
- The following commands cancel double-width printing mode set using the **SO** control code: **LF**, **FF**, **VT**, **Esc W 0**, **DC4**, and **ESC @**.
- If the "auto LF" (automatic line feed) function has been turned on from the control panel, the carriage return control code, **CR**, will also cancel double-width printing mode selected with the **SO** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(14); 'Set double-width printing mode for one line
```

Select single-line double-width printing (II)

EscSO (27)(14) <1Bh><03h>

- This command turns double-width printing mode on for one line only. The subsequent line of text is printed using double-width characters and with the line spacing setting doubled.
- The following commands cancel double-width printing mode set using the **SO** escape sequence: **LF**, **FF**, **VT**, **Esc W 0**, **DC4**, and **ESC @**.
- If the "auto LF" (automatic line feed) function has been turned on from the control panel, the carriage return control code, **CR**, will also cancel double-width printing mode selected with the **Esc SO** escape sequence.
- This command functions exactly like the **SO** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(14); 'Set double-width printing mode for one
line
```

Cancel single-line double-width printing

DC4 (20) <14h>

- This control code cancels single-line double-width mode set with the **SO** control code or with the **Esc SO** escape sequence. Subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters.
- The previous character pitch is restored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(20); 'Cancel enlarged character mode set with SO
```

Select italic mode

Esc4 (27)(52) <1Bh><34h>

- This command enables the italic printing mode. Subsequent text is printed in italic style.
- You can still use italic text even after selecting the extended character set with the **Esc t** command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(52); 'Italic mode
```

Cancel italic mode

Esc5 (27)(53) <1Bh><35h>

- This command cancels the italic printing mode. Subsequent text is printed upright.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(53); 'Cancel italic mode
```

Select superscript / subscript mode

EscSn (27)(83)n <1Bh><53h>n

- This command allows you to print superscripts or subscripts.
- Set *n* to 0 to print subsequent text using superscript characters.
- Set *n* to 1 to print subsequent text using subscript characters.
- When you specify the value for *n* you may use the character codes for '0' and '1' (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1.
- Selecting either superscript or subscript mode cancels double-height printing mode.
- You can cancel either superscript or subscript mode with the **Esc T** command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(83); CHR$(0); 'Turn on superscript mode
```

Cancel superscript / subscript mode

EscT (27)(84) <1Bh><54h>

- This command cancels superscript or subscript printing mode.
- Subsequent text is printed using normal characters.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(84); 'Turn off superscript mode
```

Select / cancel double-height printing

Escwn (27)(119)n <1Bh><77h>n

- This command turns double-height printing on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is printed using double-height characters. The line space setting is doubled.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters. The previous line spacing is restored.
- When you specify a value for *n* you may also use the character codes for '0' and '1' (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1.
- You cannot use superscript, subscript or condensed printing modes in conjunction with double-height printing. If you try to select any of these three modes while in double-height printing the command will be ignored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(119); CHR$(1); 'Set double-height printing
mode
```

Select / cancel underline mode

Esc-*n* (27)(45)n <1B><2D>n

- This command turns character underlining on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is printed underlined. All characters, including space characters, are underlined with a continuous line.
- Horizontal tabbed spaces are never underlined.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is not underlined.
- When you specify a value for *n* you may also use the character codes for '0' and '1' (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(45); CHR$(1); 'Underline following text
```

Select printing mode

Esc!n (27)(33)n <1Bh><21h>n

- This command allows you to select a combination of printing modes with just one command.
- The various modes are weighted as shown. Add the numbers that correspond to each mode you require and set *n* to the total.

10 characters per inch	0
12 characters per inch	1
Proportional spacing	2
Condensed mode	4
Emphasized mode	8
Double-strike mode	16
Double-width mode	32
Italic printing	64
Underline mode	128

- Double-strike and emphasized modes are identical.
- Proportional spacing overrides either character pitch setting (10 cpi or 12 cpi).
- Proportional spacing and condensed mode cannot be combined. Proportional spacing has precedence.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(33); CHR$(138); 'Proportionally space,
emphasize & underline following text.
```

Select expansion of printable code area

Esc6 (27)(54) <1Bh><36h>

- This command enables you to print characters whose character codes are in the range 128 to 159.
- You can define your own characters and assign codes in this range to them.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(54); 'Expand printable area
```

Cancel expansion of printable code area

Esc7 (27)(55) <1Bh><37h>

- This command prevents you from printing characters with codes in the range 128 to 159.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(55); 'Cancel codes 128–159
```

Expand printable code area

EscIn (27)(73)n <1Bh><49h>n

- This command permits you to enable or disable the printing of characters whose character codes are in the ranges 0 to 31 and 128 to 159. You can define your own characters and assign codes in these ranges to them.
- Set *n* to 1 to enable printing of characters in the ranges 0 to 31 and 128 to 159.
- Set *n* to 0 to disable printing of characters in the ranges 0 to 31 and 128 to 159.
- When you specify the value for *n* you can use the character codes for ‘0’ and ‘1’ (48 and 49) instead of 0 and 1 if you wish.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(73); CHR$(1); 'Expand printable area
```

Select international character set

EscRn (27)(82)n <1Bh><52h>n

- This command selects one of the nineteen available international character sets.
- Each character set varies slightly from the others and contains a small number of special characters necessary for printing in that particular language.
- The selection you make with this command does not affect any italic or graphics character table selection that you may have made with the **Esc t** command.
- The character sets listed below, plus several others, can also be selected from the printer's control panel.
- The character sets available and the corresponding values of *n* are as follows:

US ASCII	0	Japanese	8
French I	1	Norwegian	9
German	2	Danish II	10
UK ASCII I	3	UK ASCII II	13
Danish I	4	French II	14
Swedish	5	Dutch	15
Italy	6	South African	16
Spanish	7		

- If you have selected the graphics character table with the **Esc t 1** command the following additional character sets are available.

Norwegian set I	17	IBM set I	19
Norwegian set II	18	IBM set II	20

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(82); CHR$(3); 'Select British char set
```

Select italic / graphics character table

Esct*n* (27)(116)n <1Bh><74h>n

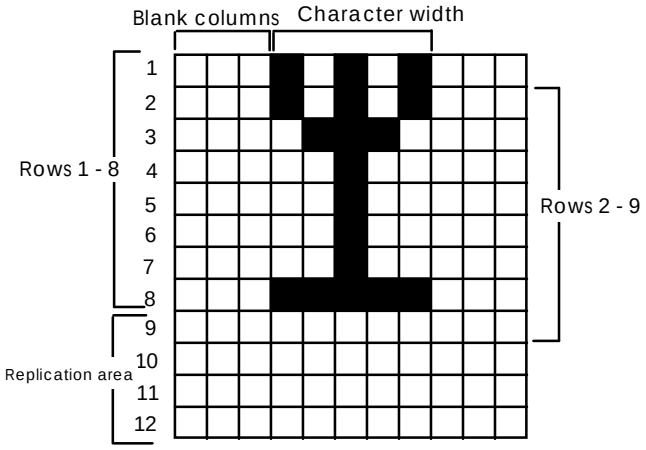
- This command allows you to choose between two character tables - the italic character table and the graphics character table.
- The two tables are shown in the Epson FX-850 and Brother Twinriter DP modes section of the appendix at the end of this manual.
- Set *n* to 0 to select the italic character table. Character codes in the range 160 to 255 are now italic characters.
- Set *n* to 1 to select the extended character table. Character codes in the range 128 to 255 are now foreign language and graphics characters.
- You can still print italic characters using the Select Italic Mode, **Esc 4**, command even when you have selected the graphics character table.

5.6. Using customized characters

Define characters

Esc&NULn_1n_2(n_3<character definition data>)
(27)(38)(00)n1n2(n3....) <1Bh><26h><00h>n1n2(n3...)

- This command enables you to define and download characters for printing.
- Monospaced characters are designed on a grid eleven dots wide by nine dots high. Characters either occupy the top 8 rows of the grid (ascending characters) or rows 2 to 9 of the grid (descending characters).



- Proportionally spaced characters are subject to the same height constraints (that is, eight dots high and either ascending or descending). The width of proportionally spaced characters is specified in n_3.
- n_1 is the character code of the first character in the sequence to be defined.
- n_2 is the character code of the last character in the sequence to be defined.
- It is assumed that you are defining a sequence of characters whose code numbers increment by one for each character as default. If this is not the cause, you must split the characters you are defining into sets of characters with contiguous code numbers and use a separate command for each set.
- Each character is defined as a series of bytes - each byte defining a column of dots. The columns are read from left to right in the order in which they occur in the definition. The most significant bit of each byte represents the top dot of the column, and the least significant bit represents the bottom dot. Simply set a bit to 1 to print a dot in that position on the grid, or to 0 to print white space.
- The MSB (bit 8) of n_3 specifies whether the defined character is an ascender or a descender. Set bit 8 to 0 when defining an ascender, and to 1 for a descender. Ascending characters occupy the top 8 rows of the grid while descending characters occupy rows 2 to 9 of the grid.
- Bits 5 to 7 of n_3 specify the number of columns left blank to the left of the defined character in proportional spacing mode. The number of columns to skip is the number held in bits 5 to 7 minus 1. Up to six columns can be skipped. Hence, if you set this number to 4 it is equivalent to setting the first three character definition data bytes to 0.

- Bits 1 to 4 of n_3 specify the width in columns of the defined character in proportional spacing mode. The width in columns is the number held in bits 1 to 4. Characters can be up to fifteen columns wide, including skipped blank columns.

- Downloaded characters are selected using the **Esc % 1 NUL** command and then printed by sending the appropriate character codes.

Select standard / downloaded characters

Esc%*n*NUL (27)(37)n(00) <1Bh><25h>n<00h>

- Once you have defined and downloaded one or more customized characters using the **Esc &** command, you can choose between the normal characters contained in the printer ROM and the characters you have downloaded.

- Set *n* to 0 to select the printer standard characters. In this mode you cannot print any of your own defined characters.

- Set *n* to 1 to select your own downloaded characters for printing. Now you can print using your user-defined characters but you cannot print any of the printer standard characters unless you have previously downloaded them to RAM as well, using the **Esc :** Copy ROM to RAM command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(37); CHR$(1); CHR$(0); 'Select downloaded
characters
```

Copy ROM character to RAM

Esc:000 (27)(58)(00)(00)(00) <1Bh><3Ah><30h><30h><30h>

- In order to use your own customized characters in conjunction with the standard characters contained in the printer, you must first download the printer standard ROM characters to the printer RAM, then define and download your own customized characters, and finally select the downloaded characters for printing using the **Esc % 1 NUL** escape sequence. This has the effect of inserting your custom characters into the standard character set in place of the standard characters with the same character codes.

- This command enables you to download the printer current character set to its RAM. The printer current character set consists of whichever combination of international character set, and italic or graphic character table you have selected.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(58); CHR$(0); CHR$(0); CHR$(0); 'Copy
printer’s characters to its RAM
```

5.7. Graphics

Select image mode

Esc*mn1n2<image data> (27)(42)mn1n2....
<1Bh><2Ah>mn1n2....

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line at a selected horizontal resolution.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of 256*n_2+n_1 bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- *m* defines the horizontal resolution at which the image will be printed. *m* must be in the range 0 to 7. A value of 0 selects 60 dots per inch, 1 and 2 select 120 dots per inch, 3 selects 240 dots per inch, 4 selects 80 dots per inch, 5 selects 72 dots per inch, 6 selects 90 dots per inch and 7 selects 144 dots per inch.
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.
- Images are printed left to right.
- Images are printed at a horizontal resolution determined by your selection and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch. The printer attempts to match your chosen horizontal resolution as best it can using its 600 dpi resolution.
- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1:”,255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC * m n1 n2 ***”
30 FOR M=0 TO 6
40 LPRINT “m=”;M
50 ‘* SELECT BIT IMAGE MODE *
60 LPRINT CHR$(27);”*”;CHR$(M);CHR$(240);CHR$(0);
70 FOR I=1 TO 8
80 N=2^I-1
90 FOR J=1 TO 30
100 LPRINT CHR$(N);
110 NEXT J:NEXT I:LPRINT
120 NEXT M:END


*** ESC * m n1 n2 ***

Sample 9
```

Reassign image mode

Esc?*cm* (27)(63)cm <1Bh><3Fh>cm

- This command enables you to redefine the horizontal resolution attached to a particular image mode. Hence, you could assign a density of 90 dots per inch to the image mode normally associated with 60 dots per inch, which is selected with the **Esc K** command. All subsequent **Esc K** commands would then generate images with a horizontal density of 90 dots per inch.

- *c* is the character which signifies the graphics mode: K = single-density (60 dpi), L = double-density (120 dpi), Y = double-speed, double-density (120 dpi) and Z = quadruple-density (240 dpi).

- *m* defines the new horizontal resolution to be assigned to the specified graphics mode. *m* must be in the range 0 to 7. A value of 0 selects 60 dots per inch, 1 and 2 select 120 dots per inch, 3 selects 240 dots per inch, 4 selects 80 dots per inch, 5 selects 72 dots per inch 6 selects 90 dots per inch and 7 selects 144 dots per inch.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(63); CHR$(90); CHR$(7); 'Change quad density
to 144 dpi
```

Print 9 bit image

Esc^an1n2 (27)(92)an1n2 <1Bh><5Eh>an1n2

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.

- n_1 and n_2 define the number of vertical 9-dot columns that comprise the image.

- *a* defines the horizontal density of the image. Set *a* to 0 for a horizontal density of 60 dots per inch, and to 1 for an approximate horizontal density of 120 dots per inch.

- The image consists of $256*n_2+n_1$ columns of data, each column representing a single vertical column of 1/8".

- Each pair of bytes represents a vertical column of nine dots, the most significant bit of the first byte representing the dot at the top of the column, the least significant bit of the first byte representing the second dot from the bottom, and the MSB of the second byte representing the dot at the bottom of the column. Bits 1 to 7 of the second byte are not used. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.

- Images are printed from left to right.

- Images are printed at a horizontal resolution of 60 or approximately 120 dots per inch, and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.

- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1”, 255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC ^ m n1 n2 ***”
30 LPRINT “--STANDARD DENSITY--”
40 M=0
50 GOSUB 120
60 LPRINT
70 LPRINT
80 LPRINT “--DOUBLE-DENSITY--”
90 M=1
100 GOSUB 120
110 END
120 FOR A=1 TO 10
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); “^”;CHR$(M);CHR$(10);CHR$(0);
140 LPRINT CHR$(8);CHR$(128);CHR$(20);CHR$(0);
150 LPRINT CHR$(34);CHR$(128);CHR$(65);CHR$(0);
160 LPRINT CHR$(128);CHR$(128);CHR$(65);CHR$(0);
170 LPRINT CHR$(34);CHR$(128);CHR$(20);CHR$(0);
180 LPRINT CHR$(8);CHR$(128);CHR$(0);CHR$(0);
190 NEXT A
200 RETURN

** ESC ^ m n1 n2 ***

Sample 10
```

Print single-density image

Esc K n_1 n_2 <*image data*> (27)(75)n1n2.... <1Bh><4Bh>n1n2....

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of $256*n_2+n_1$ bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.
- Images are printed from left to right.
- Images are printed at a horizontal resolution of 60 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1:”, 255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC K n1 n2 ***”
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 ‘* STANDARD DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);”K”;CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT
130 NEXT I:END

*** ESC K n1 n2 ***

Sample 11
```

Print double-density image

EscLn_1n_2<*image data*> (27)(76)n1n2.... <1Bh><4Ch>n1n2....

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of 256*n_2+n_1 bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.
- Images are printed from left to right.
- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 120 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1:”,255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC L n1 n2 ***
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 ‘* DOUBLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);”L”;CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT
130 NEXT I:END


*** ESC L n1 n2 ***

Sample 12
```

Print double-speed double-density image

EscY$n_1 n_2$<*image data*> (27)(89)n1n2.... <1Bh><59h>n1n2....

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of 256*n_2+n_1 bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.
- Images are printed from left to right.
- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 120 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.
- The printer always prints as fast as possible, hence this command is the exact equivalent of the **Esc L** command.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1:”,255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC Y n1 n2 ***”
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 ‘* DOUBLE-SPEED & DOUBLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);”Y”;CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT
130 NEXT I:END


** ESC Y n1 n2 ***

Sample 13
```

Print quadruple-density image

Esc Z n_1 n_2 <*image data*> (27)(90)n1n2.... <1Bh><5Ah>n1n2....

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of 256*n_2+n_1 bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.
- Images are printed from left to right.
- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 240 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- You can only use this command in portrait orientation.

```
10 WIDTH “LPT1;”,255
20 LPRINT “*** ESC Z n1 n2 ***”
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 ‘* QUADRUPLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);”Z”,CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT
130 NEXT I:END


*** ESC Z n1 n2 ***

Sample 14
```

INDEX

9

9 bit image, 32

A

absolute print position, 9

B

Backspace, 7
BEL, 7

C

Carriage return, 7
characters, 21
condensed character, 21
Control codes, 6
control panel, 5
CR, 7

D

data MSB, 10
Define characters, 29
double-density image, 34
double-height printing, 25
double-speed double-density image, 35
double-strike mode, 22
double-width printing, 23
downloaded characters, 30

E

emphasized character mode, 22
emulation mode, 11
Escape sequences, 6

F

feeder, 12
FF, 8

G

Graphics, 31

H

half speed mode, 11
horizontal tab stops, 17

I

Ignored commands, 4
image mode, 31
Initialize, 11
inter-character space, 8
international character set, 28
italic / graphics character table, 28
italic mode, 24

J

justification, 9

L

left margin, 13
Line feed, 8, 16
Line spacing, 15

P

page length, 13
Paper Input, 12
perforation skip, 14
pitch, 21
printable code area, 27
printing mode, 26
proportional spacing, 21

Q

quadruple-density image, 36

R

relative print position, 9
reset, 11
resolution, 4
reverse line feed, 16
right margin, 14
ROM character, 30

S

single-density image, 33
single-line double-width printing, 23
space, 7
superscript / subscript mode, 25
Syntax, 5

U

underline mode, 26
unidirectional printing, 10
User reset, 12

V

vertical tab stops, 18

Chapter 6
IBM Proprinter XL

Command list

NUL	Null	5
BEL	Bell	5
ESC	Escape	6
SP	Space	6
BS	Backspace	6
LF	Line Feed	6
FF	Form Feed	6
CR	Carriage return	7
Esc5n	Automatic line feed	7
DC1	Enable printer	7
EscQ22	Disable printer	7
EscQ3		7
EscCRmode	Reset printer / change emulation mode	8
EscCR!#R	User reset	8
EscEMn	Paper Input Control	8
EscCn	Set page length	9
EscCNULn	Set page length	9
EscXmn	Set left and right margins	9
EscNn	Set perforation skip	10
EscO	Cancel perforation skip	10
Esc0	Select 1/8" line spacing	10
Esc1	Select 7/72" line spacing	10
EscAn	Select n/72" line spacing	11
Esc2	Activate n/72" line spacing	11
Esc3n	Set n/216" line feed	11
EscJn	Execute n/216" line feed	11
EscDn1n2n3...NUL	Set horizontal tab stops	12
EscBn1n2n3...NUL	Set vertical tab stops	12
HT	Horizontal tab	12
VT	Vertical tab	12
EscR	Restore default tab settings	13
Esc7	Select character set I	13
Esc6	Select character set II	13
DC2	Set pitch to 10 cpi	13
Esc:	Set pitch to 12 cpit	13
EscPn	Proportional spacing	14
SI	Set condensed character mode	14
EscE	Set emphasized character mode	14
EscF	Cancel emphasized character mode	14
SO	Set enlarged character mode for a single line	15
DC4	Cancel enlarged character mode	15
CAN	Cancel	15
EscWn	Enlarged character mode	15
EscSn	Set superscript or subscript character mode	16
EscT	Cancel superscript or subscript character mode	16
Esc-n	Underline mode	16
Esc_n	Continuous overline mode	16
Esc[@n1n2n3n4n5n6	Select double-height / double-width mode	17
Esc\n1n2<character data>	Select character from the all character code table	17
Esc^<char-code>	Select a character from the all character code table	17
EscI	Select character font	18

Esc=n1n220n3(n4n5<character definition data>...) 18
Define characters
EscKn1n2<image data> 19
Set single-density image mode
EscLn1n2<image data> 20
Set double-density image mode
EscYn1n2<image data> 20
Set double-speed, double-density image mode
EscZn1n2<image data> 21

1. Introduction

This HL Series printer offers a complete emulation of the IBM Proprinter. In Proprinter XL mode you can drive the printer directly by incorporating control codes and escape sequences in your program, or alternatively, applications software (for example, your word-processing software) may send the necessary commands to the printer automatically. Check the manual that came with your software package for instructions on how to use your software with an IBM Proprinter XL.

2. Emulation details

The following points should be borne in mind when running this HL Series printer in IBM Proprinter XL mode.

2.1. Ignored commands

A few IBM Proprinter XL commands have reduced effect, or no effect at all. In some cases this is due to the physical nature of an HL Series printer. These commands are as follows. The **BEL** control code (ASCII 7) which is used to sound the Proprinter's bell, is ignored. The **DC3** control code (ASCII 23), used to disable the Proprinter, is also ignored. The **Esc Y** escape sequence, which enables double-speed, double-density graphics mode has no effect on the printing speed, as HL Series printers always operate as fast as they can. Hence the **Esc Y** has the same effect as the **Esc L** (enable double-density graphics mode) sequence.

2.2 Resolution

The resolution of this HL Series printer is 600 dots per inch. Some IBM Proprinter use fractions of an inch that not exactly divisible by 600, for example **Esc 0** sets line spacing to 1/8" of an inch. Similarly, the Proprinter graphics commands specify resolutions of 72, 120 and 240 dots per inch. When a graphic cannot be represented exactly at 600 dots per inch the printer prints the closest possible approximation to the specified image using 600 dots per inch.

2.3 Character set selection

Using software commands you can select IBM character set I, IBM character set II or the IBM All Character Code table. Using the printer control panel you can select a number of other character sets (consult the User's Guide for a description of how to do this). All available character sets are shown in the IBM Proprinter XL mode section of the appendix at the end of this manual.

2.4 Controlling the printer

Commands are invoked using either control codes or escape sequences. You can send them to the printer as part of a program, using the same command that you would use to print a text string on the printer, for example in BASIC you would use the LPRINT command.

2.5 Control codes

Control codes are ASCII codes that tell the printer to perform a particular function, such as a line feed. Send a control code to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print a character using its ASCII code number. For example, the ASCII code for a form feed is 12, so to get the printer to perform a form feed use the following BASIC statement:

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);
```

The CHR$ operator is normally used to convert an ASCII code into its corresponding character.

2.6 Escape sequences

Escape sequences tell the printer which Proprinter function to perform. An escape sequence consists of the ESC character followed by one or more characters which define the operation to be performed. Send an escape sequence to the printer by sending the same type of instruction you would use to print characters using their ASCII codes. Some escape sequences require parameter values or data following them, for example commands which turn a particular feature on and off, and commands for downloading character descriptions to the printer or for printing graphic images. Numerical parameter data, too, is sent to the printer as if it were a character code to be printed. For example, to set the left and right margin settings to be at 10 and 70 columns across the page the required escape sequence is **Esc X 10 70**. In BASIC this would be:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(88); CHR$(10); CHR$(70);
```

3. Notation used in this emulation description

3.1 Syntax

The following conventions are used in this description of the Proprinter XL software commands.
A letter, word or number in upright bold text is the literal character which and should be sent to the printer as a character code.
A letter or word in italics is a variable and you must substitute the appropriate value or values when using the command.
An ellipsis, ..., indicates that an element may be repeated any number of times.

3.2 Data conventions

The bits that comprise a byte of data are numbered 1 to 8. Bit 1 is the least significant bit (LSB) and bit 8 is the most significant bit (MSB).

4. Commands

4.1 Basic printer operation

The most common printer operations are described in this section. Most are invoked using control codes. For the sake of completeness three instructions which HL Series printers ignore are included.

Null

NUL (0) <0h>

- **NUL** (ASCII 0) is ignored.

Bell

BEL (07) <07h>

- **BEL** (ASCII 7) is ignored.

Escape

ESC (27) <1Bh>

- The **ESC** control code (ASCII 27) marks the start of an escape sequence.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27);
```

Space

SP (32) <20h>

- The **SP** control code (ASCII 32) moves the current print position one space to the right.

```
LPRINT CHR$(32);
```

Backspace

BS (08) <08h>

- The **BS** control code (ASCII 8) moves the current print position one space to the left.

```
LPRINT CHR$(8);
```

Line feed

LF (10) <0Ah>

- The **LF** control code (ASCII 10) moves the current print position down one line.

```
LPRINT CHR$(10);
```

Form feed

FF (12) <0Ch>

- The **FF** control code (ASCII 12) ejects the current page (unless it is blank) and moves the current print position to the top of the next page.

- If the current page is blank this control code has no effect.

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);
```

Carriage return

CR (13) <0Dh>

- The **CR** control code (ASCII 13) moves the current print position to the left margin on the current line.
- If automatic line feed is ON, this code moves the current print position to the left margin on the next line.

```
LPRINT CHR$(13);
```

Automatic line feed

Esc5n (27)(53)n <1Bh><35h>n

- When automatic line feed is ON, a line feed is automatically performed every time a carriage return is sent to the printer.
- To turn the automatic line feed function ON, set *n* to 1.
- To turn the automatic line feed function OFF, set *n* to 0.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(53); CHR$(1); 'Turn auto line feed on
```

Enable printer

DC1 (17) (11h>

- The **DC1** control code (ASCII 17) enables the printer to accept data for printing again after a disable printer instruction.

```
LPRINT CHR$(17);
```

Disable printer

EscQ22 (27)(81)(50)(50) <1Bh><51h><32h><32h>

or

EscQ3 (27)(81)(51) <1Bh><51h><32h>

- These two commands stop the printer from accepting any data for printing or any control codes until it has received a **DC1** code (enable printer).
- The **DC3** code (ASCII 19) is not recognized by the printer.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(81); CHR$(22); 'Disable printer
```

Change emulation mode

EscCR<mode> (27)(13)mode <1Bh><0Dh>mode

- This command changes the printer emulation mode or performs a reset.
- *mode* can be ‘E’ (Epson), ‘P’ or ‘D’ (Diablo), ‘H’ (Laserjet 4), ‘I’ (IBM Proprinter XL), 'AB' (BR-Script Batch), 'AI' (BR-Script Interactive), 'GL' (HP-GL) or ‘FD’ (factory default).
- On receiving this command the printer prints any remaining data and performs a page eject (unless the current page is blank). The new emulation mode default settings come into effect, except when the *mode* is set to ‘FD’.
- If you set the *mode* to ‘FD’ to reset the printer to its factory default settings, Laserjet 4 mode (the factory default emulation mode) is selected and the Laserjet 4 factory default environment is restored. For a list of the factory default settings see the sub-section “Factory default environment” in the Chapter 2 "PCL" of this manual.
- Selecting IBM Proprinter XL emulation with *mode* = ‘I’ causes the printer to be reset.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(13); CHR$(69); 'Change to Epson emulation
```

User Reset

EscCR!#R (27)(13)(33)#(82) <1Bh><0Dh><21h>#<52h>

- # = 0, restores to the current user setting.
- # = 1, restores to User settings 1.
- # = 2, restores to User settings 2.

Paper Input Control

EscEMn (27)(25)n <1Bh><19h>n

- *n* = 0, paper is fed from manual paper feeder.
- *n* = 1, paper is fed from the standard paper cassette.
- *n* = 2, paper is fed from the optional lower paper cassette.
- *n* = 3, printer ejects the sheet of paper.

4.2 Page format

Set page length

EscCn (27)(67)n <1Bh><43h>n

- This command sets the page length in lines.

or

EscCNULn (27)(67)(0)n <1Bh><43h><00h>n

- This command sets the page length in inches.
- *n* is the number of lines that make up one page, or the length of the page in inches, according to the form of the command.
- If the first form of the command is used (*n* = the number of lines in the page) the current line spacing setting is used to determine the length of the page.
- If the first form of the command is used, *n* must be in the range 1 to 255.
- If the second form of the command is used (*n* = page length in inches), *n* must be in the range 1 to 14.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(81); CHR$(22); 'Disable printer
```

Set left and right margins

EscXmn (27)(88)mn <1Bh><88h>mn

- This command sets the left and right margins.
- *m* = the number of character positions at the current pitch (characters per inch) between the left edge of the page and the left margin.
- *n* = the number of character positions at the current pitch between the left edge of the page and the right margin.
- If you set *m* = 0 the current left margin setting is retained.
- If you set *n* = 0 the current right margin setting is retained.

```
LPRINT CHR$(18); 'Set pitch to 10 CPI
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(88); CHR$(10); CHR$(70); 'Set margins to 1"
and 7"
```

Set perforation skip

EscNn (27)(78)n <1Bh><4Eh>n

- This command sets the bottom margin and enables perforation skip, that is, whenever the print position reaches the bottom margin the printer performs a page eject and moves the print position to the top of the next page.
- *n* = the number of lines at the current line space setting between the bottom edge of the page and the bottom margin.
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 255.
- **Esc C** (set page length) and **Esc O**(Cancel perforation skip) cancel automatic perforation skip.
- If the bottom margin is set to be above the top margin, the top margin is discarded and one line is enabled for printing.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(78); CHR$(4); 'Set bottom margin to 4 lines.
```

Cancel perforation skip

EscO (27)(79) <1Bh><4Fh>

- This command cancels the automatic perforation skip feature.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(79); 'Cancel perforation skip.
```

Line spacing and tabs

Set 1/8" line spacing

Esc0 (27)(48) <1Bh><30h>

- This command sets the line spacing to 1/8". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position 1/8" down the page.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(48); 'Set line spacing to 1/8".
```

Set 7/72" line spacing

Esc1 (27)(48) <1Bh><31h>

- This command sets the line spacing to 7/72". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position 7/72" down the page.
- Since the printer's resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing will not be exactly 7/72".

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(49); 'Set line spacing to 7/72".
```

Save n/72" line spacing

EscAn (27)(65)n <1Bh><41h>n

- This command allows you to select a line spacing of *n*/72". Your selection does not take effect until you activate it with the **Esc 2** command.
- Since the printer's resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing may not be exactly *n*/72".
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 85.
- If n is outside the range 1 to 85 the default line spacing, 1/6" is selected.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(65); CHR$(10); 'Select line spacing of
10/72".
```

Activate n/72" line spacing

Esc2 (27)(50) <1Bh><32h>

- This command allows you to activate the line spacing setting you specified with the **Esc A** command.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(50); 'Activate selected line spacing of
n/72".
```

Set n/216" line spacing

Esc3n (27)(51)n <1Bh><33h>n

- This command sets the line spacing to *n*/216". All subsequent line feed operations will move the print position *n*/216" down the page.
- Since the printer's resolution is 600 dots per inch the line spacing may not be exactly *n*/216".
- *n* must be in the range 1 to 255.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(51); CHR$(25); 'Select line spacing of
25/216".
```

Execute n/216" line spacing

EscJn (27)(74)n <1Bh><4Ah>n

- This command moves the print position one line down the page using a line spacing of *n*/216".
- The existing line space setting is not affected.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(50); CHR$(30); 'Move print position down
30/216".
```

Set horizontal tabs

EscD<n1><n2><n3>...NUL (27)(68)n1n2n3...(00)
<1Bh><44h>n1n2n3...<00h>

- This command enables you to set up to 28 horizontal tab stops using the current character pitch.
- The tab stops should be set in ascending order.
- **Esc D 0** clears all horizontal tab settings.
- **Esc R** restores the default settings, which are at every eighth column, starting at the ninth column.
- You can move the print position to the tab stops using the **HT** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(68); CHR$(10); CHR$(20); CHR$(0); 'Set tab
stops at columns 10 and 20.
```

Set vertical tabs

EscB<n1><n2><n3> ...NUL (27)(66)n1n2n3...(00)
<1Bh><42h>n1n2n3...<00h>

- This command enables you to set up to 64 vertical tab stops using the line feed pitch.
- The tab stops should be set in ascending order.
- **Esc B 0** and **Esc R** both clear all vertical tab settings.
- You can move the print position to the tab stops using the **VT** control code.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(66); CHR$(12); CHR$(24); CHR$(0); 'Set tab
stops at lines 12 and 24.
```

Horizontal tab

HT (09) <09h>

- The **HT** control code (ASCII 9) moves the current print position one tab stop to the right.
- The command is ignored if there are no tab stops to the right of the current print position or if the next tab stop is beyond the right margin.

```
LPRINT CHR$(9);
```

Vertical tab

VT (11) <0Bh>

- The **VT** control code (ASCII 11) moves the current print position one vertical tab stop down the page.
- If there are no tab stops below the current print position a line feed is performed.
- If no tab stops have been set a line feed is performed.

LPRINT CHR$(9);

Restore default tab settings

EscR (27)(82) <1Bh><52h>

- This command restores the default horizontal tab settings which are at every eight columns, starting at the ninth column. There are no default vertical tab settings.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27);  CHR$(82); 'Restore default tab stops.
```

4.3 Using characters

Select character set I

Esc7 (27)(55) <1Bh><37h>

- This command selects IBM Character set I for use in subsequent printing operations.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(55); 'Select character set I
```

Select character set II

Esc6 (27)(56) <1Bh><36h>

- This command selects IBM character set II for use in subsequent printing operations.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(54); 'Select character set II
```

Set pitch to 10 cpi

DC2 (18) <12h>

- This command sets the printing pitch to 10 characters per inch (cpi).
- If condensed character mode has previously been set, it is cancelled.

```
LPRINT CHR$(18); 'set pitch to 10 CPI
```

Set pitch to 12 cpi

Esc: (27)(58) <1Bh><3Ah>

- This command sets the printing pitch to 12 characters per inch (cpi).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(58); 'set pitch to 12 CPI
```

Proportional spacing

EscP*n* (27)(80)n <1Bh><50h>n

- This command allows you to turn proportional spacing on or off.
- Setting *n* to 1 turns proportional spacing on. Subsequent text is printed proportionally spaced.
- Setting *n* to 0 turns proportional spacing off. Subsequent text is printed monospaced.
- If you change the character pitch using **DC2**, **S**I or **Esc :**, proportional spacing is automatically turned off.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(80); CHR$(1); 'Turn proportional spacing on
```

Set condensed character mode

SI (15) <0Fh>

- This command selects condensed character mode. Subsequent text characters are condensed horizontally when printed.
- The **DC2** code, used to select a character pitch of 10 cpi, cancels condensed character mode.

```
LPRINT CHR$(15); 'Set condensed character mode
```

Set emphasized character mode

EscE (27)(69) <1Bh><45h>

- This command turns emphasized character mode on. Subsequent text is printed with a bold stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(69); 'Turn emphasized character mode on
```

Cancel emphasized character mode

EscF (27)(70) <1Bh><46h>

- This command turns emphasized character mode off. Subsequent text is printed with medium stroke width.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)l CHR$(70); 'Turn emphasized character mode off
```

Set enlarged character mode for a single line

SO (14) <0Eh>

- This command turns enlarged character mode on for one line only. The subsequent line of text is printed using double-width characters and with the line space setting doubled.
- The following commands cancel enlarged character mode set using the **SO** control code: **CR**, **CAN**, **LF**, **FF**, **VT**, **Esc W 0**, **DC4** and **Esc [@**.

```
LPRINT CHR$(14); 'Set enlarged character mode for one line
```

Cancel enlarged character mode

DC4 (20) <14h>

- This control code cancels the single-line enlarged character mode set with the **SO** control code. Subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters. The previous line spacing setting is restored.
- The previous character pitch is restored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(20); 'Cancel enlarged character mode set with SO
```

Cancel

CAN (24) <18h>

- This control code cancels single-line enlarged character mode set with the **SO** control code. Subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters and the previous line spacing setting is restored.

```
LPRINT CHR$(24); 'Cancel enlarged character mode set with SO
```

Enlarged character mode

EscWn (27)(87)n <1Bh><57h>n

- This command turns enlarged character mode on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is printed using double-width characters. The line spacing setting is doubled.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is printed using normal sized characters. The previous line spacing and character pitch settings are restored.
- Only **Esc W 0** can be used to cancel enlarged character mode set using the **Esc W 1** instruction.
- **Esc W 0** cancels enlarged character mode set using the **Esc W 1** instruction, the **SO** control code or the **Esc [@** instruction.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(87); CHR$(1); 'Set enlarged character mode
```

Set superscript or subscript character mode

EscSn (27)(83)n <1Bh><53h>n

- This command allows you to print superscripts or subscripts.
- Set *n* to 0 to print subsequent text using superscript characters.
- Set *n* to 1 to print subsequent text using subscript characters.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(83); CHR$(1); 'Turn on subscript mode
```

Cancel superscript or subscript character mode

EscT (27)(84) <1Bh><54h>

- This command stops superscript or subscript printing if either had been enabled.
- Subsequent text is printed using normal characters.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(84); 'Turn off superscript/subscript mode
```

Underline mode

Esc-n (27)(126)n <1Bh><7Eh>n

- This command turns character underlining on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is underlined.
- Horizontal tab spaces are not underlined irrespective of whether underlining mode is on or off.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is not underlined.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(45); CHR$(1); 'Underline following text
```

Continuous overline mode

Esc_n (27)(95))n <1Bh><5Fh>n

- This command turns character overline printing on or off.
- If *n* is set to 1 subsequent text is printed with a continuous line above it.
- Horizontal tab spaces are not printed overlined irrespective of whether overline printing mode is on or off.
- If *n* is set to 0 subsequent text is not printed with an overline.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(95); CHR$(1); 'Print following text with an
overline
```

Select double-height / double-width mode

Esc[@n1n2n3n4n5n6 (27)(91)(64)n1n2n3n4n5n6
<1Bh><5Bh><40h>n1n2n3n4n5n6

- This command enables you to select single or double line spacing and single or double character height and width.
- n_1 should be set to 4 and n_2,n_3 and n_4 to 0.
- To set double line spacing and select double-height characters set n_5 to 34.
- To set double line spacing and select normal height characters set to n_5 to 33.
- To set single line spacing and select double-height characters set to n_5 to 18.
- To set single line spacing and select normal height characters set n_5 to 17.
- To select double-width characters set n_6 to 2.
- To select single-width characters set n_6 to 1.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(91); CHR$(64); CHR$(4); CHR$(0); CHR$(0);
CHR$(0); CHR$(34); CHR$(1); 'Set double line spacing and print
double-height, double-width characters.
```

Select character from the All character Code table

Esc\n1n2<Character data> (27)(92)n1n2<Character data>
<1Bh><5Ch>n1n2<Character data>

- This command enables you to print characters from the All Character Code table.
- n_1 and n_2 specify the number of characters to be printed.
- The number of characters printed is $256*n_2+n_1$.
- Control codes included in the character data are not executed.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(92); CHR$(64); CHR$(1); CHR$(65); CHR$(66);
CHR$(67); CHR$(68); CHR$(69); 'Print 320 characters starting
ABCDE...
```

Select a character from the All Character Code table

Esc^<char-code> (27)(94)<Char-code> <1Bh><5Eh><Char-code>

- This command enables you to print a single character from the All Character Code table.
- A control code is not executed if the code is sent immediately following this instruction.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(94); CHR$(36); 'Printed a dollar sign
```

Select character font

EscIn (27)(73)n <1Bh><49h>n

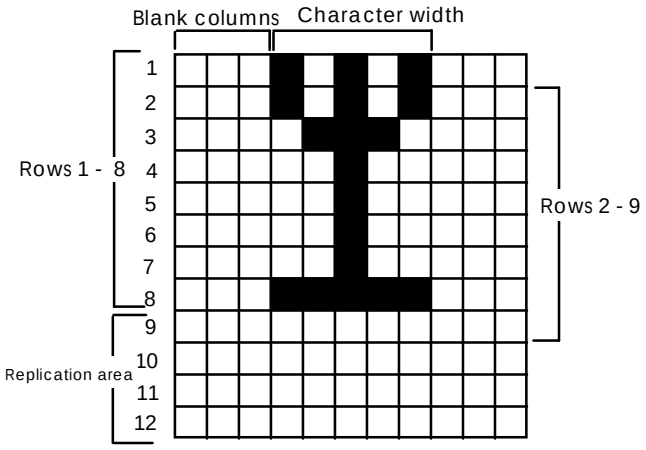
- This command enables you to select a font and choose the print quality.
- If *n* is set to 0 the printer's standard font and draft quality are selected.
- If *n* is set to 2 the printer's standard font and letter quality are selected.
- If *n* is set to 4 the download font (the characters you sent to the printer using the **Esc =** command) and draft quality are selected.
- If *n* is set to 6 the download font (the characters you sent to the printer using the **Esc =** command) and letter quality are selected.

```
LPRINT CHR$(27); CHR$(73); CHR$(2); 'Selected letter quality
printer font
```

Define characters

Esc=n1n220n3(n4n5<character definition data>...)
(27)(61)n1n220n3(... <1Bh><3Dh>n1n220n3(...

- This command enables you to define and download characters for printing.
- Monospaced characters are designed on a grid eleven dots wide by twelve dots high. The width of proportionally spaced characters is specified in n_5.



- n_1 and n_2 define the number of characters to be defined as follows: number of characters = ((n_1+(n_2*256)-2)/13.
- n_3 is the character code of the first character in the sequence to be defined. It is assumed that you are defining a sequence of characters whose code numbers increment by one for each character to be defined.
- If bits 1 and 2 of n_4 are 0 and bit 8 is set to 1, the bytes that make up the character definition define the top eight rows of the grid, the most significant bit representing the top dot, and the least significant bit representing the eighth dot down. Simply set a bit to 1 to print a dot in that position on the grid, or to 0 to print white space.

- If bits 1 and 2 of n_4 are 00 and bit 8 is set to 0 the bytes that make up the character definition define rows 2 to 9 of the grid, the most significant bit representing the second dot, and the least significant bit representing the ninth dot down. Simply set a bit to 1 to print a dot in that position on the grid, or to 0 to print white space.

- If bits 1 and 2 of n_4 are 01 the least significant bit of each data byte is replicated in rows 9 to 12 of the grid.

- If bits 1 and 2 of n_4 are 10 the bits 1 to 4 of each data byte are replicated in rows 9 to 12 of the grid.

- Bits 5 to 7 of n_5 specify the number of columns left blank to the left of the defined character in proportional spacing mode. Up to seven columns can be skipped.

- Bits 1 to 4 of n_5 specify the width in columns of the defined character in proportional spacing mode. Up to fifteen columns can be used to define the character.

- Downloaded characters are selected using the **Esc I** command and then printed by sending the appropriate character codes.

4.4 Graphics

Set single-density image mode

Esc K n_1 n_2 <*image data*> (27)(75)n1n2<image data>
<1Bh><4Bh>n1n2<image data>

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.

- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.

- The image consists of $256*n_2+n_1$ bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".

- Images are printed left to right.

- Images are printed at a horizontal resolution of 60 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.

- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
20 LPRINT "*** ESC K n1 n2 ***";CHR$(10);
30 FOR i=1 TO 5
40 '* STANDARD DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"K";CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT CHR$(10);
130 NEXT I:END

< Sample 15 >
```

Set double-density image mode

EscLn_1n_2<*image data*> (27)(76)n1n2<image data>
<1Bh><4Ch>n1n2<image data>

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of $256*n_1+n_2$ bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Images are printed left to right.
- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 120 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
20 LPRINT "***ESC L n1 n2 ***"CHR$(10);
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 '*DOUBLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"L";CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT CHR$(10);
130 NEXT I:END

< Sample 16 >
```

Set double-speed, double-density image mode

EscYn_1n_2<*image data*> (27)(89)n1n2<image data>
<1Bh><59h>n1n2<image data>

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.
- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.
- The image consists of $256*n_2+n_1$ bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".
- Images are printed left to right.
- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 120 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.
- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.

- This printer always prints as fast as possible, hence this command is the exact equivalent of the Esc L command.

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
20 LPRINT "*** ESC Y n1 n2 ***", CHR$(10);
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 '*DOUBLE-SPEED & DOUBLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"Y";CHR$(160);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR k=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT CHR$(10);
130 NEXT I:END

< Sample 17 >
```

Set quadruple-density image mode

Esc Z $n_1 n_2$ <*image data*> (27)(90)n1n2<image data>
<1Bh><5Ah>n1n2<image data>

- This command enables you to define and print a single line raster bit image on a single text line.

- n_1 and n_2 define the number of bytes that comprise the image.

- The image consists of $256*n_1+n_2$ bytes of data, each byte representing a single vertical column of 4/30".

- Images are printed left to right.

- Images are printed at an approximate horizontal resolution of 240 dots per inch and at an approximate vertical resolution of 72 dots per inch.

- Each byte represents a vertical column of eight dots, the most significant bit representing the dot at the top. Simply set a bit to 1 if you want a dot to appear in that position, and to 0 if you want white space to appear.

```
10 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
20 LPRINT "*** ESC Z n1 n2 ***";CHR$(10);
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
40 '* QUADRUPLE-DENSITY BIT IMAGE MODE *
50 LPRINT CHR$(27);"Z";CRH$(16);CHR$(0);
60 FOR J=1 TO 8
70 FOR K=1 TO 20
80 N=2^J-1
90 LPRINT CHR$(N);
100 NEXT K
110 NEXT J
120 LPRINT CHR$(10);
130 NEXT I:END

< Sample 18 >
```

INDEX

A

automatic line feed, 7

B

Backspace, 6
Bell, 5

C

Cancel, 15
Carriage return, 7
Character set, 4, 13
characters, 18
condensed character, 14
Control codes, 4

D

double-density image, 20
double-height / double-width, 17

E

emphasized character, 14
emulation, 8
enlarged character, 15
Escape, 6
Escape sequences, 5

F

feeder, 8
Form feed, 6

G

Graphics, 19

H

horizontal tabs, 12

I

Ignored commands, 4

L

left margin, 9
Line feed, 6
line spacing, 10

O

overline, 16

P

page length, 9
Paper Input Control, 8
perforation skip, 10
pitch, 13
print quality, 18
Proportional spacing, 14
Proprinter XL, 4

R

Resolution, 4
right margin, 9

S

single-density image, 19
Space, 6
subscript, 16
superscript, 16
Syntax, 5

T

tab settings, 13

U

Underline, 16
User Reset, 8

V

vertical tabs, 12

Chapter 7
Bar Code Control

Bar Code Control

The printer can print bar codes in the HP LaserJet 4, Diablo, EPSON FX-850, and IBM Proprinter XL emulation modes.

PRINT BAR CODES OR EXPANDED CHARACTERS

ESC i n ... n \ (27)(105)n ... n (92) <1Bh><69h>n ... n <5Ch>

Creates bar codes or expanded characters according to the segment of parameters "n··· n". For further information about the parameters, see the following "Definition of Parameters." This command must end with the " \ " code (5CH).

DEFINITION OF PARAMETERS

This bar code command can have the following parameters in the parameter segment(n ... n). Parameters are effective only within the single command sequence using the syntax **ESC i n ... n** \. They do not take effect in any subsequent bar code commands. If any parameters are not specified, they take the default settings. The last parameter must be the bar code data start identifier ("b" or "B") or the expanded character data start identifier ("l" or "L"). Other parameters can be specified in any sequence. The prefix of each parameter can be either a lower-case or upper-case character, - for example, "t0" or "T0", "s3" or "S3", etc.

(1) Bar Code Mode

n = "t0" or "T0"	CODE 39 (default)
n = "t1" or "T1"	Interleaved 2 of 5
n = "t3" or "T3"	FIM (US-Post Net)
n = "t4" or "T4"	Post Net (US-Post Net)
n = "t5" or "T5"	EAN 8, EAN 13, or UPC A
n = "t6" or "T6"	UPC E
n = "t9" or "T9"	Codabar
n = "t12" or "T12"	Code 128 set A
n = "t13" or "T13"	Code 128 set B
n = "t14" or "T14"	Code 128 set C
n = "t130" or "T130"	ISBN (EAN)
n = "t131" or "T131"	ISBN (UPC-E)
n = "t132" or "T132"	EAN 128 set A
n = "t133" or "T133"	EAN 128 set B
n = "t134" or "T134"	EAN 128 set C

This parameter selects the bar code mode as above. When n is "t5" or "T5", the bar code mode (EAN 8, EAN 13, or UPC A) varies according to the number of characters in the data.

(2) Bar Code Style, Expanded Character shading, Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing Shading

• Bar Code Style

n = “s0” or “S0” 3 : 1 (default)
n = “s1” or “S1” 2 : 1
n = “s3” or “S3” 2.5 : 1

This parameter selects the bar code style as above. When the EAN 8, EAN 13, or UPC-A bar code mode is selected, this bar code style parameter is ignored.

• Expanded Character shading

“S” 0 = White
1 = Black
2 = Vertical stripes
3 = Horizontal stripes
4 = Cross hatch

eg. “S” n1 n2
n1 = Background fill pattern
n2 = Foreground fill pattern

If “S” is followed by only one parameter, the parameter is a foreground fill pattern.

• Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing Shading

“S” 1 = Black
2 = Vertical stripes
3 = Horizontal stripes
4 = Cross hatch

(3) Bar Code Scaling (Width only)

n = “mnnn” or “Mnnn” (nnn = 0 ~ 32767)

This parameter specifies the bar code scaling of barcord width. The unit of "nnn" is %. The default value is m100 (100%).

(4) Bar Code Human Readable Line On or Off

n = “r0” or “R0” Human readable line OFF
n = “r1” or “R1” Human readable line ON

Default: Human readable line ON, when the following barcode types are selected.
(1) “T5” or “t5”
(2) “T6” or “t6”
(3) “T130” or “t130”
(4) “T131” or “t131”

Default: Human readable line OFF
All others

This parameter specifies whether or not the printer prints the human readable line below the bar code. Human readable characters are always printed with OCR-B font of 10 pitch, and

all the current character style enhancements are masked. Note that the default setting is subject to the bar code mode selected by “t” or “T”.

(5) Quiet Zone

n = “onnn” or “Onnn” (nnn = 0 ~ 32767)

Quiet Zone is the space on both side of the bar codes. Its width can be specified using the units which are set by the "u" or "U" parameter. (For the description of "u" or "U" parameter, see the next part.) The default setting of Quiet Zone width is 1 inch.

(6) Bar Code, Expanded Character Unit, Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing Units

n = “u0” or “U0”	Millimeters (default)
n = “u1” or “U1”	1/10”
n = “u2” or “U2”	1/100”
n = “u3” or “U3”	1/12”
n = “u4” or “U4”	1/120”
n = “u5” or “U5”	1/10 Millimeters
n = “u6” or “U6”	1/300”
n = “u7” or “U7”	1/720”

This parameter specifies the measurement units of X-axis offset, Y-axis offset, and bar code height.

(7) Bar Code, Expanded Character, Line, Block Drawing & Box Drawing Offset in X-axis

n = “xnnn” or “Xnnn”

This parameter specifies the offset from the current print position in the “u”- or “U”-specified unit.

(8) Bar Code & Expanded Character Offset in Y-axis

n = “ynnn” or “Ynnn”

This parameter specifies the downward offset from the current print position in the “u”- or “U”-specified unit.

(9) Bar Code, Expanded Character, Line, Block Drawing & Box Drawing Height

n = “hnnn”, “Hnnn”, “dnnn”, or “Dnnn”

Default heights

(1) EAN13, EAN8, UPC-A, ISBN (EAN13, EAN8, UPC-A), ISBN (UPC-E):	22 mm
(2) UPC-E:	18 mm
(3) Others:	12 mm

Expanded characters	→	2.2 mm (default)
Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing	→	1 dot

This parameter specifies the height of bar codes or expanded characters as above. It can take the prefix “h”, “H”, “d”, or “D”. The height is specified in the “u”- or “U”-specified unit. Note that the default setting of the bar code height (12 mm, 18 mm or 22 mm) is subject to the bar code mode selected by “t” or “T”.

(10) Expanded Character, Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing Width

n = “wnnn” or “Wnnn”

Default widths

Expanded character	→	1.2 mm
Line Block Drawing & Box Drawing	→	1 dot

This parameter specifies the width of expanded characters in the selected units as above.

(11) Expanded Character Rotation

n = “a0” or “A0”	Upright (default)
n = “a1” or “A1”	Rotated 90 degrees clockwise
n = “a2” or “A2”	Upside down, rotated 180 degrees clockwise
n = “a3” or “A3”	Rotated 270 degrees clockwise

(12) Bar Code Data Start

n = “b” or “B”

- Data that follows “b” or “B” is read in as bar code data. Bar code data must end with the “ \ ” code (5CH), which also terminates this command. The acceptable bar code data is subject to the bar code mode selected by “t” or “T” as listed below.

- When the CODE 39 is selected with the parameter “t0” or “T0”:

  Forty three characters “0” to “9”, “A” to “Z”, “–”, “ . ”, “ (space)”, “$”, “ / ”, “+”, and “%” can be accepted as bar code data. Other characters cause data error. The number of characters for bar codes is not limited. The bar code data automatically starts and ends with an asterisk “ * ” (start character and stop character). If the received data has an asterisk “ * ” at its beginning or end, the asterisk is regarded as a start character or stop character. When you put "?" on the end of the data, a check digit is automatically added.

- When the Interleaved 2 of 5 is selected with the parameter “t1” or “T1”:

  Ten numerical characters “0” to “9” can be accepted as bar code data. Other characters cause data error. The number of characters for bar codes is not limited. Since this mode of bar codes require even characters, if the bar code data has odd characters, the zero character “0” is automatically added to the end of the bar code data. When you put "?" on the end of the data, a check digit is automatically added.

- When the FIM (US-Post Net) is selected with the parameter “t3” or “T3”:

  Characters “A” to “D” are valid and 1 digit of data can be printed. Uppercase and lowercase alphabet characters can be accepted.

- When the Post Net (US-Post Net) is selected with the parameter “t4” or “T4”:

Characters “0” to “9” can be data and it must be terminated by a check digit. “?” can be used in place of a check digit.

- When the EAN 8, EAN 13, or UPC A is selected with the parameter “t5” or “T5”:

  Ten numerical characters “0” to “9” can be accepted as bar code data. The number of characters for bar codes is limited as follows.

  EAN 8: Total 8 digits (7 digits + 1 check digit)
  EAN 13: Total 13 digits (12 digits + 1 check digit)
  UPC A: Total 12 digits (11 digits + 1 check digit)

  Any number of characters other than above causes a data error and the bar code data is printed as normal print data. If the check digit is incorrect, the printer calculates it and replaces it with the correct check digit so that the correct bar code data will be printed. When the EAN13 is selected, adding “+” and a 2-or 5-digit number after the data will create the add-on code.

- When UPC-E is selected with the parameter “t6” or “T6”:

  The numerical characters “0” to “9” can be accepted as bar code data.

  8 digits Standard format. The first character must be “0” and the data must be terminated by a check digit.

  Total 8 digits = "0" + 6 digits + 1 check digit

  6 digits The first character "0" and the last check digit are removed from the 8 digit data.

  *1: For 8 digits, “?” can be used in place of a check digit.
  *2: Adding “+” and 2- or 5-digit number after the data creates an add-on code for all 6 and 8 digit formats.

- When Codabar is selected with the parameter “t9” or “T9”:

  Characters “0” to “9”, “–”, “ . ”, “$”, “/”, “+”, “ : ” can be printed. Characters “A” to “D” can be printed as a start-stop code, which can be uppercase or lowercase. If there is no start-stop code, an error will occur. The check digit cannot be added and “?” causes an error.

- When Code 128 Set A, Set B, or Set C is selected with the parameter “t12” or “12,” “t13” or “T13,” or “t14” or “T14” respectively:

  Code sets A, B and C are individually selectable. Set A encodes characters in the range Hex 00 to 5F. Set B encodes characters in the range Hex 20 to 7F. Set C encodes numeric pairs in the range 00 to 99.

  - Switching is allowed between the code sets by sending %A, %B, or %C.
  - FNC 1, 2, 3, and 4 are produced with %1, %2, %3, and %4.
  - The SHIFT code, %S, allows temporary switching (for 1 character only) between set A and set B and vice versa.
  - To print the “%” character, it must be sent twice.

- When ISBN (EAN) is selected with the parameter “t130” or “T130”:

  The rules are the same as for “t5” or “T5”

- When the ISBN (UPC-E) is selected with the parameter “t131” or “T131”:

  The rules are the same as for “t6” or “T6”

- When EAN 128 set A, set B or set C is selected with the parameter "t132" or "T132," "t133" or "T133" or "t134" or "T134" respectively:

  Same relues apply as for "t12" or "T12," "t13" or "T13", or "t14" or "T14."

(13) Box Drawing

ESC i ... E (or e)

“E” or “e” is a terminator.

(14) Line Block Drawing

ESC i ... V (or v)

“V” or “v” is a terminator.

(15) Expanded Character Data Start

n = “l” or “L”

Data that follows “l” or “L” is read in as expanded character data (or labeling data). Expanded character data must end with the “ \ ” code (5CH), which also terminates this command. To print the '\' character, you must input '\\'.

EXAMPLE PROGRAM LISTINGS

```
10 ' Barcode
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 ' CODE 39
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it0r1s0x00y00b123456\";
50 'INTER LEAVED
60 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it1r1s0x70y00b123456\";
70 ' EAN-13
80 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x00y020b123456789012?\";
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x70y020b123456789012?+12345\";
100 ' UPC-A
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x00y050b12345678901?\";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x70y050b12345678901?+12345\";
130 ' EAN-8
140 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x00y080b1234567?\";
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it5r1s0x00y080b1234567?+12345\";
160 ' UPC-E
170 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it6r1s0x00y110b007834000091\";
180 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it6r1s0x70y110b007834000091+12344\";
190 ' CODABAR
195 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it9r1s0x00y140bA123456A\";
210 ' POST NET
220 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it4r1x95y140b1234567?\";
230 ' FIM
240 LPRINT CHR$(27); "iT3R1x70Y140BA\";
250 ' ISBN
260 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it130r1s0x00y170b123456789012?+12345\";
270 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it130r1s0x70y170b12345678901?+12345\";
```

```
280 LPRINT CHR$(27); "it130r1s0x00y200b1234567?+12345\";
300 ' LABEL PRINT
310 LPRINT CHR$(27); "ih10w10x25y2301Sample\";
320 LPRINT CHR$(27); "ix90y230s4h10w10f2g2e";
330 LPRINT CHR$(27); "ix105y230s4h10w10v";
400 LPRINT CHR$(&HC);
```

< Sample 19 >

CHAPTER 8
HP-GL/2 Graphics Language

Table of Contents

Initialization and default setting instructions

Instruction	Function	page
DF	Default Set Instruction	8
IN	Initialize Set Instruction	9

Plot area and unit setting instructions

Instruction	Function	page
IP	Input scaling point	10
IR	Input relative scaling points	11
SC	Scale	11
IW	Input window	14
RO	Rotate coordinate system	15

Pen Control and Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
PU	Pen Up	16
PD	Pen Down	16
PA	Plot Absolute	17
PR	Relative Coordinate Pen Move	17
AA	Draw Absolute Arc	18
AR	Draw Relative Arc	19
AT	Absolute Three Point Arc	20
RT	Relative Three Point Arc	21
PE	Polyline Encoded	22
CI	Circle Plot	23
BR	Bezier Relative	24
BZ	Bezier Absolute	24

The polygon group

Instruction	Function	page
PM	Polygon Mode	25
EA	Edge Rectangle Absolute	26
ER	Edge Rectangle Relative	26
EP	Edge Polygon	27
EW	Edge Wedge	27
RA	Fill Absolute Rectangle	28
RR	Fill Relative Rectangle	29
WG	Wedge Plot and Fill	30
FP	Fill Polygon	31

Plot Function Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
AC	Anchor Corner	32
FT	Fill Type	33
LA	Line Attribute	34
LT	Line Type Selection	35
PW	Pen Width	37
RF	Raster Fill Definition	38
SM	Symbol Mode	39
SP	Select Pen	39
SV	Screened Vectors	40
TR	Transparency Mode	41
UL	User-defined Line Type	42
WU	Select Unit for Pen Width	43

Character Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
SD	Define Standard Font	44
AD	Define Alternate Font	47
SS	Select Character Set	47
SA	Select Alternate Set	48
FI	Select Primary Font	48
FN	Select Secondary Font	49
LB	Define Label	49
DT	Define Label Terminator	50
LO	Label Origin	51
DI	Absolute Direction	52
DR	Relative Direction	53
DV	Define Variable Text Path	54
CP	Character Plot	55
CF	Character Fill Mode	56
SI	Set Absolute Character Size	57
SR	Set Relative Character Size	58
SL	Character Slant	59
SB	Scalable or Bitmap Fonts	59
ES	Extra Space	60
TD	Transparent Data	60

1. Introduction

This HL-10h/1260/660 printer can be used in HP-GL/2 graphics mode to produce vector graphics output using the commands of the HP-GL/2 graphics language or to print out existing HP-GL/2 format images. HP-GL/2 is a part of the PCL emulation, which includes graphics command.

The Default plotting measurement unit in the HP-GL/2 graphics mode is 1/1016" (0.025 mm).

2. Terminology

Picture Frame

The printer frame is the rectangular area of the page on which graphic output can be printed. This is based on the logical page defined for the selected paper size.

Anchor point

The anchor point of the picture frame is the top left hand corner of the frame. This can be moved on the page using PCL language page control commands.

Graphics window

The graphics window is the rectangular area of the page on which you can generate graphic output using HP-GL/2 commands. Initially the graphics window is the same as the picture frame but may be altered using the HP-GL/2 IW command.

Hard clip limits

Hard clip limits are the physical restrictions which define where printed output can appear on a page.

Soft clip limits

Soft clip limits are the user-defined restrictions which define where printed output can appear on a page.

Graphics units

The initial coordinate system employs units of 1/1016" in both the x- and y-axes.

User units

The HP-GL/2 graphics language uses a coordinate system. You can impose your own x- and y-scale units on this system using the SC command.

Current units

The units in use at a given time are called the current units. Current units are either user units or graphics units, depending on whether scaling has been turned on or not. The SC command is used to turn scaling on, that is, to make user units the current units.

Pens

By convention, certain HP-GL/2 graphics language commands are thought of as using a pen, which can be either up or down. To produce plotted output the pen must be down. To move to a location on the page without producing output the pen must be in the up position. Some HP-GL/2 commands require you to specify the pen position before you use them: others have implied pen positions built into them, so that you do not need to specify "Pen up" or "Pen down".

Absolute and relative plotting

Drawing commands are of two distinct types: absolute commands, in which the coordinates specified are the absolute user or graphics coordinates, and relative commands, whose coordinates are relative to the coordinate position at which the previous graphics command terminated.

Fills

You can fill in the shapes you have drawn with the plotting commands by using the fill commands. A number of different shading options are available.

3. Command syntax

An HP-GL and HP-GL/2 command can consist of up to four items: a mnemonic, a parameter field, a separator and a terminator.

Mnemonic

The two-letter mnemonic is the name of the command and should help remind you of its function.

Parameters

Some commands have parameters following the instruction mnemonic. Multiple parameters must have separators between them. Parameters are shown in italics. Optional parameters are surrounded by square brackets. Parameters that can be repeated are followed by "...".

- Integer - integers between -2^{30} and $2^{30} - 1$. Real numbers specified for a parameter that should be an integer are rounded to the nearest integer.

- Clamped integer - integers between -32768 and 32767. Parameters outside this range are converted (clamped) to the nearest integer within the range, for example 40,000 will be clamped to 32767. Non-integers are converted to the nearest integer.

- Real number - real numbers whose integer part is in the range -2^{30} to $2^{30} - 1$. Accuracy to at least 6 significant digits is guaranteed. If a number outside the range is specified the entire command is ignored. The decimal point can be omitted when the number has no fractional part.

- Clamped real number - real numbers whose integer part is in the range -32768 to 32767. Parameters outside this range are converted (clamped) to the nearest real number within the range. The decimal point can be omitted when the number has no fractional part.

Text parameters are referred to as labels and can consist of any sequence of characters.

Separators

If an HP-GL/2 instruction accepts more than one parameter, you must put spaces or a comma between the parameters to separate them.

Terminator

Most commands are terminated implicitly by the first letter of the next instruction mnemonic. A semi-colon may be used to explicitly terminate a command. However, the final command issued before quitting HP-GL/2 mode must be terminated with a semi-colon. Since a terminator is almost always optional it is shown surrounded by square brackets.

4. The HP-GL graphics window

Units

When you first enter graphics mode, the prevailing coordinate system has its origin in the bottom left hand corner of the graphics window and has x- and y-units of 1/1016". Using the SC command you can divide the axes into more convenient units. The size of the graphics window remains unaltered.

The scaling points P1 and P2

Many instructions use two reference scaling points, P1 and P2. Initially these are in the bottom left and top right hand corners of the graphics window respectively. You can alter the position of these points relative to the graphics window, or relative to one another, using the IP or IR commands.

Scaling

You can easily scale images up or down by increasing or decreasing the distance between P1 and P2. You can do this both with existing images that are to be imported and with images that are generated by a string of HP-GL and HP-GL/2 commands - identical commands can be used to create the same image in different sizes.

Transformation

You can transform images horizontally or vertically by changing the relative positions of P1 and P2. You can do this both with existing images that are to be imported and with images that are generated by a string of HP-GL/2 commands.

5. Preparing to print graphic images

Setting up the graphics window

Before entering HP-GL/2 mode you will probably want to set the dimensions and position of the PCL picture frame and hence the graphics window. (Remember that when you enter HP-GL/2 mode they are initially the same). To do this you will need to send some preparatory PCL commands while in LaserJet mode. Use the Esc*c0T command to position the picture frame and the Esc*c#X and Esc*c#Y commands to determine it's horizontal and vertical dimensions respectively. These commands are described fully in the sub-section Vector Graphics in the LaserJet section of this manual. (Section 2)

If you do not specify a position and dimensions for the picture frame, the default picture frame is used. This is described in the sub-section The Page in the LaserJet section of this manual.

Using Existing image plots.

If you are importing an existing HP-GL/2 plot you can easily determine the size and position on the page of the resulting printed graphic. Images are automatically scaled and fitted to the picture frame (the HP-GL/2 graphics window) in either of the following two cases.

1) If you use the Esc*c#K and Esc*c#L PCL commands to specify the width and height of the original plot before entering HP-GL/2 mode. These commands are explained in the sub-section Vector Graphics in the LaserJet section of this manual. Only use these commands if you are importing an existing plot.

2) If the imported image code is page-size independent.

   An image is page-size independent if it's HP-GL/2 code satisfies the following conditions.

- User units are used exclusively, that is, an SC command is used before any drawing commands are issued. Note in particular that if the graphics window is changed from the default using the IW command, it must be specified in user units.

- No absolute units are used or implied, that is, drawing commands use relative movement only and character size, pattern length and pen width are always specified as relative measurements. Commands like IP and PA, which imply the use of absolute units even if none are explicitly supplied, should not be used at all.

If you import an image without fulfilling these two criteria, that is, the image is not page size independent and you do not specify its horizontal and vertical plot sizes, the plot will be drawn actual size. Any part of the plot that falls outside the effective window will not appear on the printed page.

Printing an image

When you have carried out any necessary preliminary steps that your particular application requires, as described in the preceding sections, enter HP-GL/2 mode using the Esc%#B command and send the sequence of HP-GL/2 commands to generate the image.

Entering HP-GL/2 mode

To enter graphics mode from PCL printer control language use the Esc%#B command. Set # to 0 if you want the pen to start from the previous HP-GL/2 pen position. Set # to 1 if you want to the pen to start from the current PCL cursor position. You must specify either one setting or the other.

Quitting HP-GL/2 mode

To quit graphics mode use the Esc%#A command. Set # to 0 if you want to place the cursor at the previous PCL cursor position. This is also the default setting. Set # to 1 if you want to place the cursor at the current HP-GL/2 pen position.

6. Commands

6.1. Initialize commands

DF - Default Set Instruction

DF[;]

- Returns the graphics mode to default conditions.
- The following are the default settings.

Function	Equivalent Instruction	Condition
Plot mode	PA;	Absolute plotting
Absolute direction	DI 1,0;	Horizontal
Line type	LT;	Solid line
Line pattern length	LT;	4% of distance from P1 to P2
Anchor corner	AC;	Lower left corner of picture frame
Line Attributes	LA;	Butt cap, mitered joints, miter limit = 5
User-Defined line type	UL;	All line types set to default
Window	IW;	Set at limits of printable area according to paper size
Symbol mode	SM;	Off
Character Fill Mode	CF ;	Solid, Fill, no edging
Character set	SS;	Standard character set selected
Scalable or Bitmap Fonts	SB 0;	Scalable font only
Character slant	SL 0;	0 degrees
Scaling	SC ;	Off
Label terminator	DT chr$(3)	chr$(3), non-printing
Raster fill	RF;	Solid black
Fill type	FT;	solid fill
Transparency mode	TR1;	Transparency mode on
Screened vectors	SV;	No screening
Polygon mode	PM0PM2;	Polygon buffer empty
Standard font	SD;	Stick font
Alternate font	AD;	Stick font
Character size transformation	SI;	Off
Label origin	LO1;	Current pen location
Text path	DV;	Left to right with normal line feed
Extra space	ES;	No extra space
Transparent data	TD;	Normal printing mode

NOTE :The location of the scaling points(P1, P2) remains constant.

IN - Initialize Set Instruction

IN[;]

- Returns the graphics mode to initial conditions;

Function	Equivalent Instruction	Condition
Plot mode	PA;	Absolute plotting
Relative character direction	DR 1,0;	Horizontal
Line type	LT;	Solid line
Line pattern length	LT;	4% of distance from P1 to P2
Window	IW;	Set at limits of printable area according to paper size
Symbol mode	SM;	Off
Anchor corner	AC;	Lower left corner of picture frame
Line attributes	LA;	Butt caps, mitered joins, miter limit = 5
User-defined line type	UL;	All line types set to default
Pen	SP;	Select white pen
Pen position	PA0,0;	HP-GL/2 origin
Character set	SS;	Standard character set selected
Character size transformation	SI;	Off
Scalable or bitmap fonts	SB0;	Scalable only
Character slant	SL 0;	0 degrees
Character fill	CF;	Solid fill
Scaling	SC ;	Off
Label terminator	DT chr$(3)	chr$(3)
Raster fill	RF;	Solid black
Fill type	FT;	Bi-directional fill, type 1
Transparency mode	TR1;	Transparency mode on
Screened vectors	SV;	No screening
Polygon mode	PM0PM2;	Polygon buffer empty
Standard font	SD;	Stick font
Alternate font	AD;	Stick font
Pen condition	PU;	Pen up
Pen width type	WU;	Metric
Pen width	PW;	Set at 0.35 mm
Label origin	LO1;	Current pen location
Text path	DV;	Left to right with normal line feed
Rotation	RO;	Set at 0 degrees
Extra space	ES;	No extra space
Transparent data	TD;	Normal printing mode
Scaling points	IP;	Initialized according to paper size

6.2. Plot area and unit setting instructions

Instruction	Function
IP	Scaling point
IR	Input relative scaling points
SC	Scale
IW	Input window
RO	Rotate coordinate system

IP - Input Scaling Point

IP [P1x, P1y [,P2x, P2y]] [;]

P1x ; x coordinate of P1 P1y ; y coordinate of P1
P2x ; x coordinate of P2 P2y ; y coordinate of P2

- The coordinates used are absolute values in graphics units.
- Sets the location of the scaling points(P1,P2).
- Coordinate values for P1x,P1y,P2x and P2y are given as the integer numbers.
- You can set P1 and P2 to be anywhere that the range of allowable coordinates permits. However, only parts of resulting images that lie within the effective window will be printed.
- The default location of P1 is the lower left corner and P2 is the upper right corner of the PCL picture frame.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field initializes the scaling points(P1,P2) to the default location.
- P2x and P2y may be omitted. (If P2x and P2y are omitted, P2 is set automatically so as not to alter the distance between P1 and P2).
- If P2x and P2y are omitted P2 is set to be in the same position relative to P1 that it was before the command was invoked.
- The IP command remains in effect until another IP command, an IR command or an IN command is used.

IR - Input Relative Scaling Points

IR [P1x, P1y [, P2x, P2y]][;]

P1x ; x-coordinate of P1 P1y ; y-coordinate of P1
P2x ; x-coordinate of P2 P2y ; y-coordinate of P2

- The coordinate values are percentages relative to the bottom left and top right hand corners of the picture frame.
- Coordinate values for P1x, P1y, P2x, and P2y are treated as clamped real numbers.
- Using this instruction without parameters sets the scaling points (P1, P2) to their initial positions, the bottom left and top right hand corners of the picture frame.
- If P2x and P2y are omitted P2 is set to be in the same position relative to P1 that it was before the command was invoked.
- You can set P1 and P2 to be anywhere that the range of allowable coordinates permits. However, only parts of resulting images that lie within the effective window will be printed.
- The IR command remains in effect until another IR command, and IP command or an IN command is used.

SC - Scale

<HP-GL/2>
SC [X_{min}, X_{max}, Y_{min}, Y_{max} [, type]] [;] (Type = 0)

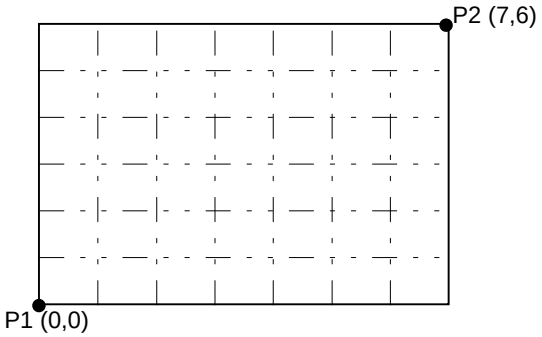
SC [X_{min}, X_{max}, Y_{min}, Y_{max} , *type* [left, bottom]] [;] (*Type* =1)

SC [X_{min}, X_{factor}, Y_{min} Y_{factor} [, *type*]] [;] (*Type* = 2)

X_{min} ; X coordinate of P1 X_{max} ; X coordinate of P2
Y_{min} ; Y coordinate of P1 Y_{max} ; Y coordinate of P2
Type ; type of scaling
Left ; percentage of unused space to be left to the left of the scaling area
bottom ; percentage of unused space to be left below the scaling area
X_{factor} ; number of graphics units per user unit on the x-axis.
Y_{factor} ; number of graphics units per user unit on the y-axis.

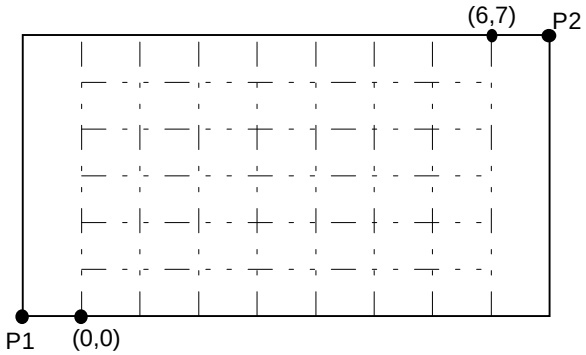
- This command turns scaling on and establishes a user unit coordinate system. The coordinate system is specified relative to the points P1 and P2. The origin need not necessarily be at P1. Three different types of scaling are available.
- The technical terms, user unit and graphics unit, as used in this manual are defined as follows:
  User unit : the unit of the coordinates set by the SC instruction.
  Graphics unit : the unit(1/1016 of an inch) of the coordinates not set by the SC instruction.
- All coordinates are in user units.
- Coordinate values for X_{min}, X_{max}, Y_{min}, and Y_{max} are given as real numbers.
- X_{min}, Y_{min}, X_{max} and Y_{max} specify the range of the X- and Y-axes. X_{min} and Y_{min} value should be P1 and X_{max} and Y_{max} should be P2.
- X_{min} must be different from X_{max}, and Y_{min} must be different from Y_{max}.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field turns the scaling off.
- *Type* can be 0, 1 or 2, which select scaling types known as anisotropic, isotropic and point factor scaling respectively.

- *Type* 0 scaling (anisotropic scaling, and the default) allows you to specify different sized x-axis and y-axis units. Hence the area specified by X_{min}, X_{max}, Y_{min}, and Y_{max} will occupy the entire area defined by P1 and P2.



- left and bottom settings have no effect in *type* 0 scaling.

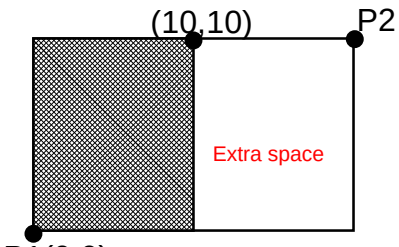
- *Type* 1 scaling (isotropic scaling) forces x-axis and y-axis units to be the same size. As a result the area specified by X_{min}, X_{max}, Y_{min}, and Y_{max} (the isotropic area) may not fit exactly into the rectangular area defined by P1 and P2.



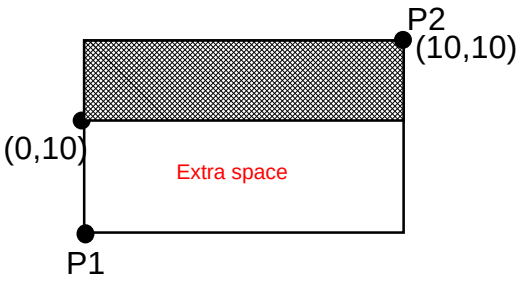
- With *type* 1 scaling you can specify the percentage of unused space that is to lie below, or to the left of, the isotropic area.

- *left* specifies the percentage of unused space you want to lie to the left of the isotropic area, and can be from 0 to 100. If you do not specify the value for *left*, it is automatically set to the default value = 50%.

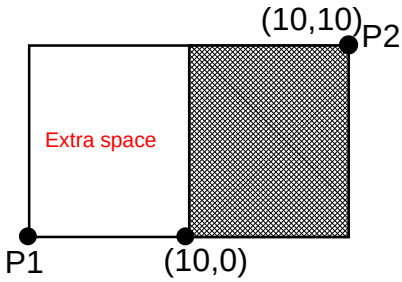
- *bottom* specifies the percentage of unused space you want to lie below the isotropic area, and can be from 0 to 100. If you do not specify the value for *bottom*, it is automatically set to the default value = 50%.



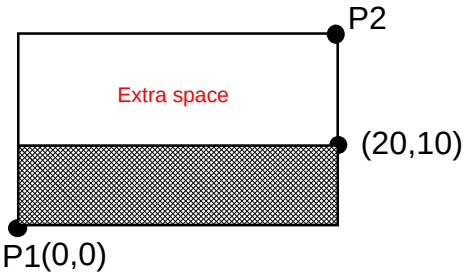
SC 0,10,0,10,1,0,0



SC0,20,0,10,1,100,100



SC 0,10,0,10,1,100,100



SC 0,20,0,10,1,0,0

- You must either specify both *left* and *bottom*, or specify neither.However, the printer can only use one of these two parameters at a time, depending where the extra space is on a page. \
- If you do not specify a percentage for unused space to the *left* or at the *bottom*, the isotropic area is centred in the rectangle defined by P1 and P2.
- *Type* 2 scaling (point factor scaling) specifies the ratio of graphics units to user units and sets user units coordinates for P1.
- X_{factor} specifies the number of graphics units that comprise a single user x-axis unit.
- Y_{factor} specifies the number of graphics units that comprise a single user y-axis unit.
- Valid values for X_{factor} and Y_{factor} are real numbers.
- An SC command remains in effect until another SC command is issued, until default settings are restored with the DF command, or until the printer is initialized with an IN command.

```
10 '-Scale-'
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
60 '-- Anisotropic scaling --
70 LPRINT "PA1500,6000;EA3500,8000;"
80 LPRINT "IP1500,6000,3500,8000;SC0,200,0,100,0;PA50,50;CI50;"
90 LPRINT "IN;PA1500,3000;EA3500,5000;"
100 LPRINT "IP1500,3000, 3500,5000;SC0,100,0,200,0;PA50,50;CI50;"
110 LPRINT"IN;PA1300,8200;DT#;LBAnisotropic scaling#";
120 '--Isotropic scaling--
130 'Left,Bottom= 0,0
140 LPRINT "PA4500,6000;EA6500,8000;"
150 LPRINT"IP4500,6000,6500,8000;SC0,200,0,100,1,0,0;PA50,50;CI50;"
160 'Left, Bottom = 100,100
170 LPRINT "IN;PA4500,3000;EA6500,5000;"
180 LPRINT"IP4500,3000,6500,5000;SC0,100,0,200,1,100,100;PA50,50;CI50;"
190 LPRINT "IN;PA4000,82;DT#;LBIsotrop00ic scaling#";
200 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
210LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
```

```
220 END
```

<Sample 21>

IW - Window

IW [X_1, Y_1, X_2, Y_2] [;]

X_1-Window lower left X coordinate Y_1-Window lower left Y coordinate
X_2-Window upper right X coordinate Y_2-Window upper right Y coordinate

- This instruction sets the window inside which drawing can be performed (the soft clip limits).
- Coordinates are specified in current units.
- Using this instruction with no parameters sets the window to be the same as the picture frame.
- You can set the corners of the window to lie outside the picture frame. However, only the portion of the image which lies within both the picture frame and the window will appear on the page.
- If scaling is turned on with the SC command before the window is defined with the IW command, you can move the window on the physical page by specifying different locations for P1 and P2 with the IP and IR commands. The user unit coordinates that bound the window remain the same.
- If an SC command is used after the IW window definition, the window is fixed on the physical page and does not move when subsequent IP and IR commands are invoked.
- An IW command remains in effect until another IW command is issued, until default settings are restored with the DF command, or until the printer is initialized with an IN command.

```
10 '--Input Window--
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SI0.2,0.35,PA2000,3200;;LBTHIS IS AN EXAMPLE OF IW";CHR$(3)
70 LPRINT "IW3000,1300,4500,3700;PD2000,1700;LBTHIS IS AN EXAMPLE OF
IW";CHR$(3)
80 LPRINT "PU3000,1300;PD4500,1300,4500,3700;PD3000,3700,3000,1300;PU;"
90 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
100 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
110 END

<Sample 22>
```

RO - Rotate coordinate system

RO [*q*][;]

q : Angle in degrees through which the coordinate system is rotated.

- This instruction is used to rotate the graphics coordinate system anti-clockwise.
- Using this instruction with no parameter sets the rotation of the coordinate system to 0 degrees (default value).
- The pen position does not change.
- P1 and P2 rotate with the coordinate system and retain the same coordinate values.
- To relocate P1 and P2 at the lower left and upper right hand corners of the picture frame, use the IP; or IR; command.
- If you have previously used an IW command, the window is also rotated. Any part of the window that falls outside the hard clip limits will be clipped.
- The command remains in effect until another RO command is used, or until the printer is initialized with the IN instruction.
- Valid values of *q* are 0, 90, 180 or 270.

```
10 '--Rotate Coordinate System--
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 FOR I = 0 TO 270 STEP 90
70 LPRINT "RO"; I; "PA1000,2000;PD3000,2000,2000,3000,1000,2000;PU;"
80 LPRINT "LB RO ="; I; CHR$(3)
90 LPRINT "PA600,1500;LBRotate Coordinate System";CHR$(3)
100 NEXT I
110 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
130 END
```

<Sample 23>

6.3. Pen Control and Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function
PU	Pen Up
PD	Pen Down
PA	Plot Absolute
PR	Relative Coordinate Pen Move
AA	Absolute Arc Plot
AR	Relative Arc Plot
AT	Absolute Three Point Arc
RT	Relative Three Point Arc
PE	Polyline Encoded
CI	Circle
BR	Bezier Relative
BZ	Bezier Absolute

PU - Pen Up

PU [X,Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination
Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- X and Y are either relative or absolute, depending on whether a PA or a PR was the last plot command executed. The absolute coordinates are set as default.
- You can specify as many coordinate pairs as you wish. The cursor moves to each point in turn without drawing.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field raises the pen without changing the cursor position.
- Coordinates are specified in the currently selected unit.
- In symbol mode PU draws the specified symbol at each point in the parameter list.
- In polygon mode the specified coordinate pairs are placed in the polygon buffer.
- If an odd number of coordinates are specified, the final, unpaired coordinate is ignored.

PD - Pen Down

PD [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination
Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- X and Y are either relative or absolute, depending on whether a PA or a PR was the last plot command executed. The absolute coordinates are the default setting.
- You can specify as many coordinate pairs as you wish. The cursor moves to each point in turn, drawing lines on the page.
- Using this instruction without a parameter lowers the pen without changing the cursor position.
- Coordinates are specified in the currently selected unit.
- In symbol mode PD draws the specified symbol at each defined point on the x- and y-axis.
- In polygon mode the specified coordinate pairs are placed in the polygon buffer.
- If an odd number of coordinates are specified, the final, unpaired coordinate is ignored.

PA - Plot Absolute

PA [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination
Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- Coordinates are absolute values in user or current units.
- Whether used with or without parameters the command establishes absolute plotting as the plotting mode.
- The command moves the cursor to the specified coordinates, drawing straight lines, only when the pen is down.
- In symbol mode PA draws the specified symbol at each point in the parameter list.
- In polygon mode the specified coordinate pairs are placed in the polygon buffer.
- If an odd number of coordinates are specified, the final, unpaired coordinate is ignored.

```
10 ' -- Plot Absolute --
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA2000,6000;PD0,6000,2000,7500,2000,6000;PU2500,6000;";
70 LPRINT "PAPD4500,6000,2500,7500,2500,6000;PU10365,500;";
80 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
90 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
100 END
```

<Sample 24>

PR - Relative Coordinate Pen Move

PR [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination
Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- Coordinates used are relative values in current units.
- Whether used with or without parameters the command establishes relative plotting as the plotting mode.
- The command moves the cursor to the specified coordinates, drawing straight lines, only when the pen is down.
- You can specify any number of coordinated pairs and plotting is performed in the order the coordinates are specified.
- In symbol mode PR draws the specified symbol at each point in the parameter list.
- In polygon mode the specified coordinate pairs are placed in the polygon buffer.
- If an odd number of coordinates are specified, the final, unpaired coordinate is ignored.

```
10 ' - Plot Relative -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
20 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
40 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
50 LPRINT "PA5000,4500,;PDPR-2000,0,2000,2000,0,-2000;PU500,0;"
60 LPRINT "PD2000,0,-2000,2000,0,-2000;PU;"
70 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
80 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
90 END
```

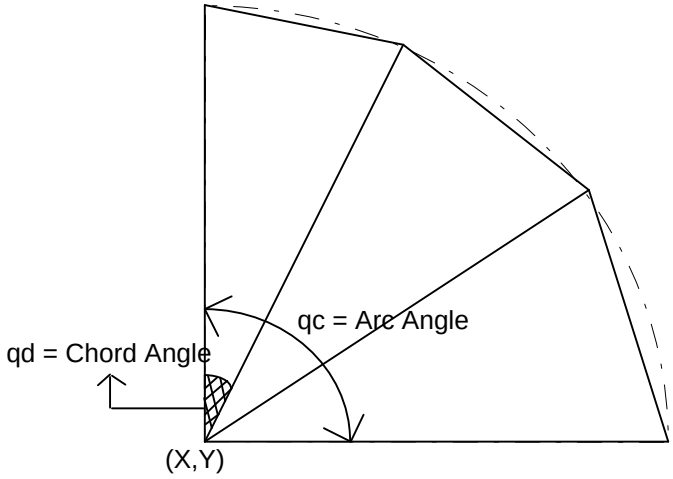
<Sample 25>

AA - Draw Absolute Arc

AA [X, Y, qc [, qd]] [;]

X ; Arc centre X coordinate Y ; Arc centre Y coordinate
qc ; Arc angle in degrees *qd* ; Chord angle in degrees

- Coordinates are absolute coordinates in current units.
- Starting from the current position, this command plots an arc centred on the absolute coordinates X, Y having the specified arc angle and chord angle, with the radius being the distance between the current position and the point X,Y.
- After execution of the command the cursor position is at the opposite end of the arc from the point at which plotting started.
- Plotting takes place only when the pen is down.
- If the command is invoked with the pen up, plotting is not performed, but the cursor position moves to what would have been the plot end point.



- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.
- When *qc* is positive, plotting is counterclockwise.
- When *qc* is negative, plotting is clockwise.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number in the range 0.5° to 180°. The default value is 5°.

```
10 '-- Draw Absolute Arc --
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP1000,1000,6000,6000;"
60 LPRINT "SC0,100,0,100;"
70 LPRINT "PA0,30;"
80 LPRINT "PD;PA0,45;AA0,50,180;PA0,70;"
90 LPRINT "AA0,100,900;PA100,55;AA100,50,180;PA100,30;"
100 LPRINT "AA100,100,90;PA45,100;AA50,100,180;PA80,100;"
110 LPRINT "AA100,0,90;PA55,0;AA50,0,180;PA30,0;AA0,0,90;"
120 LPRINT "PU;PA50,50,CI20;"
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
140 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
150 END

<Sample 26>
```

AR - Draw Relative Arc

AR X, Y, *qc*(, *qd*)[;]

X ; Arc centre X coordinate Y ; Arc centre Y coordinate
qc ; Arc angle in degrees *qd* ; Chord angle in degrees

- Coordinates are relative values in current units.
- Starting from the current cursor position the command plots an arc whose centre is at the relative coordinate position (X,Y) and which has the specified arc and chord angles. The radius of the arc is the distance between the current position and the point (X,Y).
- After execution of the command the cursor position is at the opposite end of the arc from the point at which plotting started.
- Plotting takes place only when the pen is down.
- If the command is invoked with the pen up, plotting is not performed, but the cursor position moves to what would have been the plot end point.
- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.
- When *qc* is positive, plotting is counterclockwise.
- When *qc* is negative, plotting is clockwise.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number in the range 0.5° to 180°. The default value is 5°.

```
10 '--Draw Relative Arc --
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP1000,1000,6000,6000;"
60 LPRINT "SC-100,100,-100,100;"
70 LPRINT
    "PA-100,70;PD;PR30,0;AR0,-70,-90,15;AR70,0,90;PR60,0;PU;"
80 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
100 END

<Sample 27>
```

AT - Absolute Arc Three Point

AT X_1, Y_1, X_2, Y_2 [,*qd*] [;]

X_1 ; x-coordinate of intermediate point
Y_2 ; y-coordinate of intermediate point
X_2 ; x-coordinate of end point
y_2 ; y-coordinate of end point
qd ; the chord angle used to draw the arc

- All coordinates are absolute and in current units.
- The command draws an arc from the current position, through the specified intermediate position and finishing at the specified end position.
- After completion of the command the current cursor position is at the end of the arc.
- An arc can be drawn clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- If the current scaling mode is not isotropic, the arc may be elliptical rather than circular.
- The chord angle must be in the range 0.5° to 180°.
- The default chord angle is 5°.

```
10 '--Absolute Arc Three Point--
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA1000,100;PD2500,100;"
70 LPRINT "PU650,1150;PD1000,1150;"
80 LPRINT "PU650,450;PD1000,450;"
90 LPRINT "PU1000,100;PD1000,1500,2500,1500;"
100 LPRINT "AT3200,800,2500,1500;"
110 LPRINT "PU3200,900;PD;"
120 LPRINT "AT3300,800,3200,700;"
130 LPRINT "PU3300,800;PD3500,800;"
140 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
150 LPRINT CHR&(27);"E";
160 END

<Sample 28>
```

RT - Relative Arc Three Point

RT X_1, Y_1, X_2, Y_2 [,qd] [;]

X_1 ; x-coordinate of intermediate point
Y_2 ; y-coordinate of intermediate point
X_2 ; x-coordinate of end point
y_2 ; y-coordinate of end point
qd ; the chord angle used to draw the arc

- The specified coordinates of the two points are relative to the current pen position.
- The command draws an arc from the current position, through the specified intermediate position and finishing at the specified end position.
- After completion of the command the current cursor position is at the end of the arc.
- An arc can be drawn clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- If the current scaling mode is not isotropic, the arc may be elliptical rather than circular.
- The chord angle must be in the range 0.5° to 180°.
- The default chord angle is 5°.

```
10 '--Relative Arc Three Point--
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "&0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA1000,100;PR;PD1500,0;"
70 LPRINT "PU-1850,1050;PD350,0;"
80 LPRINT "PU-350,-700;PD350;0;"
90 LPRINT "PU0,-350;PD0,1500,1500,0;"
100 LPRINT "RT800,-750,0,-1500;"
110 LPRINT "PU700,850;PD;"
120 LPRINT "RT100,-100,0,-200;"
130 LPRINT "PU100,100;PD200,0;"
140 LPRINT CHR&(27); "%0A";
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
160 END
```

<Sample 29>

PE - Polyline Encoded

PE [[*flag*] [*value*] | X_iY_i ... [*flag*] [*value*] | X_iY_i]];

flag ; a command or mode that applies to the data that follows
value; parameter data for the preceding flag
X ; X-coordinate of a cursor movement destination
Y ; Y-coordinate of a cursor movement destination

- This command allows you to combine a sequence of PA, PR, PU, PD and SP commands into a coded format. This reduces file size and transmission time.
- Do not use commas within the PE command. Parameters either have their own terminators or do not require them.
- The PE command must be terminated with a semi-colon.
- The command draws lines using the current line type and current units.
- The command draws lines to all coordinate points specified unless you precede the coordinate pair with a pen up flag.
- On completion of the command, the pen is down unless the final move was made with the pen up.
- All coordinate points are interpreted as relative unless preceded by the absolute flag (=).
- On completion of the command, the previous plotting mode is restored.
- Flags are not encoded. They are sent as ASCII characters. The MSB of the code is ignored, thus 60 and 188 can both represent <, the flag for pen up.
- The following *flags* are used:

  ':' - Select pen. The number which follows is the required pen number. A PE command that does not include a select pen command uses the currently selected pen.
  '<' - Pen up. The pen is raised and moved to the specified coordinate pair. All coordinate pair values not preceded by this flag are automatically interpreted as pen down plotting commands.
  '>' - Fractional data. The value following the flag specifies the number of fractional binary bits in the coordinate data.
  '=' - Absolute plotting mode. The pair of coordinates which follow this flag are absolute coordinates.
  '7' - 7 bit mode. All subsequent coordinate values within this PE command are to be interpreted as 7-bit values, that is, encoded in base 32.

- If you use the ':' *flag* in polygon mode it is ignored as the SP command has no effect in this mode.
- Values and coordinates are encoded in base 64 or base 32. Values determine the setting of the immediately preceding *flag*. Legal values and coordinates are as follows:

Pen number -	0 (white) or 1(black)
Number of fractional binary bits -	-26 to 26. The default is 0.
x- and y-coordinates -	(-2^{30}) to $2^{30} - 1$ current units. If the pen position is moved outside this range, subsequent plotting commands are ignored until an absolute coordinate pair within the allowable range is specified.

- *Flag* and coordinate values are encoded as either base 64 or base 32 numbers and then transmitted as ASCII character codes. Base 64 is the default. Use Base 64 if your computer can send data without a parity bit. Use base 32 if your system requires a parity bit.
- To encode an integer proceed as follows. If the number is negative, take the absolute value, multiply by 2 and add 1. Hence -x : = 2x+1. If the number is positive simply multiply by 2. Hence x :=2x. Convert the

new number into base 64 or base 32 according to your system and encode each base 64 or base 32 digit as the corresponding ASCII character.

- To encode a real number proceed as follows. Multiply the number of decimal places in your coordinate's data by 3.33 and round the result up to the next highest integer (for example round 6.66 up to 7). This gives the number of binary bits needed to represent the number's fractional part - the value that you will supply with the '>' flag. Call this number n. Now multiply the number you are encoding by 2^n. Round this number to the nearest integer and then follow the procedure described above for encoding an integer.

- Transmit each number to the printer least significant digits first. Terminate each number with the most significant digit. This must be specified from a different ASCII range from the preceding digits in the number. In base 64, non-terminating digits are represented by the numbers 63-126 and terminating digits by the numbers 191-254. In base 32, non-terminating digits are represented by the numbers 63-94 and terminating digits by the numbers 95-126. Hence if using a base 32 number whose least significant digit is 14, and whose most significant digit is 5, encode 14 as 77 (63+14) and 5 as 100 (95+5).

	Non-terminator	Terminator
Base 64	63-126	191-254
Base 32	63-94	95-126

- In symbol mode the PE command draws the specified symbol at each specified point.

- In polygon mode the points specified within the PE command are not plotted. Instead they are stored in the polygon buffer and used when a FP (Fill Polygon) or EP (Edge Polygon) command is used.

- The PE command with no parameters simply updates the carriage return point.

CI - Circle Plot

CI *r*(, *qd*)[;]

r ; Radius of circle (in current units)
qd ; Chord angle (in degrees)

- The command plots a circle with the current position as the centre, with a radius r and chord angle qd.

- After plotting, the cursor returns to the centre of the circle.

- Plotting takes place irrespective of whether the pen is up or down.

- Valid values for r are specified in the current unit.

- Valid values for *qd* are clamped real numbers in the range 0.5° to 180°. The default value is 5°.

- To avoid placing an unwanted dot at the centre of the circle precede the CI command with a PU command.

```
10 '-- Circle --
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27);"E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SC-75,75,-75,75,1;"
70 LPRINT "PA0,0;LT;CI5;LT0;CI-12;"
80 LPRINT "LT1;CI19;LT2;CI-26;"
90 LPRINT "LT3;CI33;LT4;CI-40;"
100 LPRINT "LT5;CI47;LT6;CI54;"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27);"%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END

<Sample 30>
```

BR - Bezier Relative

BR [X1, Y1, X2, Y2, X3, Y3 . . . [X1, Y1, X2, Y2, X3, Y3]] [;]

X1, X2, X3 ; X coordinate of the second (X1), third (X2), and forth (X3) control point
Y1, Y2, Y3 ; Y coordinate of the second (Y1), third (Y2), and forth (Y3) control point

- Coordinates are relative values in current units.
- Using the current pen position as the starting point, the bezier curve is geometrically drawn referring to the other three points. The start point of the curve is at (X0,Y0), and the curve is tangential to the line from (X0, Y0) to (X1, Y1) at that point, and it leaves the point in that direction. The end point of the curve is at (X3,Y3), and the curve is tangential to the line from (X2,Y2) to (X3,Y3).
- After execution of this command the cursor position is at the end of the bezier curve.
- When drawing a bezier curve is repeated, the last (fourth) control point of the first curve is used as the first control point for the second curve.
- Plotting takes place only when the pen is down.
- If the command is invoked with the pen up, plotting is not performed, but the cursor position moves to what would have been the plot end point.
- If the curve extends to the outside of the soft/hard clip limit, it is clipped.
- This command can only be used in polygon mode.

BZ - Bezier Absolute

BZ [X1, Y1, X2, Y2, X3, Y3 . . . [X1, Y1, X2, Y2, X3, Y3]] [;]

X1, X2, X3 ; X coordinate of the second (X1), third (X2), and forth (X3) control point
Y1, Y2, Y3 ; Y coordinate of the second (Y1), third (Y2), and forth (Y3) control point

- Coordinates are absolute values in current units.
- Using the current pen position as the starting point, the bezier curve is geometrically drawn referring to the other three points. The start point of the curve is at (X0,Y0), and the curve is tangential to the line from (X0, Y0) to (X1, Y1) at that point, and it leaves the point in that direction. The end point of the curve is at (X3,Y3), and the curve is tangential to the line from (X2,Y2) to (X3,Y3).
- After execution of this command the cursor position is at the end of the bezier curve.
- When drawing a bezier curve is repeated, the last (fourth) control point of the first curve is used as the first control point of the second curve.
- Plotting takes place only when the pen is down.
- If the command is invoked with the pen up, plotting is not performed, but the cursor position moves to what would have been the plot end point.
- If the curve extends to the outside of the soft/hard clip limit, it is clipped.
- This command can only be used in polygon mode.

6.4. The polygon group

Instruction	Function
PM	Polygon Mode
EA	Edge Absolute Rectangle
ER	Edge Relative Rectangle
EP	Edge Polygon
EW	Edge Wedge
RA	Fill Absolute Rectangle
RR	Fill Relative Rectangle
WG	Fill Wedge
FP	Fill Polygon

PM - Polygon Mode

PM [*ms*] [;]

- This command is used for entering and leaving polygon mode, the mode that allows you to access the polygon buffer.
- When in polygon mode you can use any of the vector group commands to define the vertices of a polygon. The following commands can be used;

  DF, IN, AA, AR, AT, BR, BZ, CI, PA, PD, PE, PR, PU, RT

- The polygon you have defined is not printed until you exit polygon mode and fill or edge the polygon.
- *ms*, the mode status, can have the value 0, 1 or 2. If *ms* = 0 the command empties the polygon buffer and enters polygon mode. A value of 1 closes the current polygon and remains in polygon mode. All commands sent following a PM1 before a PM2 or a further PM1 are used to build one sub-polygon. A value of 2 closes the current polygon or sub-polygon and exits polygon mode.
- Having exited polygon mode you can use the EP and FP commands to edge or fill the polygons you have defined.
- The EP command only draws between points defined when the pen was in the down position.
- The FP command fills the area between the polygon vertices irrespective of whether the pen was up or down when the polygon was defined.
- The first point in the polygon buffer is the pen position when the PM0; command was invoked.
- The next pen position specified after a PM1; command becomes the first vertex of the next sub-polygon.
- When plotting a polygon the pen always moves to the first point in the up position.
- Using the command with no parameters clears the polygon buffer and enters polygon mode. This is equivalent to the PM0; command.
- If a DF or IN command is invoked in the polygon mode, the printer quits polygon mode, clears the polygon buffer, and executes the subsequent command.
- If an ESC E reset command is invoked while the printer is in polygon mode, the printer quits polygon mode, clears the polygon buffer, exits HP-GL/2 and ejects a page.

EA - Edge Rectangle Absolute

EA X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle
Y ; Y coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle

- X and Y coordinates are absolute coordinates in current units.
- Plots the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite corner specified by X and Y.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin, and pen up/down status remains as selected.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

```
10 '-Edge Rectangle Absolute-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SC0,150,0,150,1;"
70 LPRINT "PA25;105;EA65;130;"
80 LPRINT "PA30;110;EA70,135;"
90 LPRINT "PA35;115;EA75;140;"
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
120 END

<sample 31>
```

ER - Edge Rectangle Relative

ER X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle
Y ; Y coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle

- Coordinates are relative to the current position in current units.
- Plots the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite corner specified by X and Y.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

```
10 '-Edge Rectangle Relative -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SC0;150;0;150;1;"
70 LPRINT "PA25,105;ER40,25;"
80 LPRINT "PR 5, 5;ER40,25;"
90 LPRINT "PR 5, 5;ER40,25;"
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
120 END

<Sample 32>
```

EP - Edge Polygon

EP [;]

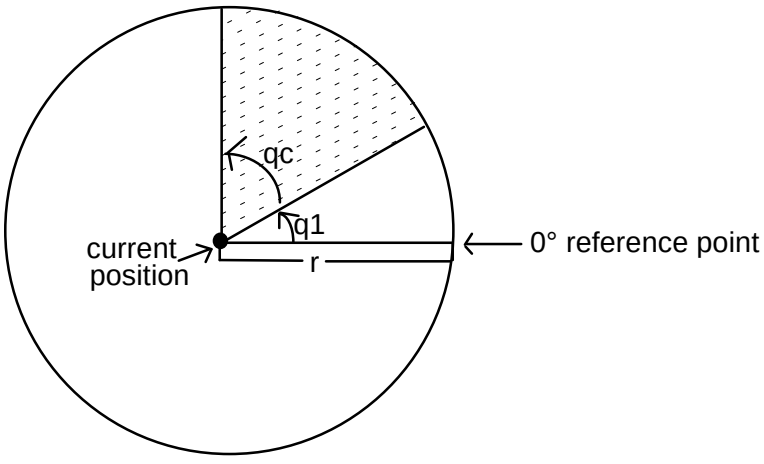
- This command plots the outline of the polygon currently stored in the polygon buffer.
- The command only plots between points defined when the pen was down.
- The command plots an outline irrespective of whether the pen is currently up or down.
- The command does not affect the data in the polygon buffer.
- On completion of the plot the cursor returns to the original poition.

EW - Edge Wedge

EW *r,q1,qc*(,*qd*)[;]

r ; Radius in current units
q1; Start point angle
qc ; Arc angle
qd ; Chord angle

- Plots a wedge centred on the current position with radius *r*, start point angle *q1*, arc angle *qc*, and chord angle *qd*.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- You should use this command with the type "isotropic". Anisotropic type may make the wedge stretch.
- *r* specifies the radius of the circle. A positive value for *r* places the 0° reference point onto the positive x-axis and a negative value for *r* places the 0° reference point onto the negative x-axis.
- The value for *q1* is a clamped real number.



- *q1* specifies the wedge starting point relative to the 0 degree reference point.
- When *q1* is positive, the positive direction of the X axis relative to the current position is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought in the counterclockwise direction. The opposite occurs when *q1* is negative: the negative X axis is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought by going clockwise.
- *qc* specifies the angle of the wedge in degrees.
- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.

- Plotting proceeds counterclockwise when *qc* is positive, and clockwise when negative.
- The value for *qd* must be an integer from -32,768 to +32,767.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees)

```
10 '- Edge Wedge -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
60 LPRINT "PA2000,5000;"
70 LPRINT "EW1250,90,180,5;"
80 LPRINT "EW1250,270,120;"
90 LPRINT "EW1250,30,60;"
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
120 END

<Sample 33>
```

RA - Fill Rectangle Absolute

RA X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle
Y ; Y coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle

- X and Y coordinates are absolute coordinates in current units.
- Fill the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite corner specified by X and Y.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

```
10 ' - Fill Absolute Rectangle -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,4000;"
60 LPRINT "FT1;RA4250,3250;"
70 LPRINT "FT3,100;RA5750,3250;"
80 LPRINT "FT2;RA5750,4750;"
90 LPRINT "FT4,100,45;RA4250,4750;"
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
120 END

<Sample 34>
```

RR - Fill Rectangle Relative

RR X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle
Y ; Y coordinate of opposite corner for the rectangle

- Coordinates relative to the current position in current units.
- Fill the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite corner specified by X and Y.
- After plotting the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

```
10 ' - Fill Relative Rectangle -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,4000;"
60 LPRINT "FT1;RR750,750;"
70 LPRINT "PR750,0;"
80 LPRINT "FT3,100;RR750,750;"
90 LPRINT "PR0,750;"
100 LPRINT "FT2;RR750,750;"
110 LPRINT "FT4,100,45;RR-750,750;"
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
140 END

<Sample 35>
```

WG - Fill Wedge

WG *r,q1,qc*(,*qd*)[;]

r ; Radius in current units
q1 ; Start point angle
qc ; Arc angle
qd ; Chord angle

- Fill in a wedge centred on the current position with radius *r*, start point angle *q1*, arc angle *qc*, and chord angle *qd*.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- You should use this command with the type "isotropic". Anisotropic type may make the wedge stretch.
- *r* specifies the radius of circle. A positive value places the 0° reference point onto the positive x-axis and the negative value places it onto the negative x-axis.
- The value for *q1* is a clamped real number.
- *q1* specifies the wedge starting point related to the 0° reference point.
- When *q1* is positive, the positive direction of the X axis relative to the current position is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought in the counterclockwise direction. The opposite occurs when *q1* is negative: the negative X axis is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought by going clockwise.
- *qc* specifies the angle of the wedge.
- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.
- Plotting proceeds counterclockwise when *qc* is positive, and clockwise when negative.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees).

```
10 ' - Fill Wedge -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP2;FT3,100;"
60 LPRINT "PA2000,5000;"
70 LPRINT "WG1250,90,180,5;"
80 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,90,180,5;"
90 LPRINT "SP4;FT4,100,45;"
100 LPRINT "WG1250,270,120;"
110 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,270,120;"
120 LPRINT "SP1;FT1;"
130 LPRINT "WG1250,30,60;"
140 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,30,60;"
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
160 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
170 END
```

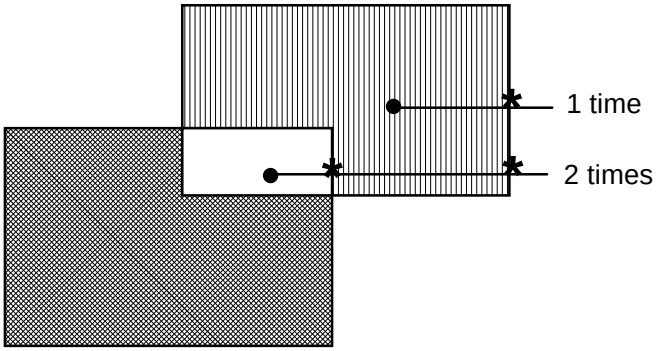
<Sample 36>

FP - Fill Polygon

FP [;]
FP [*n*] [;]

n ; fill method

- This command fills the polygon currently stored in the polygon buffer.
- The command does not clear the buffer or alter the data at all.
- The command fills between points defined when the pen was up or down.
- If a polygon is composed of sub-polygons, the command fills alternate areas.
- On completion of the plot the cursor returns to the original position.
- The command performs a fill irrespective of whether the pen is currently up or down.
- You can specify the fill method. There are two types of fill method.
- 0 specified even/odd fill method.
  Places a point within the polygon, and draws a straight line from it to the outside of polygon. If the cross point of the straight line and polygon edges are an odd count, the polygon which includes the start point is filled.



- 1 specifies Non-zero winding fill method.

```
10 '- Fill Polygon -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA1500,1500;PM0;CI1000,60;PM1;"
70 LPRINT "CI500;PM1;PM2;"
80 LPRINT "LT4;FT3,50,45;"
90 LPRINT "FP;"
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
120 END

<Sample 37>
```

6.5. Plot Function Instructions

Instruction	Function
AC	Anchor Corner
FT	Fill Type
LA	Line Attribute
LT	Line Type
PW	Pen Width
RF	Raster Fill Definition
SM	Symbol Mode
SP	Select Pen
SV	Screened Vectors
TR	Transparency Mode
UL	User-defined Line Type
WU	Select Unit for Pen Width

AC - Anchor Corner

AC [X, Y] [;]

X ; x-coordinate of starting point of fill pattern
Y ; y-coordinate of starting point of fill pattern

- This command specifies the anchor corner which is the starting position of a fill pattern.
- If no parameters are specified the lower left hand corner of the PCL picture frame, according to the current coordinate system, becomes the anchor position. This is equivalent to AC0,0;
- User units or graphics units may be used.
- The value of the coordinates are real numbers in the range (-2^{30}) to $2^{30} - 1$.

```
10 '-Anchor Corner -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA3000,3000;FT3,400,45;"
70 LPRINT "RR1000,1000;ER1000,1000;"
80 LPRINT "PR1000,0;FT4,400,45;"
90 LPRINT "RR1000,1000;ER1000,1000;"
100 LPRINT "PR1000,0;FT3,400,45;"
110 LPRINT "RR1000,1000,ER1000,1000;"
120 LPRINT "PA3000,1500;AC3000,1500;"
130 LPRINT "RR1000,1000;ER1000,1000;"
140 LPRINT "PA4000,1500;AC4000,1500;FT4,400,45;"
150 LPRINT "RR1000,1000;ER1000,1000;"
160 LPRINT "PA5000,1500;AC5000,1500;FT3,400,45;"
170 LPRINT "RR1000,1000;ER1000,1000;"
180 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
190 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
200 END

<Sample 38>
```

FT - Fill Type

FT *n*(, *d*(, *q*))[;]

n ; Fill type *d* ; option 1 *q* ; option 2

- Sets the fill type, interval, and angle when filling an area. This setting is effective for the commands FP, RA, RR, WG and CF.
- The value for *n* must be a clamped integer number

Fill type	Description	Option 1	Option 2
1	Solid black (bidirectional fill)		
2	Solid black (single directional fill)		
3	hatching (parallel line)	fill interval	fill angle
4	cross-hatching	fill interval	fill angle
10	shading	shading level	
11	HP-GL/2 user-defined	raster-fill index	
21	PCL cross-hatching	pattern type	
22	PCL user-defined	pattern ID	
130	shading (one of sixty-four gray scales)	Shading level	

- option 1 for *n*=3 or 4 is the setting for the interval of the lines in the fill. This is specified in current units.
- If *d* is omitted or 0, it is set to default value which is 1% of the diagonal distance between P1 and P2.
- Option 2 for *n*=3 and 4 is the setting of the angle for the lines in degrees.
- If *q* is omitted, the fill angle already specified will be used.
- The value of *q* is a clamped real number.
- Option 1 for *n*=10 is the setting for the shading density. It is specified as a percentage from 0 to 100.
- Option 2 for *n*=10 is ignored.
- Option 1 for *n*=11 specifies the HP-GL/2 user-defined raster fill pattern. This uses the index number which is defined by the RF command.
- Option 2 for *n*=11 is ignored.
- Option 1 for *n*=21 specifies the PCL cross-hatch patterns. There are 6 types of PCL cross-hatch patterns.
- Option 2 for *n*=21 is ignored.
- Option 1 for *n*=22, the PCL user-defined patterns defined by ESC*c#W command with a unique ID code.
- Option 2 for *n*=22 is ignored.
- Option 1 for *n*=130, the 64 gray scale shading density. It is specified as a percentage from 0 to 100.
- Option 2 for *n*=130 is ignored.

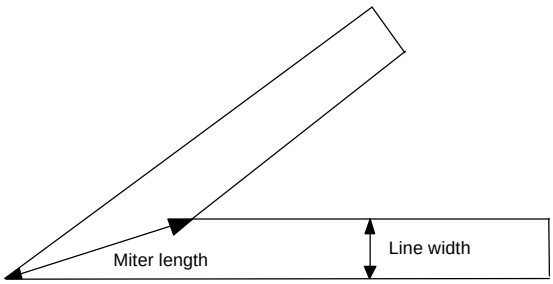
```
10 ' - Fill Type -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA2000,2000;FT;PR2500,300;ER2500,300;"
70 LPRINT "PR0,300;FT3,80,30;RR2500.300;"
80 LPRINT "PR0,300;FT10,36;RR2500,300;ER2500,300;"
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
110 END

<Sample 39>
```

LA - Line Attribute

LA [*l*, *v* [, *l* , *v* [, *l* , *v*]]] [;]

l ; line attribute *v* : value

- This command specifies the shape of line joins and line ends.
- These settings are effective for the line widths thicker than 0.35 mm.
- *l* specifies the line attribute for which you are setting a value.
- There are three line attributes - line end type, line join type and miter limit, specified by line attribute values of 1, 2 and 3 respectively.
- *v* specifies the value of the particular attribute.
- Line ends are either butt (1), square (2,), triangular (3) or round (4).
- Line joins are either mitered (1), mitered/beveled (2), triangular (3), round (4), beveled (5), or have no join (6).
- Miter limit is the ratio of miter length to line width. When the miter limit is exceeded, the join is clipped to the miter limit.
- The miter limit is specified as a clamped real number.
- If no parameters are specified, the line attributes are set as follows: line ends are butt, line joins are mitered and the miter limit is 5. This is equivalent to the command LA1, 1, 2, 1, 3, 5;



Miter limit = Miter length / Line width

- Labels are always drawn with rounded ends and joins.
- An LA command remains in effect until another LA command is issued, until default settings are restored with the DF command, or until the printer is initialized with an IN command.

```
10 '-Line Attributes-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA4000,3000;PW2;LA1,3;PD3500,2500,4000,2000;"
70 LPRINT "PU3500,200;LA2,2,3,20;PD3000,2500,3000,2300;"
80 LPRINT "PU2500,2300;LA1,4;PD3500,2300;"
90 LPRINT "PU2700,2100;PD3300,2100;"
100 LPRINT "PU2900,1900;PD3100,1900;"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END

<Sample 40>
```

LT - Line Type Selection

LT [, *n* [, *p* [,*m*]]] [;]

n ; Line pattern number
p ; Line pattern length (percentage or millimeters of distance between P1 and P2)
m : mode

- This command specifies the line pattern for use when drawing lines with the vector group commands.
- *n* defines the line type to be used. *n* is either in the range -8 to 8 or is 99.
- Values of *n* from 1 to 8 specify a line type (as defined with the UL command) and use a fixed pattern length. Any residual part of the pattern not used on a particular drawing operation is stored and used at the start of the next line drawn.
- Values of n from -1 to -8 specify a line type (as defined with the UL command) and use an adaptive pattern length - that is, the pattern is scaled so as to fit one or more complete patterns into the line.
- If n is 0, a dot is placed at the (X, Y) coordinates specified with any vector commands used.
- *p*, the pattern length, specifies the length of one complete pattern, either as a percentage of the distance between P1 and P2, or in millimeters. The unit system used is determined by the mode setting. If the length is omitted, the printer uses the most recently specified pattern length.
- If a zero or negative pattern length is specified, the command is ignored.
- *m*, the mode, defines whether the pattern length parameter, p, is interpreted as a reading in millimeters, (m=1), or as a percentage of the distance between P1 and P2, (m=0). If no mode number is included in the command, the most recently specified mode is used.
- LT99; restores the previous line type (and, if it is a fixed line type, the residue), provided that the current line type is solid and that the pen position is the same as it was when the current, solid line type was selected.
- An LT command remains in effect until another LT command is issued, until the default settings are restored with the DF command, or until the printer is initialized with an IN command.
- If no parameters are specified the line type is set to be solid. The previous line type, pattern length and any line residue are saved.

```
10 ' - Line Type -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;IP1000,1000,9000,7000;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA2000,7100;PDPR400,0;PU;" 'REM DEFAULT LINE = 400
70 LPRINT "LT8;PA2000,7000;PD5000,7000;PU;"
80 LPRINT "LT8,4,0;PA2000,6900;PD5000,6900;PU;"
90 LPRINT "LT8,8,1;PA2000,6800;PD5000L6800;PU;"
100 '
110 LPRINT "LT4,PA2000,6600;PD5000,6600;PU;"
120 LPRINT "LT4,4,0;PA2000;6500;PD5000;6600;PU;"
130 LPRINT "LT4,10,1;PA2000,6400;PD5000,6400;PU;"
140 '
150 LPRINT "LT0;PA2000,6300;PD5000,6200; PU;"
160 LPRINT "LT0,4,0;PA2000,6100;PD5000,61000;PU;"
170 LPRINT "LT0,10,1;PA2000,6000;PD5000,6000;PU;"
180 '
190 LPRINT "LT-4;PA2000,5800;PD5000,5800;PU;"
200 LPRINT "LT-4,4,0;PA2000,5700;PD5000;5700;PU;"
210 LPRINT "LT-4,10,1;PA2000,5600;PD5000,5600;PU;"
220 '
230 LPRINT "LT-8;PA2000,5400;PD5000,5400;PU;"
240 LPRINT "LT-8,4,0;PA2000,5300;PD5000,5300;PU;"
250 LPRINT "LT08,10,1;PA2000,5200;PD5000,5200;PU;"
260 '
270 LPRINT "LT99;PA2000,5000;PD5000,5000;PU;"
280 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
290 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
300 END
```

<Sample 41>

PW - Pen Width

PW [*w*, [,*p*]] [;]

w ; width
p ; pen

- This command specifies the width of the pen.
- Pen width can either be specified as a fixed width in millimeters (the default) or relative to the distance between the scaling points P1 and P2.
- If a width of zero is specified the thinnest width possible (1 dot wide) is set.
- Metric widths are scaled by the ratio of the PCL picture frame to the HP-GL/2 plot size. If the ratio for the two axes is different, the smaller one is used. If this is less than the thinnest width available then a width of 1 dot is selected.
- If no pen number is specified the new width applies to both pens.
- If a pen number other than 0 or 1 is specified the command is ignored. There are six pens in the specification.
- If no parameters are specified the pen width defaults to either 0.35mm or 0.1% of the distance from P1 to P2 according to the current width unit setting.
- Pen width settings are not affected by a DF command.
- Pen width does not set the width of the lines that make up the characters in a label.
- A PW command remains in effect until another PW command is issued, until a WU command is used, or until the printer is initialized with an IN command.

```
10 '-Pen Width-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA3500,2500;PW1.5;"
70 LPRINT "PD4500,2800,4500,1800,3500,1500,3500,2500;"
80 LPRINT "PW0.8;PD2300,2900,2300,1900,3500,1500;"
90 LPRINT "PW0.5;PU2300,2900;PD3300,3200,4500,2800;"
100 LPRINT "PW0.25:PU4500,1800;PD3500,2100;"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END

<Sample 42>
```

RF - Raster Fill Definition

RF [*i* [, *w*, *h*, *p* [,...]]] [;]

i : index *w* : width
p: pen number *h* : height

- This command defines a rectangular pattern which may be used to fill the area.
- *i* is the index number of the pattern that is to be defined and must be in the range 1-8. 8 patterns can exist concurrently.
- If used with an index parameter and no others, the pattern is defined as a solid black fill.
- *w* is the width in pixels of the pattern that is to be defined and must be in the range 1- 255.
- *h* is the height in pixels of the pattern that is to be defined an must be in the range 1 - 255.
- *p* stands for a pixel in the defined fill. *p* = 0 signifies a white pixel, *p*>0 signifies a black pixel. The number of pixels specified should equal the number of pixels in the fill pattern (*w*, *h*). The parameter defines successive pixels' colors from left to right, top to bottom. If you do not supply enough pixel parameters the trailing pixels default to white.
- Use the FT command to select a fill type from those defined with the RF command.
- Omitting parameters sets all raster fill patterns to solid fill.

```
10 '--Raster Fill Definition==
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PU5,5;PA3500,2500;"
70 LPRINT
"RF2,8,4,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,1,0,0,0,0,0,1,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,
0,;"
80 LPRINT "FT11,2;RR4000,800;EP;"
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
110 END

<Sample 43>
```

SM - Symbol Mode

SM *c*[;]

c ; ASCII character or symbol code

- The command specifies the symbol to be drawn.
- The specified symbol will be drawn at the end of each vector, irrespective of whether the pen is up or down, when the PA, PR, PD, PU or PE instructions are used.
- Characters in the character code ranges 33 - 58, 60 - 126 and characters 161 and 254 can be used.
- Character code 59 stands for the ';', which is the HP-GL/2 terminator. You cannot use it as a symbol.
- The current character size, slant and direction settings affect the way the symbol is drawn.
- Omitting the parameter cancels the symbol mode.
- On quitting symbol mode the original pen up/down state is restored.

SP - Select Pen

SP [*n*] [;]

n ; pen number

- The command selects a pen for drawing.
- You must use this command before performing any drawing or filling commands.
- *n* should be either 0 or 1 (although any other integers will be interpreted as 1.)
- If *n* is 0 the white pen is selected. In this case drawing commands will have no effect, unless you are plotting onto a dark background and transparency mode is off.
- If *n* is 1 the black pen is selected and printing can proceed normally. Use SP1; at the start of HP-GL/2 programs.
- Invoking the command with no parameter is equivalent to SP0;.

SV - Screened Vectors

SV [*s* [, *option*_1[, *option*_2]]] [;]

s : screen type
option_1 and *option_2:* dependent on the screen type

- This command selects the type of screening that will be applied to vectors, arcs, circles and edges of polygons, rectangles and wedges.

- The screen type must have the value 0, 1, 2, 21, 22 or 130. 0 = no screen, 1 = shaded fill (one of eight gray scales), 2 = raster fill as defined by the RF command, 21 = a pre-defined PCL cross-hatch pattern and 130 = shaded fill (one of sixty-four gray scales).

- With screen type 1 *option_1* specifies the percentage of shading (0-100): *option_2* is ignored.

- With screen type 2 *option_1* is used to specify the index number of the fill pattern created using the RF command. *Option_2* is set to either 0 or 1: 0 means that the fill will appear in the colour of pen number 1, 1 means it should appear in the current pen's colour.

- With screen type 21 *option 1* specifies one of six predefined PCL cross-hatch patterns (patterns 1 - 6). *option 2* is ignored.

- With screen type 22, *option 1* specifies the ID number of PCL user-defined pattern which is defined by the ESC*c#W command. *option 2* is ignored.

- With fill screen type 130 *option 1* specifies the percentage of shading (0 - 100): *option 2* is ignored.

- If *option 1* and *option 2* are omitted, the most recently specified values for these parameters, for the specified screen type, are used.

- All screening patterns use the current anchor corner.

- Invoking the command with no parameter turns screening off. This is equivalent to SV0;

```
10 '-Screened Vectors-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SV1,15;PA4000,5000;CI500;"
70 LPRINT "SV1,50;PA5000,4000;CI400;"
80 LPRINT "SV1,100;PA6000,6000;CI300;"
90 LPRINT "PW10;SV21,5;PA2000,1000;PD;AA0,0,90;PC;"
100 LPRINT "PW5;SV21,3;PA6000,6000;CI500;"
110 LPRINT "PW7;SV21,6;PA2000,8000;PDPA5000,8000;PU;"
120 LPRINT "PW7;SV21,6;PA2000,8000;PDPA5000,8000;PU;"
130 LPRINT "1,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,1,";
140 LPRINT "0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1,0,0,";
150 LPRINT "0,0,0,0,1,1,0,0,0,0,";
160 LPRINT "0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1,0,0,";
170 LPRINT "1,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,1;";
180 LPRINT
"PW15;SV2,3;PA4000,2000;PM0;PD6000,2000,6000,4000,4000,4000;PM1;PM2;EP;
"
190 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
200 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
210 END

<Sample 44>
```

TR - Transparency Mode

TR [*n*] [;]

n ; transparency type

- This command turns transparency mode on and off. Transparency mode defines how source and destination graphics images interact.
- *n* is either 0 (off) or 1(on).
- When transparency mode is on, the white parts of a source image (the image that is being superimposed on the destination image) do not affect the destination image - that is, part of the destination image will be visible beneath the source image.
- When transparency mode is off the destination image is not visible beneath the source image.
- Invoking the command with no parameter turns transparency mode on. This is equivalent to TR1;
- An Esc E reset, a control panel reset, the IN command and the DF command all turn transparency mode on.

```
10 'Transparency Mode-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0b";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 'PART1 TR1
70 'Original Destination 1
80 LPRINT "TR1;PA1900,4900;PM0;PM3100;4900,2500,6100;PM1;"
90 LPRINT "PM2;FP;"
100 'Source 1
110 LPRINT "FT10,50;PA2000,5000;RR500,500;PA2500,5500;RR500,500;"
120 LPRINT "FT10,1;PA2500,5000;RR500,500;PA2000,5500;RR500,500;FT;"
130 'PART2 TR0
140 'Original Destination 2
150 LPRINT "TR0;PA3900,4900;PM0;PA5100,4900,4500,6100;PM1;"
160 LPRINT "PM2;FP;"
170 'Source 2
180 LPRINT "FT10,50;PA4000,5000;RR500,500;PA4500,5500;RR500,500;"
190 LPRINT "FT10,1;PA4500,5000;RR500,500;PA4000,5500;RR500,500;FT;"
200 '
210 '( POLYGON )
220 LPRINT "PA2000,1000;PM0;PDPA4000,1000,3000,3000;PM1;"
230 LPRINT "PA2500,1200,3500,1200,3000,2500;PM1;"
240 LPRINT "PA3000,800,3700,2500,2300,2500;PM1;"
250 LPRINT "PM2;FP;"
260 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
270 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
280 END

<Sample 45>
```

UL - User-defined Line Type

UL [*i*] [,*g* [...,]] [;]

i ; unit type
g : gap length

- This command allows you to define line types which you can then subsequently select with the LT command.
- *i* must be in the range 1-8. *i* identifies the line type that is to be defined.
- The index parameter uses absolute values.
- *g* (the gap length) alternately specifies pen up and pen down parts of the defined line type. A maximum of twenty line sections are permitted, the first of which is a pen down section. Numbers must be integers in the range 0~32767. These numbers are converted to percentages by the LT command.
- Maximum definition for the gap of each line type is 20.
- The sum of the gap parameters must be greater than 0.
- Specifying an index number with no gap parameters sets the line type to the default pattern for that index number.
- Using the command with no parameter sets all line types to the defaults.

```
10 '-User Defined Line Type-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;;"
60 LPRINT "UL8,0,15,0,15,0,15,40,15;"
70 LPRINT "LT8,5;PA2000,2500;PDPA5000,2500;PU;"
80 LPRINT "UL4,40,15,0,15,0,15,40,15,0,15;"
90 LPRINT "LT4,10;PA2000,3000;PDPA5000,3000;PU;"
100 LPRINT "UL1,40,40,40,40,40;"
110 LPRINT "LT1,10;PA2000,3500;PDPA5000,3500;PU;"
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
140 END

<Sample 46>
```

WU - Select Unit for Pen Width

WU [*t*] [;]

t ; unit type

- This command specifies the pen width unit. It applies to all pens.
- *t* must be either 0 or 1.
- If t is 0 the pen width parameter which accompanies subsequent PW commands will be treated as a reading in millimeters.
- If t is 1 the pen width parameter which accompanies subsequent PW commands will be treated as percentage of the distance between the scaling points P1 and P2. The default width is 0.1% of the diagonal distance from P1 to P2.
- The command sets all pen widths to a default of 0.35mm. Hence it should be used before the PW command.
- Using the command with no parameter defaults the type to 0 (metric) and all pen widths to 0.35mm.
- The unit type is not affected by a DF command.

```
10 '-Pen Width Unit Selection-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 'metric
70 LPRINT PA2000,6000;PDPA6000,6000;PU;" 'Default 0.35mm
80 LPRINT "WU0;PA2000,5700;PDPA6000,5700;PU;"'0.35mm
90 LPRINT "WU0;PW1.5;PA2000,5400;PDPA6000,5400;PU;"'1.5mm
100 LPRINT "WU0;PW0.8;PA2000,5100;PDPA6000,5100;PU;"'0.8mm
110 "-relative unit
120 LPRINT "PW;PA2000,4600;PDPA6000,4600;PU;"'Default 0.35mm=4dot
130 LPRINT "IP1000,1000,9000,7000;"
140 LPRINT "WU1;PA2000,4300;PDPA6000,4300;PU;"'300*10/1016=2dot
150 LPRINT "IP1000,1000,5000,4000;"
160 LPRINT "WU1;PA2000,4000;PDPA6000,4000;PU;"'300*5/1016=1dot
170 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
180 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
190 END

<Sample 47>
```

6.6. Character Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function
SD	Define Standard Font
AD	Define Alternate Font
SS	Select Standard Font
SA	Select Alternate Font
FI	Select Primary Font
FN	Select Secondary Font
LB	Define Label
DT	Define Label Terminator
LO	Label Origin
DI	Absolute Direction
DR	Relative Direction
DV	Define Variable Text Path
CP	Character Plot
CF	Character Fill Mode
SI	Set Absolute Character Size
SR	Set Relative Character Size
SL	Set Character Slant
SB	Scalable or Bitmap Fonts
ES	Extra Space
TD	Transparent Data

Introduction

The character group commands enable you to print text to accompany your HP-GL/2 generated graphics without leaving graphics mode. You can use any font that would be available to you in LaserJet emulation mode, and you can modify various printing characteristics of the text, for example the size, direction and slant of the characters.

SD - Define Standard Font

SD [*attribute, value*] [..] [;]

attribute ; a font attribute to be defined
value ; the value of the attribute

- This command allows you to define the standard font and its attribute.
- attribute takes a value from 1-7. 1=symbol set, 2=spacing, 3=pitch, 4=height, 5=posture, 6=stroke weight and 7=typeface.
- value selects an option for the specified attribute.
- If the defined font is not available another font is selected that matches the defined font's specified attributes as closely as possible. The symbol set attribute has the highest priority for matching, and typeface has the lowest.
- If you omit all parameters, the default standard font attributes are used. These are shown below.

Attribute	Meaning	Default value	Description
1	Symbol set	277	Roman-8
2	Spacing	0	Monospacing
3	Pitch	9	9 cpi
4	Height	11.5	11.5 point
5	Posture	0	Upright characters
6	Stroke weight	0	Medium
7	Typeface	48	Stick font

- attribute = 1 : Symbol set

Value	Name	ISO number	Value	Name	ISO number
1	Math - 7	-	2	Line Draw - 7	-
3	HP Large Characters	-	4	Norwegian v1	60
5	Roman Extensions	-	6	French v1	25
7	HP German	-	8	Hebrew - 7	-
9	Italian	15	11	JIS ASCII	14
12	Line Draw - 7	-	13	Math - 7	-
14	ECMA-94 Latin1 (8-bit version)	8859/1	15	OCR - A	-
16	APL (typewriter paired)	-	18	Cyrillic ASCII	-
19	Swedish for names	11	20	Thai - 8	-
21	ASCII	6	22	Arabic (MacKay's Version)	-
25	3 of 9 Barcode	-	26	Not used	-
36	Danish/Norwegian v2	61	37	United Kingdom	4
38	French v2	69	39	German	21
43	Katakana	13	44	HP Block Characters	-
45	Tech - 7	-	47	OCR - B	-
48	APL (bit paired)	-	50	Cyrillic	-
51	HP Spanish	-	53	Legal	-
57	Industrial 2 of 5 Barcode	-	75	Chinese	57
76	Tax Line Draw	-	78	ECMA-94 Latin 2	8859/2
79	OCR-M	-	83	Spanish	17
85	International Reference Version	2	89	Matrix 2 of 5 Barcode	-
114	PC Cyrillic	-	115	Swedish	10
147	Portuguese	16	153	Interleaved 2 of 5 Barcode	-
173	PS Math	-	174	ECMA-128 Latin 5	8859/9
179	Portuguese	84	181	HPL Language Set	-
185	CODABAR Barcode	-	202	Microsoft Publishing	-
205	Ventura Math	-	211	Spanish	85
217	MSI/Plessey Barcode	-	234	DeskTop	-
243	HP European Spanish	-	249	Code 11 Barcode	-
263	Greek - 8	-	264	Hebrew - 8	-
266	Document	-	267	Kana - 8	-
268	Line Draw 8	-	269	Math - 8	-
275	HP Latin Spanish	-	276	Turkish - 8	-
277	Roman - 8 (Default)	-	278	Arabic - 8	-
281	UPC/EAN Barcode	-	299	Korean - 8	-
309	Windows	-	330	PS Text	-
332	PS ITC Zapf Dingbats	-	334	ECMA-113/88 Latin/Cyrillic	8859/5.2
341	PC-8	-	373	PC-8 D/N	-
405	PC-850	-	428	ITC Zapf Dingbats Series 300	-
458	Ventura U.S.	-	501	Pi Font	-
505	USPS Zip	-	531	HP-GL Download	-
563	HP-GL Drafting	-	595	HP-GL Special Symbols	-

- attribute = 2 : Spacing

Value	Meaning
0	Monospacing
1	Proportional spacing

- attribute = 3 : Pitch

  Specify pitch in characters per inch (cpi). The pitch value you specify can be in the range 0 to 32767.9999. Pitch only applies to monospaced fonts.

- attribute = 4 : Height

  Specify height in points. One point is 1/72". The height value you specify can be in the range 0 to 32767.9999. Proportionally spaced fonts are scaled according to the height you select. Monospaced fonts ignore this setting value.

- attribute = 5 : Posture

value	Meaning
0	Upright
1	Italic
2	Alternate italic

- attribute = 6 : Stroke weight

Attribute	Meaning
-7	Ultra Thin
-6	Extra thin
-5	thin
-4	Extra light
-3	Light
-2	Demi light
-1	Semi light
0	Medium, Book or Text
1	Semi bold
2	Demi bold
3	Bold
4	Extra bold
5	Black
6	Extra black
7	Ultra black
9999	Stick font at current pen width*

* This attribute value is only effective if the stick font is the current font.

- attribute = 7 : Typeface

  You can select any typefaces available in LaserJet mode, from the internal fonts, card/cartridge fonts or download fonts.

```
10 '-Standard Font Definition-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA2200,7000;SD2,0,4,11.5,5,0;"
70 LPRINT "DT#;LBLaser printer#"
80 LPRINT "PA2000,5000;SD2,1,4,20,5,1;"
90 LPRINT "LBLaser printer#"
100 LPRINT "PA1000,3000;SD2,1,4,50,5,1;"
110 LPRINT "LBLASER PRINTER#"
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 LPRINT CHR$927); "%0A";
140 END
```

<Sample 48>

AD - Define Alternate Font

AD [*attribute, value*] [..] [;]

attribute : a font attribute to be defined
value : the value of the attribute

- This command allows you to define the alternate font and its attribute.
- attribute takes a value from 1-7.
  1 = symbol set, 2 = spacing, 3 = pitch, 4 = height, 5 = posture, 6 = stroke weight and 7 = typeface.
- value selects an option for the specified attribute. For further explanation about attribute values, see the previous SD command.
- If the defined font is not available, another font is selected that matches the defined font's specified attributes as closely as possible. The symbol set attribute has the highest priority for matching, and typeface has the lowest.
- If you omit all parameters, the default alternate font attributes are used.

```
10 '-Define Alternate Font -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 '- Standard font -
70 LPRINT "PA1000,5000;"
80 LPRINT "LBStandard font"; CHR$(3);
90 ' - Alternate font -
100 LPRINT "AD2,1,4,24,7,4101;"
110 LPRINT "PA1000,4000;"
120 LPRINT "SA";
130 LPRINT "LBAlternate font"; CHR$(3);
140 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
160 END

<Sample 49>
```

SS - Select Standard Font

SS [;]

- This command allows you to select the standard font, as defined by the SD command. All subsequently printed labels will appear in the standard font.
- The SS command is equivalent to including the SI control code (ASCII 15) in a label.
- The default standard font is the HP-GL stick font.
- The font remains current until the printer is initialized with an IN command, until the default conditions are resorted with the DF command, or until an SA command is used.

SA - Select Alternate Font

SA [;]

- This command allows you to select the alternate font, as defined by the AD command. All subsequently printed labels will appear in the alternate font
- The SA command is equivalent to including the SO control code (ASCII 14) in a label.
- The font remains current until the printer is initialized with an IN command, until the default conditions are restored with the DF command, or until an SS command is used.

FI - Select Primary Font

FI font-ID [;]

font-ID ; the identity number of any accessible font.

- This command allows you to select any accessible font, which has previously been given an identity number in LaserJet mode, as the primary (standard) font. All subsequently printed labels will appear in the primary font.
- For scalable fonts this command must be preceded by an SD command specifying the font's point size or pitch.
- When the FI command is issued the primary (standard) font's attributes are set to be those of the selected font (provided it is available).

```
10 '-Select Primary Font & Select standard Font -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "*c15D";
50 LPRINT CHR$(27); "(s1p18v0s3b52T";
60 LPRINT CHR$(27); "*c6F";
70 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
80 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
90 LPRINT "PA1500,1500;DT#;LBLaser Printer"; CHR$(13);CHR$(10); "#"
100 LPRINT "SD4,18;FI15;LBLaser Printer#"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END

<Sample 50>
```

FN - Select Secondary Font

FN *font-ID* [;]

font-ID : the identity number of any accessible font

- This command allows you to select any accessible font, which has previously been given an identity number in PCL mode, as the secondary (alternate) font. All subsequently printed labels will appear in the secondary font.
- For scalable fonts the FN command must be preceded by an AD command specifying the font's point size or pitch.
- When the FN command is issued the secondary (alternate) font's attributes are set to be those of the selected font (provided it is available).

LB - Character Plot

LB [cs] < terminator > [;]

cs : character string

- This command enables you to print character strings.
- You must supply a terminator at the end of your string. You can either use the default terminator, ETX (ASCII 3), or define your own terminating character using the DT command.
- A label can include non-printing characters such as a carriage return or line feed.
- Printing takes place irrespective of whether the pen is currently up or down.
- The label is printed starting from the current cursor position and using any label origin setting that you have made with the LO command.

```
10 '-Label-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA2500,2500;DT*;"
70 LPRINT "SD1,21,2,1,4,25,5,0,6,3,7,52;SS;"
80 LPRINT "LBLaser printer*"
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
110 END

<Sample 51>
```

DT - Define Label Terminator

DT [*c* [, *m*]] [;]

c : Character
m : mode

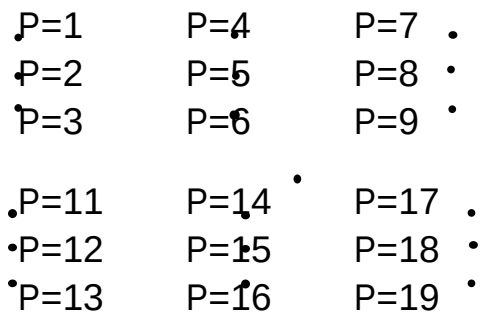
- This command allows you to specify the character that terminates strings printed with the LB instruction.
- The character immediately following DT is taken to be the terminator. Hence, do not put a space between the DT and your chosen character. If you do, space will be interpreted as the terminator in all subsequent LB commands.
- *m*, the mode, determines whether the terminating character is printed as part of the label or not. If m = 0 the character is printed ; if m = 1 it is not.
- If you do not specify a value for m the terminating character is not printed.
- If you leave out the character parameter the default character ETX (ASCII 3) is used as the terminator.
- This setting is effective until the another DT is invoked or IN or DF is performed.

```
10 REM - Define Label Terminator -
20 WIDTH "LPT:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP2;";
60 LPRINT "IN;SP2;SC0,5000,0,5000;"
70 LPRINT "PA0,4500;LBDefault control character ETX"; CHR$(13);CHR$(3);
80 LPRINT "LBterminates by performing end-"; CHR$(13);CHR$(3);
90 LPRINT "LBof-text function.";CHR$(3);
100 LPRINT "PA0,3500;DT@;LBPrinting characters terminate,"; CHR$(13);
"@";
110 LPRINT "LBbut are also printed.@";
120 LPRINT "PA0,3000;DT"; CHR$(7); "LBcontrol characters terminate";
CHR$(13);chr(7);
130 LPRINT "LBand perform their function."; CHR$(7)
140 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%01";
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
160 END

<Sample 52>
```

LO - Label Origin

LO [*p*] [;]

- This instruction allows you to position labels in different ways relative to the current pen location.
- You can centre, left justify or right justify labels relative to the current pen location, and print them on, above or below the current location.
- You can combine an offset distance, equal to 25% of the current font's point size, with any of the above origin positions.
- *p* must either be in the range 1 - 9, 11 - 10 and 21. The label origin position specified by each *p* parameter value is shown below. 21 sets the label origin to the same one in PCL.



- When you use an LO instruction the carriage return point is set to be the new label origin. To send the pen back to a label's origin when you have finished printing it, include a carriage return between the last character of the label and the terminating character.
- If a label contains embedded carriage returns, each character string following a carriage return is printed starting from the label origin.
- If you omit the parameter the label origin is the bottom left hand corner of the first character's character cell - equivalent to LO11;.
- The command remains in effect until the printer is initialized with an IN command, until the default conditions are restored with the DF command. or until another LO command is used.

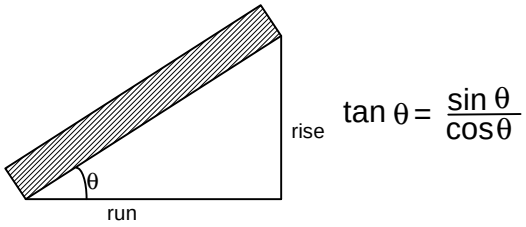
```
10 '-Label Origin-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP;";
60 LPRINT "SC-4000,4000,-5000,5000;SI0.17,0.26;"
70 LPRINT "PA0,500;PD-500,0,0,-500,500,0,0,500;DT#;"
80 LPRINT "CI10;LO4;LBCentred on point#"
90 LPRINT "PU-500,0;CI10;LO18;LBleft centre offset#"
100 LPRINT "PU0,-500;CI10;LO13;LBRight offset from point#"
110 LPRINT "PA500,0;CI10;LO3;LBright hang from point#"
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
140 END

<Sample 53>
```

DI - Absolute Direction

DI [*run*, *rise*] [;]

run : X direction component
rise : Y direction component

- This command determines the direction in which subsequent labels will be printed.
- $\frac{rise}{run}$ gives the tangent of the angle between the base line of a label's characters and the horizontal.
- *run* is equivalent to cos θ and *rise* is equivalent to sin θ.



- Values for run and rise are clamped real numbers.
- When you issue a DI instruction the carriage return point is set to the current pen location.
- The instruction is ignored if *run* and *rise* are both 0.
- Any text path that you set with the DV instruction will combine with the current printing direction to determine the layout of characters on the page.
- If you omit the parameters the printing direction is horizontal.
- The label direction which is specified by this command is not affected by changes in the location of P1 and P2.

```
10 ' -Absolute Direction -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 DEG = -45
70 RAD = 3.1416 / 180 * DEG
80 LPRINT "IN;SP2;PA3050,4450;"
90 LPRINT "DT";"
100 LPRINT "DT0,2;LB_*_1988#"; "DI2,2;LB_*_1989#";
110 LPRINT "DT2,0;LB_*_1990#"; "DI2,-2;LB_*_1991#";
120 LPRINT "DT0,-2;LB_*_1992#"; "DI-2,-2;LB_*_1993#";
130 LPRINT "DT-2,0;LB_*_1994#"; "DI-2,2;LB_*_1995#";
140 LPRINT "PA3500,5350;DI", COS(0),SIN(0); "LB_*_2000"; CHR$(13); "#";
150 LPRINT "DI", COS(RAD); SIN(RAD); "LB_RETURN POINT"; CHR$(13); "#";
160 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
170 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
180 END

<sample 54>
```

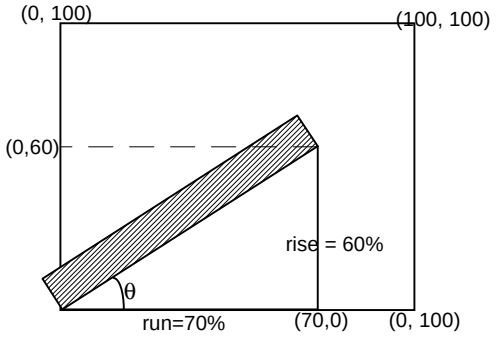
DR - Relative Direction

DR [*run*, *rise*] [;]

run : X-component of the printing direction expressed as a percentage of the x-component of the distance between P1 and P2.
rise : Y-component of the printing direction expressed as a percentage of the y-component of the distance between P1 and P2.

- This command determines the direction in which subsequent labels will be printed.
- Values for *run* and *rise* are clamped real numbers.
- The instruction is ignored if *run* and *rise* are both 0.
- When you issue a DR instruction the carriage return point is set to the current pen location.
- Any text path that you set with the DV instruction will combine with the current printing direction determine the layout of characters on the page.
- If you change the positions of P1 and P2 the printing direction will change accordingly.
- If you omit the parameters the printing direction is horizontal and the *run* = 1% of |P2X-P1X|.
- Actual values for *run* and *rise* are changed relative to the P1 and P2 value. It is calculated as below:

actual run = *run* parameter ÷ 100 x (P2x - P1x)
actual rise = *rise* parameter ÷ 100 x (P2y - P1y)



DV - Define Variable Text Path

DV [*path* [,*line*]] [;]

path : text printing path - horizontal or vertical, and left to right, right to left, upwards or downwards.
line: the effect of a line feed.

- This command determines the printing direction for labels and the carriage return point.

- Permissible values of *path* are 0, 1, 2 and 3. If *path* = 0 labels are printed horizontally and left to right - normal printing. If *path* = 1 labels are printed vertically downwards - characters appear in a vertical column. If *path* = 2 labels are printed horizontally and right to left - words appear backwards. If *path* = 3 labels are printed vertically upwards - characters appear in a vertical column, reading from bottom to top.

- The value of *line* must be either 0 or 1. If *line* = 0, each time a line feed is encountered the current pen position is moved at an angle of 90° to the path in a clockwise direction. Hence, if *path* = 1 the second line of text is printed to the left of the first line. If *line* = 1 each time a line feed is encountered the current pen position is moved at an angle of 90° to the path in an anticlockwise direction. Hence, if *path* = 2 the second line of text is printed below the first line.

- If you do not use a DV command the default text path is horizontal, left to right: line feeds will move the pen position at 90° to the text clockwise. This is equivalent to using the command DV0,0;

- If you omit both parameters the text path is horizontal, left to right.

CP - Relative Character Movement

CP [spaces [,lines]] [;]

spaces ; the number of text spaces the pen position is moved.
lines ; the number of text lines the pen position is moved.

- Use this command to re-position the pen. The command moves the pen the specified number of lines and spaces corresponding to the currently selected font's pitch and line spacing. (For proportionally spaced fonts the width of the space character is used to determine the distance moved horizontally). All movement is relative to the current label printing direction.

- *spaces* is the number of spaces that the pen moves. A positive value of *spaces* moves the pen right from the current pen location: a negative value moves it to the left.

- *lines* is the number of lines that the pen moves. A negative value offset moves the pen down from the current pen location: a positive value moves it upwards.

- Values for *spaces* and *lines* are clamped real numbers.

- The command only moves the pen and does not draw lines, irrespective of whether the pen is currently up or down.

- On completion of the command, the previous pen status (up or down) is restored.

- The height of text lines (the vertical distance that a line feed moves the pen position) is fixed for every font. However, it can be adjusted using the ES instruction.

- If you omit all parameters, the pen position moves to the carriage return point and then down one line - hence CP; is equivalent to a carriage return followed by a line feed.

```
10 '-Character Plot -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA1000,5000;";
70 LPRINT "PD;PR2000,0;PU;";
80 LPRINT "CP-15,1;";
90 LPRINT "LBAbove the line"; CHR$(3);
100 LPRINT "CP-14,-2;";
110 LPRINT "LBBelow the line"; CHR$(3);
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
130 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
140 END

<Sample 55>
```

CF - Character Fill Mode

CF [*fill* [, *pen*]] [;]

fill : the fill pattern used to fill characters
pen : the pen used to edge characters

- This command determines how characters are edged and filled.
- Only scalable fonts can be both filled and edged - bitmap fonts and the stick font cannot be edged and can only be filled with raster fill, shading or PCL cross-hatch patterns. Scalable characters can be filled with any pattern specified by the FT command.
- Permissible values of *fill* are 0, 1, 2 and 3. If *fill* = 0 characters are filled with a solid fill and edged. If *fill* = 1 characters are edged but not filled. (Bitmap characters and stick font characters are filled as they cannot be edged.) If *fill* = 2 characters are filled using the current fill type, but not edged. If *fill* = 3 characters are filled, using the current fill type, and edged.
- *pen* can be either 0 or 1. A value of 0 specifies the edging pen to be white; a value of 1 selects the black pen for edging. If no pen is specified in the instruction the current pen, as selected with the SP command, is used.
- The width of the edging pen is proportional to the character's point size.
- The fill line width used for cross hatch patterns is set with the PW command.
- If you omit both parameters, solid fill and the white edging pen are selected - this is equivalent to CF0.0;
- If the command is not used all characters are solid and unedged.
- A CF command remains in effect until an IN command is used to initialize the printer, a DF command is used to restore the default settings, or another CF command is invoked.

```
10 '-Character Fill Mode -
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SD1,21,2,1,4,140,5,0,6,3,7,52;SS;"
70 LPRINT "PA1000,3000;DT*;FT3,50,45;"
80 LPRINT "CF1,1;LBA*;"
90 LPRINT "PW0.1;CF3,1;LBB*;"
100 LPRINT "PW0.5;LBC*;"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END
```

<sample 56>

SI - Set Absolute Character Size

SI [*width*, *height*] [;]

width : the width in centimeters of printed characters
height : the height in centimeters of printed characters

- This command allows you to specify the size of the characters that you print with the LB instruction in centimeters.
- *width* specifies character width and is a clamped real number. Negative values of width produce right-to-left mirror image characters.
- *height* specifies the height of a capital letter and is a clamped real number. Negative values of height produce upside-down mirror image characters.
- If you change character size, the line width used to draw stick font characters may also change.
- If you omit the parameters, the character size is as specified by the most recent SD or AD command.
- If an SB1; command has previously been issued, printed characters may not be exactly the size that you specify.
- If an SB1; command has been issued, specifying a negative value will not produce mirror image characters.

```
10 ' -Absolute Character Size-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "PA700,3000;DT#;LBPrinter#"
70 LPRINT "PA700,2000;SI0.75,1;LBPrinter#"
80 LPRINT "SI;SD1,21,2,1,3,12,5,0,6,0,7,52;SS;"
90 LPRINT "PA40003000;LBPrinter#"
100 LPRINT "PA4000,2000;SI1,1.5;LBPrinter#"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
130 END

<Sample 57>
```

SR - Set Relative Character Size

SR [*width*, *height*] [;]

width ; the width of printed characters expressed as a percentage of the x-component of the distance between P1 and P2.
height ; the height of printed characters expressed as a percentage of the y-component of the distance between P1 and P2.

- This command allows you to specify the size of the character that you print with the LB instruction, relative to the scaling points P1 and P2.
- *width* sets the character width to a percentage of |P2x-P1x| and is a clamped real number. Negative values of width produce right-to-left mirror image characters
- *height* sets the character height to a percentage of |P2y-P2y| and is a clamped real number. Negative values of height produce upside-down mirror image character.
- If you change the positions of P1 and P2, the character size will change unless the scaling points remain in the same relative positions.
- If you move P2 to the left of, or below P1, characters will appear in mirror image.
- If you change the character size, the line width used to draw stick font characters may also change.
- If you omit the parameters, the character size is as specified by the most recent SD or AD command.

```
10 '-Relative Character Size-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "IP2000,2000,6500,6500;DT@;"
70 LPRINT "SR;PA0,2700;LBRELATIVE LABEL SIZE@"
80 LPRINT "IP0,0,5500,5500;PA0,2000;"
90 LPRINT "LBNEW P1 AND P2 CHANGE LABEL SIZE@"
100 LPRINT "PA0,1000;SR2.5;LBNEW SR INSTRUCTION`;CP;"
110 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
120 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
140 END

<Sample 58>
```

SL - Character Slant

SL [tan ϕ] [;]

tan ϕ - tangent of character slant angle (ϕ)

- This command determines the slant of characters printed with subsequent LB commands.
- ϕ is the angle between characters and the vertical. A positive value of ϕ (and tan ϕ) produces forward sloping characters, while a negative value results in characters which slant backwards.
- Values of tan ϕ are clamped real numbers.
- A value of 0 for tan ϕ results in upright characters.
- If you omit the parameter, tan ϕ is take to be 0 and any characters printed will be upright.

```
10 ' -Character Slant-
20 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27; "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;";
60 LPRINT "SD1,21,2,1,4,25,5,0,6,0,7,5;SI0.7,1;"
70 LPRINT "PA1000,1000;DT#,1;SL0.36,LBPrinter#"
80 LPRINT "PA1000,300;SL-0.36;LBPrinter#"
90 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
100 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
110 END
```

<Sample 59>

SB - Scalable or Bitmap Fonts

SB [*n*] [;]

n : font category selection

- This command enables you to restrict the range of selectable fonts to scalable fonts and the stick font only.
- *n* can be 0 or 1. If *n* = 0 you may only select scalable fonts (or the stick font). If *n* = 1 you may select any type of font.
- An SB command can alter the current standard and alternate font selections.
- Setting *n* to 1 allows the selection of bitmapped fonts and has the following side-effects:
- Bitmap characters cannot be edged.
- Bitmap characters can only be printed in orientations of 0°, 90°, 180° or 270°.
- The SL (character slant) command is not applied to bitmap fonts.
- Bitmap font character sizes are approximate only.
- The DF and IN commands set n to 0, - only scalable fonts and the stick fonts may be selected.
- The FI and FN commands implicitly set n to 1 if you use either of them to select a bitmap font.
- If you omit n from the command, only scalable fonts and the stick font may be selected. This is equivalent to an SB0; command.
- The default setting is scalable fonts and stick font only.

ES - Extra Space

ES [*width* [,*height*]] [;]

width : factor by which character spacing is changed.
height : factor by which line spacing is changed

- This command enables you to adjust the space between label characters and lines.
- *width* specifies the factor by which to increase or decrease the character spacing. Positive numbers specify an increase and negative numbers a decrease.
- *height* specifies the factor by which to increase or decrease the line spacing. Positive numbers specify an increase and negative numbers a decrease.
- If you use the command without parameters, no extra space is used when labels are printed. This is equivalent to ES0,0;
- An ES command remains in effect until another ES command is executed, a DF or IN command is executed, or the printer is reset, either with the EscE command or from the control panel.

TD - Transparent Data

TD [*mode*] [;]

mode : normal or transparent data mode.

- This command enables you to specify whether control characters should perform their normal function or should be printed.
- *mode* is set to either 0 or 1. If *mode* is set to 0, control codes perform their normal functions and are not printed. If *mode*=1, all characters are printed, if possible. No control characters perform any function except the label terminator. Any non-printing or undefined characters appear as a space.
- If you use the command without parameters, control codes will perform their normal functions and will not be printed. This is equivalent to TD0;

```
10 '-Transparent Data-
20 WIDTH "LPT:", 255
30 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
40 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0B";
50 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
60 '-TD=1 (Transparent) -
70 LPRINT "PA1000,5000;LBMODE : TD1 (Transparent)"; CHR$(13)
80 LPRINT "<Print as characters when labeling>"; CHR$(3)
90 X=1000
100 FOR I = &H0 O &H8
110 LPRINT "SD1,341,2,1,4,10,7,5;PA";X;",4000;TD1;DT@;LB";CHR$(I);"@";
120 X = X + 150
130 NEXT I
140 LPRINT "TD0;"
150 LPRINT CHR$(27); "%0A";
160 LPRINT CHR$(27); "E";
170 END
```

<Sample 60>

CHAPTER 9
HP-GL
Graphics Language

Table of Contents

Initialization and default setting instructions

Instruction	Function	page
DF	Default Set Instruction	6
IN	Initialize Set Instruction	7

Plot area and unit setting instructions

Instruction	Function	page
IP	Scaling point	8
SC	Scale	8
IW	Input window	9
RO	Rotate coordinate system	9
PG	Page output	9

Pen Control and Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
PU	Pen Up	10
PD	Pen Down	11
PA	Plot Absolute	12
PR	Relative Coordinate Pen Move	13
AA	Absolute Arc Plot	14
AR	Relative Arc Plot	15
CI	Circle	16

The polygon group

Instruction	Function	page
EA	Edge Absolute Rectangle	18
ER	Edge Relative Rectangle	19
EW	Edge Wedge	20
RA	Fill Absolute Rectangle	21
RR	Fill Relative Rectangle	22
WG	Fill Wedge	23

Plot Function Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
FT	Fill Type	24
LT	Line Type	25
PW	Pen Width	25
SM	Symbol Mode	26
SP	Select Pen	26
TL	Tick Length	26
XT	X Tick	27
YT	Y Tick	27
PT	Pen Thickness	27

Character Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function	page
CS	Standard Set Definition	28
CA	Alternate Set Definition	28
SS	Select Standard Font	29
SA	Select Alternate Font	29
DT	Define Label Terminator	29
LB	Define Label	30
DI	Absolute Direction	30
DR	Relative Direction	31
CP	Character Plot	31
SI	Set Absolute Character Size	32
SR	Set Relative Character Size	33
SL	Set Character Slant	33
UC	User-defined Character	34

Dual Context Extensions

Instruction	Function	page
EscCRRO	Set HRC Off	35
EscCRRL	Set HRC to Light Level	35
EscCRRM	Set HRC to Medium Level	35
EscCRRD	Set HRC to Dark Level	34

User Reset

Instruction	Function	page
EscCR!#R	Restore to User Settings	35

Factory Reset

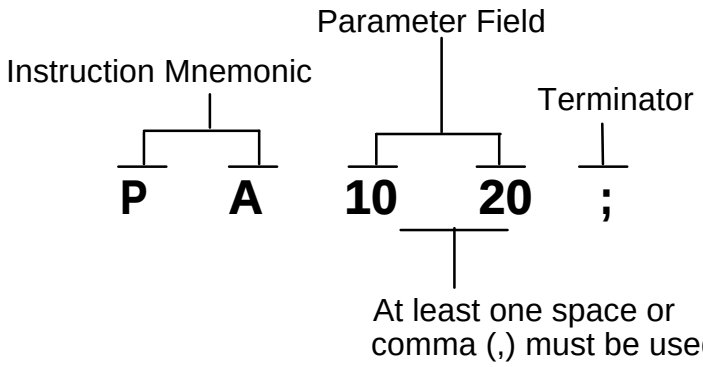
Instruction	Function	page
EscCRFD	Restore to Factory Settings	35

1. Introduction

The HP-GL graphics mode emulates 40 out of 56 instructions for the HP 7475A plotter made by Hewlett-Packard.
Default plating measurement in the HP-GL graphics mode is 1/1016"(0.025mm).

1.1. HP-GL Syntax

A command consists of a two-letter instruction mnemonic, a parameter field (not needed for some instructions), and a terminator. Parameters following the instruction mnemonic must be separated from each other by at least a single space or comma.



Numeric values used in the parameter field are in one of the following four formats.

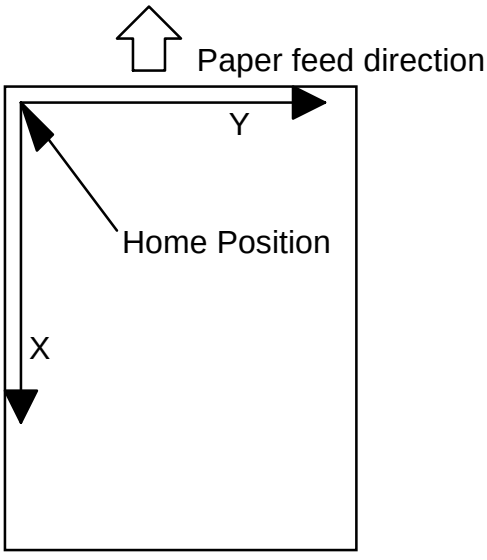
(1) Integer-integers between -2^{30} and $2^{30}-1$. Real numbers specified for a parameter that should be an integer are rounded to the nearest integer.
(2) Clamped integer- integers between -32768 and 32767. Values outside this range are converted to the nearest integer within the range. Real numbers are rounded to the nearest integer.
(3) Real - real numbers between -2^{30} and $2^{30}-1$.
(4) Clamped Real - real numbers between -32768 and 32767. Values outside this range are converted to the nearest real number within the range.

1.2. Font Selection

Eighteen character sets compatible with the HP 7454A are available.

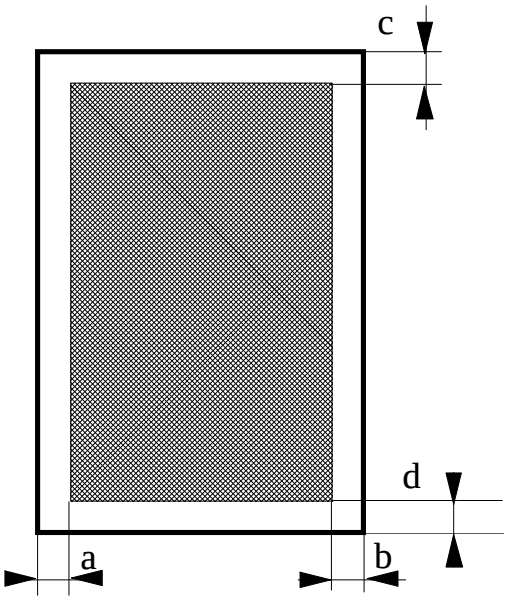
1.3. Coordinate System and Printing Area

1.3.1.Coordinate System



The home position is at the upper left corner of the area where printing is possible.

1.3.2. Printing Area



	a	b	c	d	(mm)
A4	4	5	5	5	
Letter	6	5	5	5	
Legal	6	5	5	5	

2. Commands

2.1. Initialization and Default Setting Instructions

DF - Default Set Instruction

DF[;]

- Returns the graphics mode to default conditions.
- The following are the default settings.

Function	Equivalent Instruction	Condition
Plot mode	PA;	Absolute plotting
Relative character direction	DR 1,0;	Horizontal
Line type	LT;	Solid line
Line pattern length	LT;	4% of distance from P1 to P2
Window	IW;	Set at limits of printable area according to paper size
Relative character size	SR;	Width=0.75% of |P2x - P1x| Height=1.5% of |P2y - P1y|
Symbol mode	SM;	Off
Tick length	TL;	X-axis: 0.5% of |P2y - P1y| Y-axis: 0.5% of |P2x - P1x|
Standard character set	CS 0;	Character set 0
Alternate character set	CA 0;	Character set 0
Character set	SS;	Standard character set selected
Character slant	SL 0;	0 degrees
Scaling	SC;	Off
Label terminator	DT chr$(3)	chr$(3)
Chord angle	-----	5 degrees
Fill type	FT;	Bidirectional fill, type 1
Fill distance	FT;	1% of distance from P1 to P2
Fill slant	FT;	0 degrees
Pen Thickness	PT;	Set at 0.3 mm

NOTE :The location of the scaling points(P1, P2) remains constant.

IN - Initialize Set Instruction

IN[;]

- Returns the graphics mode to initial conditions;

Function	Equivalent Instruction	Condition
Plot mode	PA;	Absolute
Relative character direction	DR 1,0;	Horizontal
Line type	LT;	Solid line
Line pattern length	LT;	4% of distance from P1 to P2
Window	IW;	Set at limits of printable area according to paper size
Relative character size	SR;	Width=0.75% of |P2x-P1X| Height=1.5% of |P2y-P1y |
Symbol mode	SM;	Off
Tick length	TL;	X-axis: 0.5% of |P2y-P1y | Y-axis: 0.5% of |P2x-P1x|
Standard character set	CS 0;	Character set 0
Alternate character set	CA 0;	Character set 0
Character set	SS;	Standard character set selected
Character slant	SL 0;	0 degrees
Scaling	SC ;	Off
Label terminator	DT chr$(3)	chr$(3)
Chord angle	-----	5 degrees
Fill type	FT;	Bi-directional fill, type 1
Fill distance	FT;	1% of distance from P1 to P2
Fill slant	FT;	0 degrees
Pen thickness	PT;	Set at 0.3 mm
Pen condition	PU;	Pen up
Rotation	RO;	Set at 0 degrees
Scaling points	IP;	Initialized according to paper size

2.2. Plot area and unit setting instructions

Instruction	Function
IP	Scaling point
SC	Scale
IW	Input window
RO	Rotate coordinate system
PG	Page output

IP - Input Scaling Point

IP [P1x, P1y [,P2x, P2y]] [;]

P1x ; x coordinate of P1 P1y ; y coordinate of P1

P2x ; x coordinate of P2 P2y ; y coordinate of P2

- The coordinate values used are absolute values in graphics units.
- Sets the location of the scaling points(P1,P2).
- Coordinate values for P1x,P1y,P2x and P2y are given as integer numbers.
  The IP instruction is ignored when the set coordinates are outside the print area.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field initializes the scaling points(P1,P2).
- P2x and P2y may be omitted. (If P2x and P2y are omitted, P2 is set automatically so as not to alter the distance between P1 and P2).

SC - Scale

SC Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, Ymax

Xmin ; X coordinate of P1 Xmax ; X coordinate of P2

Ymin ; Y coordinate of P1 Ymax ; Y coordinate of P2

- Sets the scale for the coordinates the user wants to establish.
- Coordinate values for Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, and Ymax are given as real numbers.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field turns the scaling off.
- The technical terms, user unit and graphics unit, used in this manual are defined as follows;

  User unit : the unit of the coordinates set by the SC instruction
  Graphics unit : the unit (1/1016 of an inch) of the coordinates not set by the SC instruction

```
10 '*** SCEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN; IP3000,2000,4500,3500;SP1;SC0,120,0,120;"
30 FOR T=0 TO 2*3.1416+3.1416/20 STEP 3.1416/20
40 X=COS(T)*100
50 Y=SIN(T)*100
60 LPRINT "PA";X;",";Y;";PD;"
70 NEXT T
80 LPRINT "PU;"
90 END
```

<Sample 61>

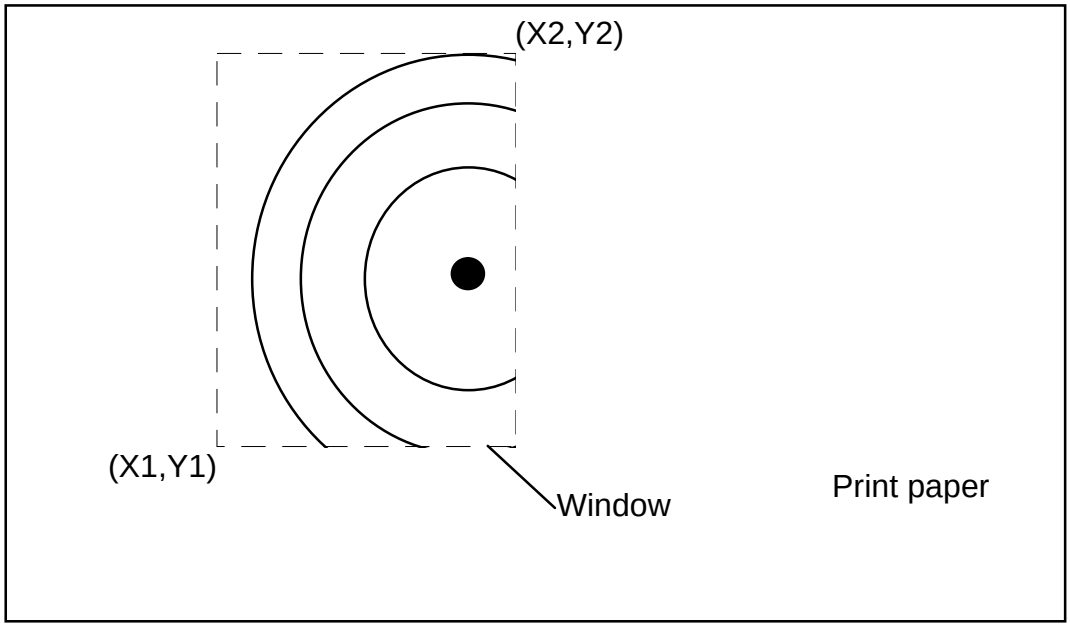
IW - Input Window

IW [X_1, Y_1, X_2, Y_2] [;]

X1-Window lower left X coordinate Y1-Window lower left Y coordinate

X2-Window upper right X coordinate Y2-Window upper right Y coordinate

- This instruction sets the window inside which plotting can be performed.
- Graphic units are always used.
- Coordinate values for X1, Y1, X2, and Y2 are integer numbers from 0 to 32,767.
- The order of the pairs (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2) may be reversed with no change in the window created: "IW X1, Y1, X2, Y2" is identical in effect to "IW X2, Y2, X1, Y1".
- Using this instruction without a parameter field releases limitations on the plot area.



RO - Rotate coordinate system

RO [*q*][;]

q : Angle in degrees through which the coordinate system is rotated.

- This instruction rotates the coordinate system.
- A value of 0 or 90 must be used for *q*.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field sets the rotation of the coordinate system to 0 degrees.

PG - Page feed

PG [;]

- Executes a page feed
- After page feeding, the cursor position return to the home position (0, 0).

2.3. Pen Control and Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function
PU	Pen Up
PD	Pen Down
PA	Plot Absolute
PR	Relative Coordinate Pen Move
AA	Absolute Arc Plot
AR	Relative Arc Plot
CI	Circle

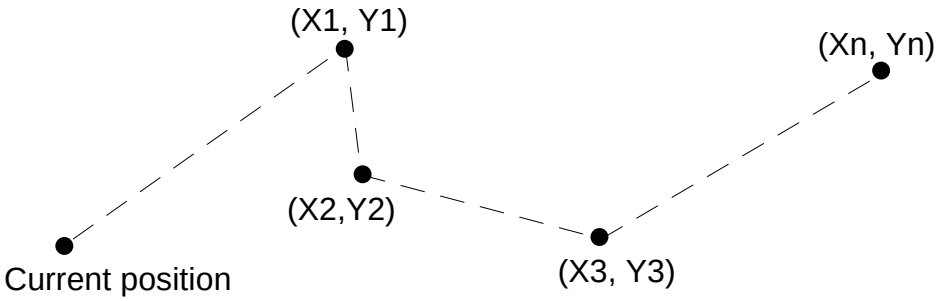
PU - Pen Up

PU [X,Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination

Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- X and Y are either relative or absolute, depending on whether a PA or a PR was the last plot command executed. The absolute coordinates are set as default.
- Moves the cursor to the specified coordinates after raising the pen.
- Using this instruction without a parameter field raises the pen without changing the cursor position.
- When scaling is on, user coordinates are used.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When scaling is off graphics units are used.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinates values for X and Y are integer numbers.



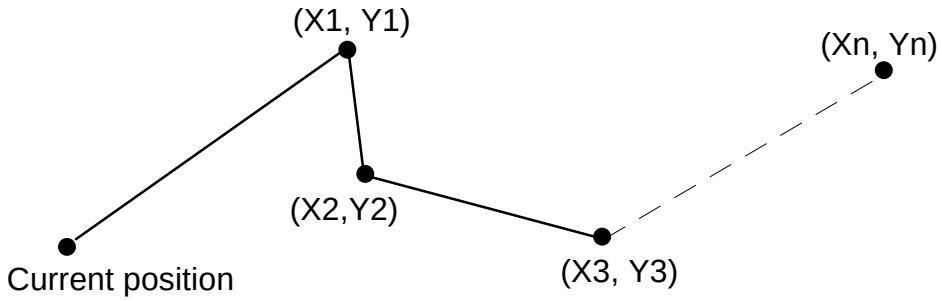
PD - Pen Down

PD [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination

Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- X and Y are either relative or absolute, depending on whether a PA or a PR was the last plot command executed. The absolute coordinates are set as default.
- Moves the cursor to the specified coordinates after lowering the pen. (This plots a straight line.)
- Using this instruction without a parameter lowers the pen without changing the cursor position. (One dot is plotted.)
- When scaling has been performed, the cursor is moved by user coordinates.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the cursor is moved by absolute coordinates in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.



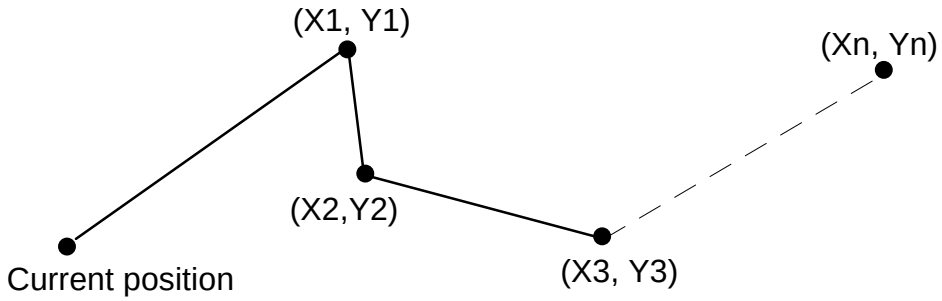
PA - Plot Absolute

PA [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination

Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- X and Y are absolute values in user units or graphics units.
- Moves the cursor to the specified coordinates.
- Plots a straight line only when the pen is down.
- When scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are integer numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the cursor is moved by absolute coordinates in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 '*** PAEX1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
30 LPRINT "PA2000,6000;PD0,6000,2000,7500,2000,6000;PU2500,6000;"
40 LPRINT "PAPD4500,6000,2500,7500,2500,6000;PU10365,500;"
50 END
```

<Sample 62>

```
10 ' *** PAEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;SC0,100,0,100;"
30 LPRINT "PA50,30;PD25,30,50,50,50,30;PU55,30;"
40 LPRINT "PAPD80,30,55,50,55,30,PU;"
50 END
```

<Sample 63>

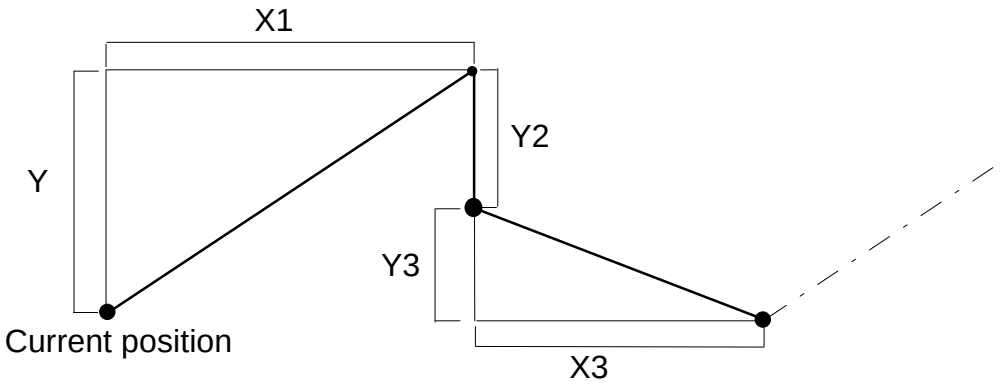
PR - Relative Coordinate Pen Move

PR [X, Y [,...]] [;]

X ; X coordinate of the cursor movement destination

Y ; Y coordinate of the cursor movement destination

- Coordinates are relative to the current position in user units or graphics units.
- Plots a straight line only when the pen is down.
- When scaling has been performed, the cursor is moved by relative coordinates in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the cursor is moved by relative coordinates in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 ' *** prex 1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;"
30 LPRINT "PA5000,4500,;PDPR-2000,0,2000,2000,0,-2000;PU500,0;"
40 LPRINT "PD2000,0,-2000,2000,0,-2000;PU;"
50 END
```

<Sample 64>

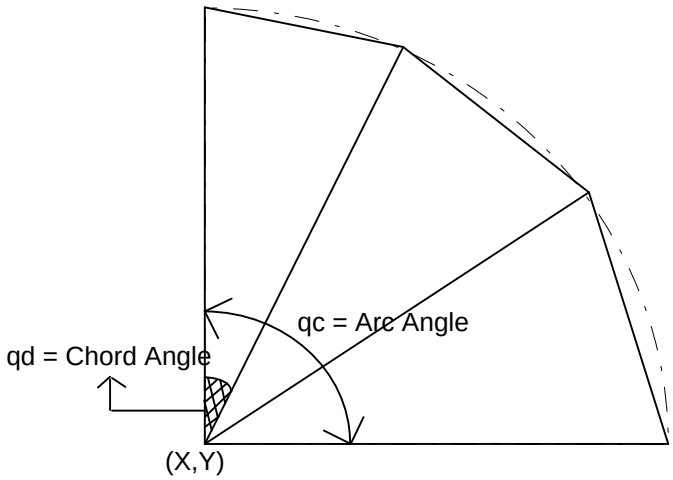
AA - Draw Absolute Arc

AA [X, Y, qc [, qd]] [;]

X ; Arc centre X coordinate Y ; Arc centre Y coordinate

qc ; Arc angle in degrees qd ; Chord angle in degrees

- X and Y coordinates are absolute coordinates in user units or graphics units.
- Starting from the current position, plots an arc centred on the absolute coordinates X, Y having the specified arc angle and chord angle, with the radius being the distance between the current position and the point X,Y.
- After plotting, the cursor position moves to the plot end point.
- Plotting is performed only when the pen is down.
- When the pen is up, plotting is not performed, but the cursor position moves to the plot end point.
- When scaling has been performed, the cursor is moved by absolute coordinates in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for *X* and *Y* are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the cursor is moved by absolute coordinates in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer number.
- The value for pc is a clamped real number.
- When *qc* is positive, counterclockwise plotting from the current point is performed.
- When *qc* is negative, plotting is made clockwise from the current position.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees).




```
10 '*** AAEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,7650,6325;"
30 LPRINT "SC0,100,0,100;"
40 LPRINT "PA0,30;"
50 LPRINT "PD;PA0,45;AA0,50,180;PA0,70;"
60 LPRINT "AA0,100,90;PA45,100;AA50,100,180;PA70,100;"
70 LPRINT "AA100,100,90;PA100,55;AA100,50,180;PA100,30;"
80 LPRINT "AA100,0,90;PA100,55;AA100,50,180;PA70,100;"
90 LPRINT "AA100,0,90;PA55,0;AA50,0,180;PA30,0;AA0,0,90;"
100 LPRINT "PU;PA50,50,CI20;"
110 END
```

```
<Sample 68>
```

AR - Draw Relative Arc

AR X, Y, qc(, qd)[;]

X ; Arc centre X coordinate Y ; Arc centre Y coordinate

qc ; Arc angle in degrees qd ; Chord angle in degrees

- X and Y coordinates are relative coordinates in user units or graphics units.
- Starting from the current cursor position the command plots an arc whose centre is at the relative coordinate position (X,Y) and which has the specified arc and chord angles. The radius of the arc is the distance between the current position and the point (X,Y).
- After plotting the cursor position changes to the plot end point.
- Plotting is performed only when the pen is down.
- When the pen is up, plotting is not performed, but he cursor position moves to the plot end point.
- When scaling has been performed, the cursor is moved by relative coordinates in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for *X* and *Y* are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the cursor is moved by relative coordinates in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.
- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.
- When *qc* is positive, counterclockwise plotting from the current point is performed.
- When *qc* is negative, plotting is made clockwise from the current position.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees).

```
10 '*** AREX1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,7650,6325;"
30 LPRINT "SC-100,100,-100,100;"
40 LPRINT "PA-80,-80;PD;AR0,50,90;AR50,0,90;PU;"
50 END
```

<Sample 69>

```
10 ' *** AREX2 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,7650,6325;"
30 LPRINT "SC-100,100,-100,100;"
40 LPRINT "PA-100,70;PD;PR30,0;AR-,-70,-90;AR70,0,90;PR60,0;PU;"
50 END
100 END
```

<Sample 70>

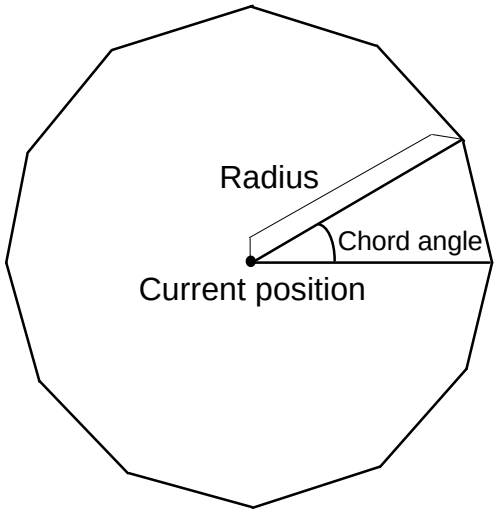
CI - Circle Plot

CI r(, qd)[;]

r : Radius of circle (in user units or graphic units)

qd : Chord angle (in degrees)

- Plots a circle centred on the current position with a radius r and chord angle qd.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin at the centre of the circle.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the circle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the value for r is a real number.
- When scaling is off, the circle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate value for r is an integer number.
- When qd is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees).



```
10 '*** CIEX1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,7650,6325;"
30 LPRINT "SC-100,100,-100,100;"
40 LPRINT "PA-60,50;CI40,45;"
50 LPRINT "PA60,50;CI40,30;"
60 LPRINT "PA-60,-50;CI40,15;"
70 LPRINT "PA60,-50;CI40,5;"
80 END
```

<Sample 65>

```
10 '*** CIEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,8650,7325;"
30 LPRINT "SC0,170,0,170;"
40 LPRINT "PA100,100;LT;CI10,5;LT0;CI-20,5;LT1;CI30,5;"
50 LPRINT "LT2;CI-40,5;LT3;CI50,5;LT4;CI-
60,5;LT5;CI70,5;LT6;CI80,5;"
60 END
```

<Sample 66>

```
10 '*** CIEX3 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;IP2650,1325,7650,6325;"
30 LPRINT "SC-1000,1000,-1000,1000;"
40 LPRINT "PA-800,800;"
50 GOSUB 130
60 LPRINT "PA200,800;"
70 GOSUB 130
80 LPRINT "PA-800,-200;"
90 GOSUB 130
100 LPRINT"PA200,-200;"
110 GOSUB 130
120 END
130 LPRINT "CI70;PR600,0;CI70;PR-300,-300;CI250;"
140 LPRINT "PR-300,-300;CI70;PR600,0;CI70;"
150 RETURN
```

<Sample 67>

2.4. The polygon group

Instruction	Function
EA	Edge Absolute Rectangle
ER	Edge Relative Rectangle
EW	Edge Wedge
RA	Fill Absolute Rectangle
RR	Fill Relative Rectangle
WG	Fill Wedge

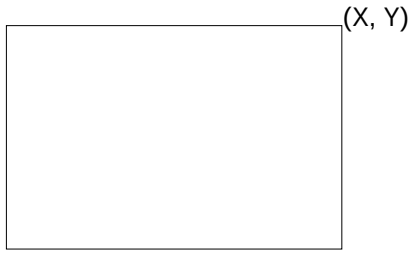
EA - Edge Rectangle Absolute

EA X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

Y ; Y coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

- X and Y coordinates are absolute coordinates in user units or graphics units.
- Plots the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite angle specified by X and Y.
- After plotting the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the rectangle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the rectangle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 '*** EAEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA7000,4000;"
30 LPRINT "PT.3;FT1;RA6000,3000;"
40 LPRINT "SP3,;EA6000,3000;"
50 LPRINT "SP4;FT3,100;RA8000,3000;"
60 LPRINT "SP3,;EA8000,3000;"
70 LPRINT "SP5;PT.3;FT2;RA8000,5000;"
80 LPRINT "SP3;EA8000,5000;"
90 LPRINT "SP6;FT4,100,45;RA6000,5000;"
100 LPRINT "SP3;EA6000,5000;PG"
110 END
```

<Sample 72>

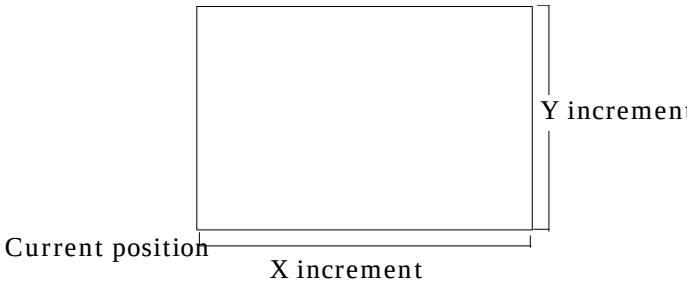
ER - Edge Rectangle Relative

ER X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

Y ; Y coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

- Coordinates are relative to the current position in user units or graphics units.
- Plots the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite angle specified by X and Y.
- After plotting the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the rectangle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the rectangle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 '*** EREX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,5000;"
30 LPRINT "PT.3;FT1;RR500,500;"
40 LPRINT "SP3,;ER500,500;"
50 LPRINT "PR500,0"
60 LPRINT "SP4;FT3,;RR500,500;"
70 LPRINT "SP3,;ER500,500;"
80 LPRINT "PR0,500;"
90 LPRINT "SP5;PT.3;FT2;RR500,500;"
100 LPRINT "SP3;ER500,500;"
110 LPRINT "SP6;FT4,100,45;RR-500,500;"
120 LPRINT "SP3;ER-500,500;PG"
130 END
```

<Sample 74>

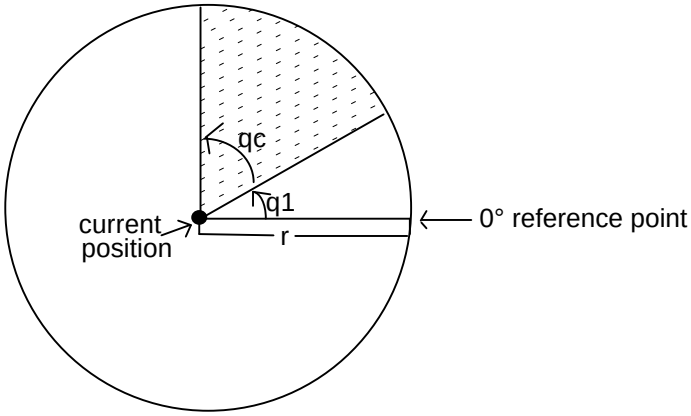
EW - Edge Wedge

EW r,q1,qc(,qd)[;]

r ; Radius in user units or graphics units q1; Start point angle

qc ; Arc angle qd ; Chord angle

- Plots a wedge centred on the current position with radius *r*, start point angle *q1*, arc angle *qc*, and chord angle *qd*.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the circle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the value for r is a real number.
- When there is no scaling, the circle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate value for *r* is an integer number.
- The value for *q1* is a clamped real number.



- *q1* specifies the wedge starting point related to the 0 degree reference point.
- When *q1* is positive, the positive direction of the X axis relative to the current position is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought in the counterclockwise direction. The opposite occurs when *q1* is negative: the negative X axis is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought by going clockwise.
- *qc* specifies the angle of the wedge in degrees.
- The value for *qc* is a real number.
- Plotting proceeds counterclockwise when *qc* is positive, and clockwise when negative.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees)

```
10 ' *** EWEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;FT3,100;"
30 LPRINT "PA5000,4000;"
40 LPRINT "WG1250,90,180,5;"
50 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,90,180,5;"
60 LPRINT "SP4,FT4,100,45;"
70 LPRINT "WG1250,270,120;"
80 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,270,120;"
80 LPRINT "SP1;PT.3;FT1;"
100 LPRINT "WG1250,30,60;"
110 LPRINT "SP3;EW1250,30,60;PG;"
120 END
```

<Sample 76>

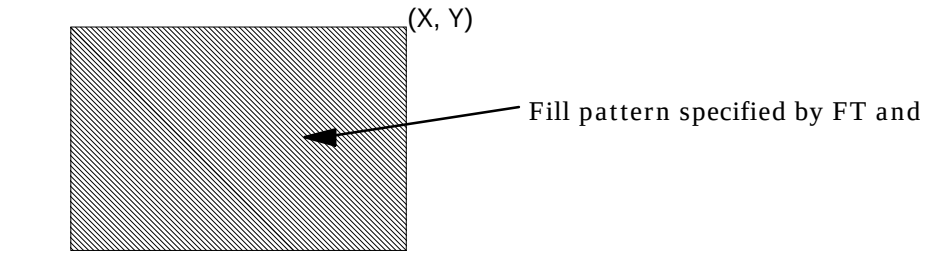
RA - Fill Rectangle Absolute

RA X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

Y ; Y coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

- X and Y coordinates are absolute coordinates in user units or graphics units.
- Fill in the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite angle specified by X and Y.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the rectangle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the rectangle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 '*** RAEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,4000;"
30 LPRINT "PT.3;FT1;RA4250,3250;"
40 LPRINT "FT3,100;RA5750,3250;"
50 LPRINT "FT2;RA5750,4750;"
60 LPRINT "FT4,100,45;RA4250,4750;"
70 END
```

<Sample 71>

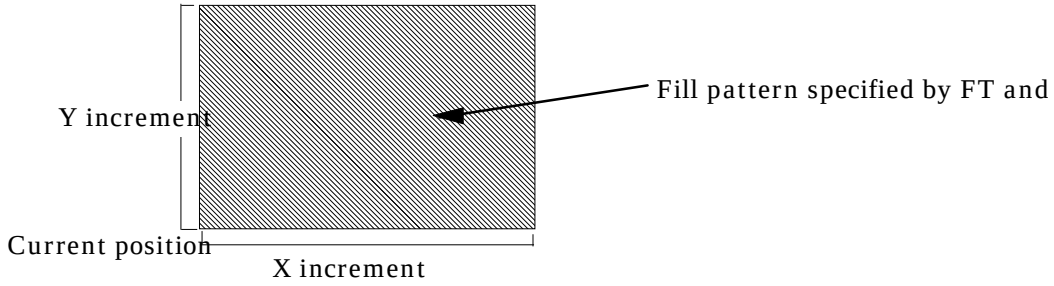
RR - Fill Rectangle Relative

RR X, Y[;]

X ; X coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

Y ; Y coordinate of opposite angle for the rectangle

- Coordinates are relative to the current position in user units or graphics units.
- Fill in the rectangle formed by the current position and the opposite angle specified by X and Y.
- After plotting the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the rectangle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the values for X and Y are real numbers.
- When there is no scaling, the rectangle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate values for X and Y are integer numbers.




```
10 '*** PREX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,5000;"
30 LPRINT "PT.3;FT1;RR500,500;"
35 LPRINT "PR500,0;"
40 LPRINT "FT3,70;RR500,500;"
45 LPRINT "PR0,500;"
50 LPRINT "FT2;RR500,500;"
60 LPRINT "FT4,70,45;RR-500,500;"
70 END
```

<Sample 73>

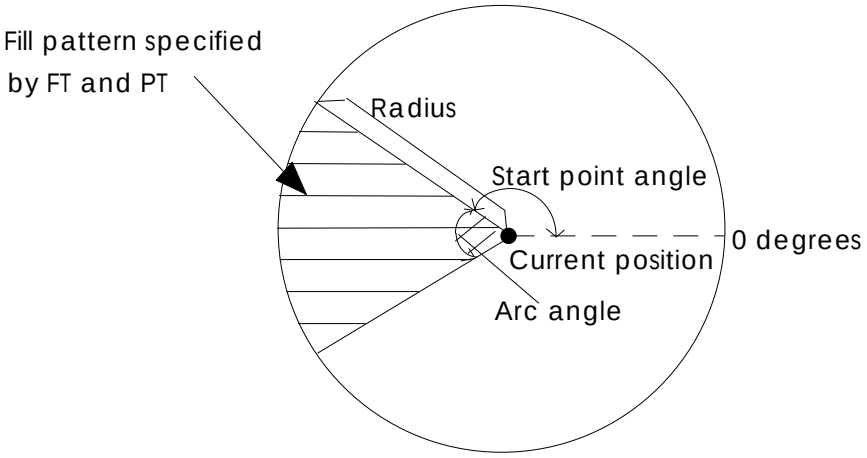
WG - Fill Wedge

WG r,q1,qc(,qd)[;]

r ; Radius in user units or graphics units q1 ; Start point angle

qc ; Arc angle qd ; Chord angle

- Fill in a wedge centred on the current position with radius *r*, start point angle *q1*, arc angle *qc*, and chord angle *qd*.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- When scaling has been performed, the circle is plotted in user units.
- Also, when scaling has been performed, the value for r is a real number.
- When there is no scaling, the circle is plotted in graphics units.
- When there is no scaling, the coordinate value for r is an integer number.
- The value for *q1* is a clamped real number.
- When *q1* is positive, the positive direction of the X axis relative to the current position is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought in the counterclockwise direction. The opposite occurs when q1 is negative: the negative X axis is set at 0 degrees, and the start point is sought by going clockwise.
- The value for *qc* is a clamped real number.
- Plotting proceeds counterclockwise when *qc* is positive, and clockwise when negative.
- The value for *qd* is a clamped real number.
- When *qd* is not specified, the chord angle is the default value (5 degrees).




```
10 ' *** WGEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;FT3,100;"
30 LPRINT "PA5000,4000;"
40 LPRINT "WG1250,90,180,5;"
50 LPRINT "SP4;FT4,100,45;"
60 LPRINT "WG1250,270,120;"
70 LPRINT "SP1;PT.3;FT1;"
80 LPRINT "WG1250,30,60;PG;"
90 END
```

<Sample 75>

2.5. Plot Function Instructions

Instruction	Function
FT	Fill Type
LT	Line Type
PW	Pen Width
SM	Symbol Mode
SP	Select Pen
TL	Tick Length
XT	X Tick
YT	Y Tick
PT	Pen Thickness

FT - Fill Type

`FT [ n [, d [, q]]] [;]`

n : Fill type
d : Fill interval (interval between the parallel lines of the area being filled)
q : Fill angle (degrees)

- Sets the fill type, interval, and angle when filling an area.
- The value for n is a clamped integer number.

  Solid lines (bidirectional fill)
  Solid lines (single direction fill)
  Parallel lines
  Crosshatching

- The fill interval when when n is 1 or 2 is the interval set by the pen thickness (PT) instruction.
- Any value given for d when n is 1 or 2 will be ignored.
- If d is omitted, the fill interval already specified will be used.
- If d is 0, the default value will be used (1% of distance from P1 to P2.)
- The value of d is a clamped real number .
- If q is omitted, the fill angle already specified will be used.
- The value of q is a clamped real number.

LT - Line Type Selection

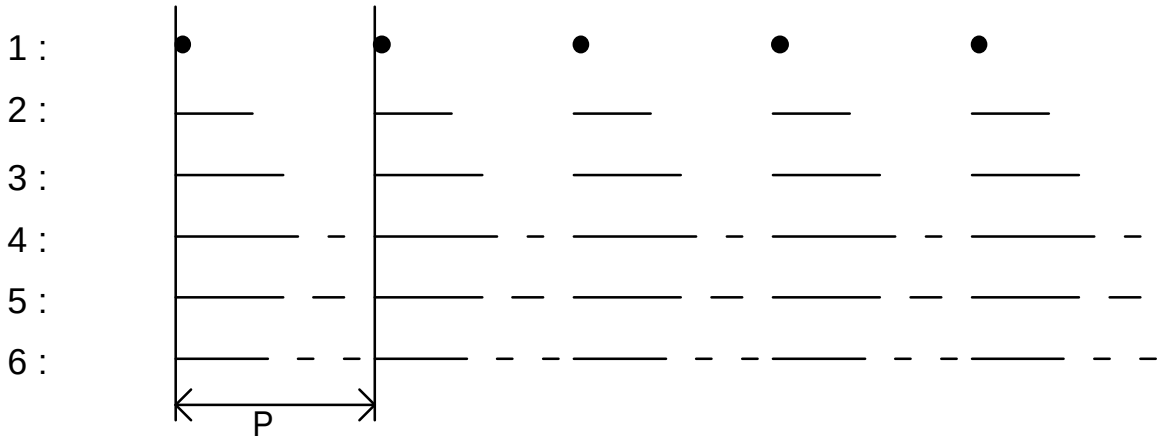
`LT [, n [, p ]] [;]`

n ; Line pattern number

p ; Line pattern length (percentage or millimeters of distance between P1 and P2)

- Specifies the line type and pattern length.
- When the n parameter field is omitted, a solid line is selected.
- When the p parameter field is omitted, the pattern length is 4% of the distance between P1 and P2 (default value).
- The value of *n* is a clamped integer number.
- The value of *p* is a clamped real number from 0.0000 to 127.9999.
- When *p* is omitted, the previously set line pattern length is used.

Default :Solid line
:For straight line, start and end points are plotted.
:For an arc, plotting takes place for every chord angle that is set.



PW-Pen width

`PW n[;]`

w ; width (unit = 1/300 inch)

- This command specifies the width of the currently selected pen.
- The value of w is an integer number from 1 to 10.

SM - Symbol Mode

SM c[;]

c ; ASCII character or symbol code

- The command specifies the symbol to be drawn.
- When the PA,PR,PD or PU instruction is used, the specified symbol will be drawn at the end of each vector.
- The specified symbol will be drawn at the end of each vector even if the pen is up when the PA or PR instructions are used.
- Omitting the parameter field cancels the symbol mode.

```
10 '*** SMEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;SM*;PA500,1500;"
30 LPRINT "PD600,1590,670,1860,850,1960,1320,1900,1940,2350:"
40 LPRINT "PU;SM;PA500,500;SM3;"
50 LPRINT "PA550,800,680,720,800,950,1150,1230,1870,1350;PU;"
60 LPRINT "SM;PA1850,600;PD;SMY;PA3000,1450;"
70 LPRINT "SMZ;PA3300,1150;SMX;PA1850,600;PU;"
80 END
```

<Sample 78>

SP - Select Pen

SP [n] [;]

n ; Pen number

- Selects the pen specified by the pen number.
- The value for n must be an integer from 0 to 6.

TL-Tick Length

TL l1(,l2)[;]

ℓ1-Length of ticks in the positive X- and Y-axes
ℓ2-Length of ticks in the negative X- and Y-axes

- Tick length is a percentage of the vertical and horizontal distances between P1 and P2.
- Sets the length of tick marks for the XT and YT instructions.
- Values for ℓ1 and ℓ2 are clamped real numbers.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default values for tick length are used(for both l1 and l2, these are 0.5% of the horizontal and vertical distances between P1 and P2).

```
10 '*** TLEX ***
30 FOR I=1 TO 10
40 LPRINT "PR800,0;XT;"
50 NEXT I
60 LPRINT "TL;PU;PA300,279;PD;"
70 GOSUB 1000
80 LPRINT "TL1,0;PU;PA1100,279;PD;"
20 LPRINT "IN;PA300,279;SP2;PD;TL90;XT;";
90 GOSUB 1000
100 LPRINT "TL0,5;PU;PA1900,279;"
110 GOSUB 1000
120 LPRINT "PA300,6759;TL80;YT;PU;"
130 END
1000 '* SUBROUTINE DRAW TICKS *
1010 FOR J=1 TO 8
1020 LPRINT "PRO,720;YT;"
1030 NEXT J
1040 RETURN

<Sample 77>
```

XT - X-axis Tick

XT [;]

- Plots vertical tick marks as specified by the TL instruction from the current position.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

YT - Y-axis Tick

YT [;]

- Plots horizontal tick marks as specified by the TL instruction from the current position.
- After plotting, the cursor returns to its point of origin.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.

```
10 '*** XTYTEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;PA300,279;SP2;PD";
30 LPRINT "PR1300,0;XT;PR1300,0;XT;PU;"
40 END
```

PT - Pen Thickness Select

PT [d] [;]

d : Fill line interval (mm)

- Sets the line interval when filling in with solid lines.
- The value for d is a clamped number from 0.0000 to 5.0000.
- The default value (0.3 mm) is in effect when d is omitted.

2.6. Character Plot Instructions

Instruction	Function
CS	Standard Set Definition
CA	Alternate Set Definition
SS	Select Standard Font
SA	Select Alternate Font
DT	Define Label Terminator
LB	Define Label
DI	Absolute Direction
DR	Relative Direction
CP	Character Plot
SI	Set Absolute Character Size
SR	Set Relative Character Size
SL	Set Character Slant
UC	User-defined Character

CS - Standard Character Set

`CS n[;]`

n ; Character set number(*)

- Specifies the standard character set.
- When the parameter field is omitted, character set 0 is specified.
- The value for *n* is a clamped integer number in the range of 0 to 4, 6 to 7, 9 or 30 to 39.

CA - Alternate Character Set

`CA n[;]`

n ; Character set number (*)

- Specifies the alternate character set.
- When the parameter field is omitted, character set 0 is specified.
- The value for n is a clamped integer number in the range of 0 to 4, 6 to 7, 9 or 30 to 39.

n	**Character Set**
0	ANSI ASCII
1	9825 Character Set
2	French/German
3	Scandinavian
4	Spanish/Latin American
6	JIS ASCII
7	ROMAN 8 Extensions
9	ISO IRV
30	ISO Swedish
31	ISO Swedish for Names
32	ISO Norway, Version 1
33	ISO German
34	ISO French
35	ISO Kingdom
36	ISO Italian
37	ISO Spanish
38	ISO Portuguese
39	ISO Norway, Version 2

SS - Select Standard Character Set

SS [;]

- Selects the standard character set specified by the CS instruction.

SA - Select Alternate Character Set

SA [;]

- Selects the alternate character set specified by the CA instruction.

```
10 '*** SASSEX ***
20 LPRINT "PA5000,5000;"
30 LPRINT "SP2;CS4;CA9;SS;LBS_E_T_4";CHR$(14);"S_E_T_9";CHR$(3)
40 ENDØ
```

<Sample 79>

DT - Define Label Terminator

DT c [;]

c : Character

- The specified character is used as the character plotter terminator.
- The character plot mode is cancelled by sending a terminator at the end of a character plot string.
- The parameter field used for this command must be only one character in length.
- The default value (chr$(3)) is used when the parameter field is omitted.

```
10 '*** DTEX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;SC0,5000,0,5000;"
30 LPRINT "PA0,4500;LBDefault control character
ETX";CHR$(13);CHR$(3);
40 LPRINT "LBterminates by performing end-";CHR$(13);CHR$(3):
50 LPRINT "LBof-text function.";CHR$(3);
60 LPRINT "PA0,3500;DT@;LBPrinting characters
terminate,";CHR$(13):"@";
70 LPRINT "LBbut are also printed.@";
80 LPRINT "PA0,3000;DT";CHR$(13);";LBcontrol characters
terminate";CHR$(10);CHR$(13)
90 LPRINT "LBand perform their function.";CHR$(13)
100 END
```

<Sample 80>

LB - Character Plot

LB [cs] < terminator > [;]

cs : character string

- Plots character strings, numerical expressions, variables, etc.
- Plotting is performed whether the pen is up or down.
- After plotting, the cursor moves to the position of the next character.

```
10 '*** LBEX1 ***
20 LPRINT "SP2;PA1000,4000;"
30 X=30
40 LPRINT "LB",X,X+1,X+2,CHR$(3)
50 END
<Sample 81>
```

```
10 '*** LBEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "SP2;PA4000,5000;"
30 X=30
40 LPRINT "LB";X;X+1;X+2,CHR$(3)
70 END
<Sample 82>
```

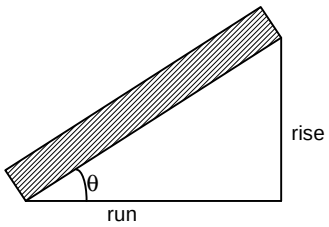
```
10 '*** LBEX3 ***
20 LPRINT "SP2;PA5000,6000;"
30 X=30
40 LPRINT "LB";X;"   ";X+1;"   ";X+2,CHR$(3)
70 END
<Sample 83>
```

DI - Absolute Direction

DI [run, rise] [;]

run : X direction component
rise : Y direction component

- Specifies the character plot direction.
- Values for the run and rise are clamped real numbers.
- The instruction is ignored when the values for both run and rise are 0.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default value (horizontal direction) is used.



$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

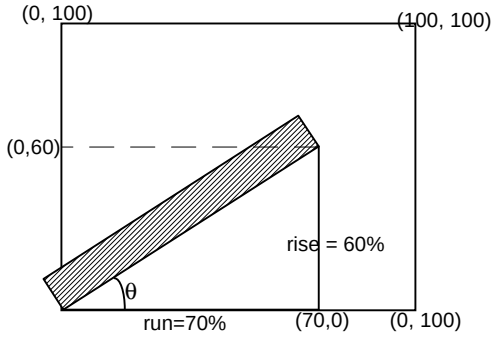
```
10 '*** DIEX ***
15 DEG=-45
16 RAD3.1416/180*DEG
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;PA3050,4450;"
30 LPRINT "DI0,2;LB_*_1988";CHR$(3);"DI2,2;LB_*_1989";CHR$(3)
40 LPRINT "DI2,0;LB_*_1990";CHR$(3);"DI2,-2;LB_*_1991";CHR$(3)
50 LPRINT "DI0,-2;LB_*_1992";CHR$(3);DI-2,-2;LB_*_1993";CHR$(3)
60 LPRINT "DI-2,0;LB_*_1994";CHR$(3);"DI-2,2;LB_*_1995";CHR$(3)
70 LPRINT
"PA3500,5350;DI",COS(0),SIN(0);"LB_*_2000";CHR$(13);CHR$(3);
80 LPRINT "DI",COS(RAD);SIN(RAD);"LB_RETURN
POINT";CHR$(13);CHR$(3)
90 END

<Sample 84>
```

DR - Relative Direction

DR [run, rise] [;]

run : X direction component
rise : Y direction component

- Percentage of the distance in the X and Y directions between P1 and P2
- Specifies the character plot direction.
- Values for the run and rise are clamped real numbers.
- The instruction is ignored when values for both run and rise are 0.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default value (horizontal direction) is used.

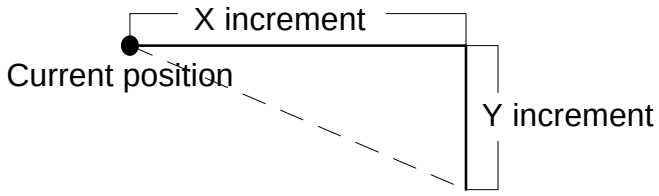


CP - Character Plot

CP X,Y [;]

X ; the number of text spaces the pen position is moved.
Y ; the number of text lines the pen position is moved.

- Moves the cursor the specified number of characters.
- Values for X and Y are clamped real numbers.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the cursor is not moved along the X-axis but it is moved 1 character in the negative direction along the Y-axis (identical to executing CP 0, -1;).




```
10 '*** CPEX ***
20 LPRINT "DF;SP1;PA1000,3000;PDPR3000,0;PU;PR-3000,0;"
30 LPRINT "CP5,.55;LBABOVE THE LINE";CHR$(3);"PA2000,3000;"
40 LPRINT "XT;CP0,-1.15;LBBELOW THE LINE";CHR$(13);CHR$(10);"AND
WITH A NEAT";CHR$(3)
50 LPRINT "CP;LBMARGIN";CHR$(3)
60 END

<Sample 85>
```

SI - Set Absolute Character Size

SI [width, height] [;]

width : the width in centimeters of printed characters
height : the height in centimeters of printed characters

- Specifies the size of characters to be plotted.
- Values for *width* and *height* are clamped real numbers.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default values are used (*width*: 0.1879 cm, *height*: 0.2690 cm).

```
10 '*** SIEX1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA1000,1000;"
30 LPRINT "SI2,1.5;LBLASER";CHR$(3)
40 END

<Sample 86>

10 '*** SIEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,3000:"
30 LPRINT "SI-.35,.35;LBCHARACTER";CHR$(3)
40 END

<Sample 87>

10 '*** SIEX3 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,3000;"
30 LPRINT "SI.35,-.35;LBCHARACTER";CHR$(3)
40 END

<Sample 88>

10 '*** SIEX4 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP1;PA5000,3000;"
30 LPRINT "SI-.35,-.35;LBCHARACTER";CHR$(3)
40 END

<Sample 89>
```

SR - Set Relative Character Size

SR [*width*, *height*] [;]

width ; the width of printed characters expressed as a percentage of the x-component of the distance between P1 and P2.
height ; the height of printed characters expressed as a percentage of the y-component of the distance between P1 and P2.

- Specifies the size of characters to be plotted.
- Values for *width* and *height* are clamped real numbers.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default values are used (*width*: 0.7500%, *height*: 1.5000%).

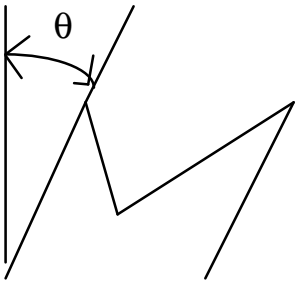
```
10 ' *** SREX ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;PA100,7000;LBDEFAULT SIZE";CHR$(3)
30 LPRINT "IP 2000,2000,6500,6500;PA100,6500;"
40 LPRINT "LBNEW P1 AND P2 CHANGE LABEL SIZE";CHR$(3);"SR5,5;"
50 LPRINT "PA100,6000;LBNEW SR INSTRUCTION";CHR$(13);CHR$(3);
60 LPRINT "LBCHANGE LABEL SIZE";CHR$(3);

<Sample 90>
```

SL - Character Slant

SL [tan ϕ] [;]

tan ϕ - tangent of character slant angle (ϕ)

- Specifies the slant of characters to be plotted.
- Value for tanθ is a clamped real number.
- When the parameter field is omitted, the default value is used (0 degree character slant).



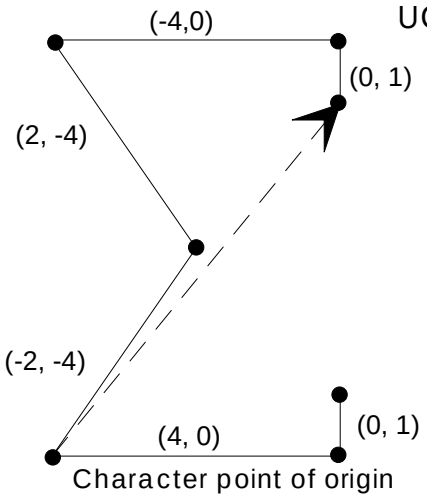

```
10 '"*** SLEX ***
20 LPRINT "DF;SP1;SI1.3,1.3;PA100,6000;"
30 LPRINT "SL2;LBLASER";CHR$(3)
40 LPRINT "SL-2;PR3000,0;LBLASER";CHR$(3)
50 END

<Sample 91>
```

UC - User Defined Character

`UC X1, Y1, X2, Y2..., Xn, Yn[;]`

Xi : Number of grids in X direction
Yi : Number of grids in Y direction

- Draws user-generated character or symbol.
- Values for Xi and Yi are clamped real numbers.
- If a value between 99.0000 and 127.9999 is entered between(Xi, Yi) and (Xi+1, Yi+1), the pen will be lowered at that point.
- If a value between -128.0000 and -99.0000 is entered between (Xi, Yi) and (Xi+1, Yi+1), the pen will be raised at that point.



UC 4, 99, 0, 1, -4, 0, 2, -4, -2, -4, 4, 0, 0, 1;

```
10 '*** UCEX1 ***
20 LPRINT "IN;SP2;PA2000,2000;"
30 FOR AA=19 TO 89 STEP 10
40 A=AA/100
50 LPRINT "SI",A,A*1.7
60 LPRINT "UC4,7,99,0,1,-4,0,2,-4,-2,-4,4,0,0,1;"
70 NEXT AA
80 LPRINT "PA2000,3750;"
90 FOR BB=19 TO 89 STEP 10
100 B=BB/100
110 LPRINT "SI",B,B*1.7
120 LPRINT "LBE";CHR$(3)
130 NEXT BB
140 END
```

<Sample 92>

```
10 '*** UCEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "SP1;PA3000,5000;SI.5,.8"
30 LPRINT "UC0,4,99,1.75,0,1.5,4,3,-8,3,8,3,-8,3,8,3,-
8,1.5,4,1.75,0;"
40 LPRINT "CP5,0;LB1000 ohms";CHR$(3)
50 END
```

<Sample 93>

```
10 '*** UCEX2 ***
20 LPRINT "SP1;PA3000,4500;SI.5,.8"
30 LPRINT "UC0,8,99,3.5,0,3,8,6,-16,6,16,6,-16,6,16,6,-
16,3,8,3.5,0;"
40 END
```

<Sample 94>

2.7. dual context extensions

Set High Resolution Control (Brother Original)

EscCRR0

- This command sets high resolution control off.

EscCRRL

- This command sets high resolution control light level.

EscCRRM

- This command sets high resolution control medium level.

EscCRRD

- This command sets high resolution control dark level.

USER RESET (Brother Original)

EscCR!#R

- # can be 0, 1 or 2.
- #0 indicates the current setting are restored.
- #1 indicates the user settings 1 are restored.
- #2 indicates the user settings 2 are restored.

FACTORY RESET (Brother Original)

EscCRFD

- This command causes a factory reset to be performed, restoring all the printer's factory default settings.
- You can also perform a factory reset using the printer's control panel (see the User Guide).

APPENDIX A

COMPARISON LIST FOR
HL-660, HL-1260, HL-10h, HL-10V/DV, HL-10PS/DPS, HL-8V, HL-4V, HL-4Ve, and HL-6V

In this chapter, you can find which commands are supported by your printer.

PCL

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/ DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc&k#G	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&s#C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EscY	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EscZ	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l1A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l2A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l3A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l26A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l100A	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc&l2048A	✓								
Esc&l1024A		✓							
Esc&l1025A		✓							
Esc&l1026A		✓							
Esc&l80A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l81A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l90A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l91A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l#H	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l#S		✓							
Esc&l#U	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l#Z	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&l#X	✓ #:1~32767	✓ #:1~32767	✓ #:1~32767	✓ #:1~99	✓ #:1~99	✓ #:1~99	✓ #:1~99	✓ #:1~99	✓ #:1~99
Esc&l1T	✓	✓	✓						

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/ DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
EscE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EscCR FD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EscCR!#R	✓	✓	✓						
Escz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc%-12345X	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc&u#D	✓	✓	✓						
Esc&a#L, Esc&a#M	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc9	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#E	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&k#H	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#D	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#F	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#P	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#L	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&a#R	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*p#Y	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&a#V	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&a#C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#D	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#F	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f#S	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc=	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&#O	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3
Esc&a#G		✓							
EscCR!#H		✓							
EscCR!#H		✓							
EscCR!#E		✓							

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc&a#P	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(3@,Esc)3@	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SI,SO	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#R	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc(f#W	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc*c#S	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc(symbol ID*1	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#C,Esc)s#C*2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#P,Esc)s#P	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#H,Esc)s#H	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&k#S	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#V,Esc)s#V	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#S,Esc)s#S	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#B,Esc)s#B	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#T,Esc)s#T*3	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&p#X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&d#D,Esc&d@	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#D	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#F	✓ #:0~6,	✓ #:0~6,1026, 1028, 1029	✓ #:0~6,1026, 1028, 1029	✓ #:0~6	✓ #:0~6	✓ #:0~6	✓ #:0~6	✓ #:0~6	✓ #:0~6
Esc(#X,Esc)#X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc)s#W	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#E	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s#W	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc*v#N	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*v#O	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#G	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#W	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc*p#R	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc*c#Q	✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Esc*v#T	✓ #:0~4,130	✓ #:0~4,130	✓ #:0~4,130	✓ #:0~3,130	✓ #:0~3,130	✓ #:0~3, 130	✓ #:0~3, 130	✓ #:0~4, 130	✓ #:0~4, 130
Esc*c#A,Esc*c#H	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#B,Esc*c#V	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#P	✓ #:0~5,130	✓ #:0~5,130	✓ #:0~5,130	✓ #:0,1,2,3,5	✓ #:0~3,5,130	✓ #:0~5, 130	✓ #:0~5,130	✓ #:0~5, 130	✓ #:0~5, 130
Esc*t#R	✓ #:75,100,150, 200,300,600	✓ #:75,100,150, 200, 300,600	✓ #:75,100,150, 200,300,600	✓ #:75,100, 150,300	✓ #:75,100, 150,300	✓ #:75,100, 150,300	✓ #:75,100, 150,300	✓ #:75,100, 150,300	✓ #:75,100, 150,300
Esc*r#F	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*r#T	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*r#S	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*b#Y	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*b#M	✓ #:0,1,2,3,5,9, 1024, 1152	✓ #:0,1,2,3,5,9, 1024, 1152	✓ #:0,1,2,3,5,9, 1024, 1152	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3	✓ #:0,1,2,3,5,9
Esc*r#A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*b#W	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*b#C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*rB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*rC	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓
Esc%#B	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c0T	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#Y	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc*c#X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#L	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc*c#K	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f0X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f1X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f2X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f3X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f4X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f5X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f6X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f7X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f8X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f9X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f10X	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&f1030X		✓	✓						
Esc&f1036X		✓	✓						
Esc&f1038X		✓	✓						
Esc*s#T	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc*s#U	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc*s#I	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc*s1M	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc&r#F	✓	✓	✓						✓
Esc*s#X	✓	✓	✓						✓

***3 Typeface Selection (PCL)**

Command	Typeface	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10 V/DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc(s129T	Anelia									
Esc(s128T	Brougham				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s130T	Letter Gothic	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s104T	OCR-A	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s110T	OCR-B	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s152T	Helsinki									
Esc(s153T	Tennessee									
Esc(s154T	Helsinki Narrow	✓	✓							
Esc(s155T	Atlanta	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s156T	Brussels	✓	✓							
Esc(s157T	Copenhagen	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s158T	Portugal	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s159T	Calgary	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4101T	PC Tennessee	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s4143T	PC Brussels	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s4148T	Utah	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc(s4326T	Albertville	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4168T	Antique Oakland	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4099T	Brougham	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4140T	Cleveland Condensed	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4116T	Connecticut	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4197T	Guatemala	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4102T	Letter Gothic	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4297T	Maryland	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s4113T	Oklahoma	✓	✓	✓						

Command	Typeface	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10 V/DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc(s16696T	BR Symbol	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s16602T	Helsinki	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s16901T	Tennessee	✓	✓	✓						
Esc(s31402T	W Dingbats	✓	✓	✓						
ESC(s134T	Bermuda Script		✓							
ESC(s132T	Germany		✓							
ESC(s133T	San Diego		✓							
ESC(s135T	US Roman		✓							

Diablo

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc US n			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc S			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc RS n			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
SP			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
BS			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc BS			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 5			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 6			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc /			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
LF			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc U			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc LF			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc D			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
FF			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
CR			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc "			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc #			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 3			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 4			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
DC3			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc @			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc CR ! # R			✓						
Esc EM n			✓	✓			✓	✓	
Esc FF n			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc T			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc L			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc C			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 9			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 0			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 1			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 8			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
HT			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc HT n			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc -			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
VT			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc VT n			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc 2			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc P			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc Q			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc O			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc F			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc W			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc &			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc E			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc R			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc X			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc H			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc I			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc Y			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc Z			✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc*m n1 n2						✓	✓	✓	
Esc k n1 n2						✓	✓	✓	
Esc / n1 n2						✓	✓	✓	
Esc y n1 n2						✓	✓	✓	
Esc z n1 n2						✓	✓	✓	

Epson

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS /DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
SP	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
BS	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
CR	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
LF	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
FF	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc SP n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc a n		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	
Esc $ n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc \ n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc <	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc >	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc #	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc @	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc CR!#R	✓	✓	✓						
Esc EM n	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	✓	✓
Esc C n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc C NUL n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc / n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Q n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc N n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc O	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 0	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 1	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc A n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 3 n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc J n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc j n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc D n1 n2 n3 ... NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
HT	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc B n1 n2 n3... NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc b n m1 m2 m3 ... NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		✓
Esc / n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
VT	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		✓
Esc P	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc M	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc p n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
SI	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc SI	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
DC2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc E	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc F	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc G	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc H	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc W n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
SO	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc SO	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
DC4	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 4	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 5	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc S n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc T	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc w n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc -n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc ! n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
Esc 6	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 7	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc l n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc R n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc t n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc&NUL n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc % n NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc:000	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc * m n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc ? n m	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc ^ a n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc K n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc L n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Y n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Z n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓

IBM

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
ESC	✓	✓	✓						
SP	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
BS	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
CR	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
LF	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
FF	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 5 n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
DC1	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Q 22	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Q 3	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc CR ! #R	✓	✓	✓						
Esc EM n	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	✓	✓
Esc C n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc C NUL n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc X m n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc N n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc O	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 0	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 1	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc A n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 3 n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc J n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc D n1 n2 n3 ... NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc B n1 n2 n3 ... NUL	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
HT	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
VT	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc R	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 7	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc 6	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
DC2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc :	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc P n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
SI	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc E	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc F	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
SO	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
DC4	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
CAN	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc W n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc S n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc T	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc - n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc _ n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc [@ n1n2n3n4n5n6	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc \ n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc ^	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc I n	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc = n1 n2 20 n3	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc K n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc L n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Y n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Esc Z n1 n2	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓

BAR CODE

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
CODE 39		✓	✓						
Interleaved 2 of 5		✓	✓						
FIM(US-Post Net)		✓	✓						
Post Net		✓	✓						
EAN8,EAN13, UPC A		✓	✓						
UPC E		✓	✓						
Codabar		✓	✓						
UPS Code128 set A		✓	✓						
UPS Code128 set B		✓	✓						
UPS Code128 set C		✓	✓						
ISBN(EAN)		✓	✓						
ISBN(UPC-E)		✓	✓						
EAN128 set A		✓							
EAN 128 set B		✓							
EAN 128 set C		✓							

HP-GL/2

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
DF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IN	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SC	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
IW	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RO	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PU	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CI	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
BR	✓	✓	✓						
BZ	✓	✓	✓						
PM	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ER	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EW	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
WG	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
FP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-HL6V
AC	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
FT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PW	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SM	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SV	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
TR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
UL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
WU	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
FI	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
FN	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LO	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DI	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DV	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SI	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V /DV	HL-10 PS/DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
SL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ES	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
TD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
CO	✓	✓	✓						
PG	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
NP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

HP-GL

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10 PS\DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
DF		✓	✓						
IN		✓	✓						
IP		✓	✓						
SC		✓	✓						
IW		✓	✓						
RO		✓	✓						
PG		✓	✓						
PU		✓	✓						
PD		✓	✓						
PA		✓	✓						
PR		✓	✓						
AA		✓	✓						
AR		✓	✓						
CI		✓	✓						
EA		✓	✓						
ER		✓	✓						
EW		✓	✓						
RA		✓	✓						
RR		✓	✓						
WG		✓	✓						
FT		✓	✓						
LT		✓	✓						
PW		✓	✓						
SM		✓	✓						
SP		✓	✓						
TL		✓	✓						
XT		✓	✓						
YT		✓	✓						

COMMAND	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h	HL-10V/DV	HL-10 PS\DPS	HL-8V	HL-4V	HL-4Ve	HL-6V
PT		✓	✓						
CS		✓	✓						
CA		✓	✓						
SS		✓	✓						
SA		✓	✓						
DT		✓	✓						
LB		✓	✓						
DI		✓	✓						
DR		✓	✓						
CP		✓	✓						
SI		✓	✓						
SR		✓	✓						
SL		✓	✓						
UC		✓	✓						
DC		✓	✓						
DP		✓	✓						
EX		✓	✓						
IM		✓	✓						
QA		✓	✓						
QC		✓	✓						
QD		✓	✓						
QE		✓	✓						
QF		✓	✓						
QH		✓	✓						
QI		✓	✓						
QQ		✓	✓						
QP		✓	✓						
QS		✓	✓						
QW		✓	✓						

PJL

PJL commands are supported by HL-660, HL-1260 and HL-10h. Other our printers does not support PJL.

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
Esc%-123245X	✓	✓	✓
PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = *personality*	✓ AUTO, PCL, IBM, EPSON, POSTSCRIPT*1	✓ AUTO, PCL, POSTSCRIPT, IBM, EPSON, HPGL	✓ AUTO, PCL, POSTSCRIPT, Interactive, IBMProprinterXL, EPSONFX850, Diablo630
@PJL ENTER *operation*	✓ SHUTDOWN, DEMOPAGE, RESIFONT, PERMFONT, PRTCONFIG		
@PJL COMMENT *remarks* [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL JOB [NAME = "*job name*"] [START = *first page*] [END = *last page*] [PASSWORD = "*password*"] [<CR>] <LF>	✓ [NAME = "*job name*"][START = *first page*][END = *last page*][<CR>]<LF>	✓ [NAME = "*job name*"][START = *first page*] [END = *last page*] [PASSWORD = "*password*"] [<CR>]<LF>	✓ [NAME = "*job name*"][START = *first page*][END = *last page*][<CR>]<LF>
@PJL EOJ [NAME = "*job name*"] [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL DEFAULT [LPARM : *personality*] variable = *value* [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INITIALIZE [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL RESET [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL SET [LPARM : *personality*] variable = *value* [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INQUIRE [LPARM : *personality*] variable [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL DINQUIRE [LPARM : *personality*] variable [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL ECHO [<*words*>][<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INFO ID [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓

*1 This option is available only when the optional BR-Script 2 ROM Board is installed into the printer.

Command	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
@PJL INFO CONFIG [<CR>]<LF>	✓ feature, value, feature information, returned option, attribute	✓ feature, value, feature information, returned option, attribute	✓ feature, value, feature information, returned option, attribute
@PJL INFO MEMORY [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INFO STATUS [<CR>]<LF>	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED
@PJL INFO VARIABLES [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INFO USTATUS [<CR>]<LF>	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED
@PJL INFO PAGECOUNT [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INFO PHYSICALMEMORY [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL INFO FEATURES [<CR>]<LF>	✓		
@PJL USTATUS variable = *value* [<CR>]<LF>	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED	✓ DEVICE, JOB, PAGE, TIMED
@PJL USTATUSOFF [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL RDYMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL OPMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓
@PJL STMSG DISPLAY = "*message*" [<CR>]<LF>	✓	✓	✓

General PJL Environment Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
COPIES	1~200	1~999	1~999
PAPER		LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARC, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5
ORIENTATION		PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE
FORMLINES		5~128	5~128
MANUALFEED	ON, OFF	ON, OFF	ON, OFF
RET		LIGHT, MEDIUM, DARK, OFF	LIGHT, MEDIUM, DARK, OFF
PAGEPROTECT	AUTO, OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4	AUTO, OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4	OFF, LETTER, LEGAL, A4

RESOLUTION	300, 600	300, 600	300,600

General PJL Environment Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
PERSONALITY	AUTO, PCL, IBM, EPSON, POSTSCRIPT*2	AUTO, PCL, POSTSCRIPT, IBM, EPSON, HPGL	AUTO, PCL, POSTSCRIPT, Interactive, IBMProprinterXL, EPSONFX850, HPGL, Diablo630
TIMEOUT		1~99	1~99
INTRAY1		LOCKED, UNLOCKED	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY2		LOCKED, UNLOCKED	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
INTRAY3		LOCKED, UNLOCKED	
AUTOCONT		ON, OFF	ON, OFF
LOWTONER		CONTINUE, STOP	ON, OFF
INTRAY1SIZE		LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5
INTRAY2SIZE		LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6	LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5
INTRAY3SIZE		LETTER, LEGAL, A4, EXECTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, B5, A5, A6, B6	
ECONOMODE	ON, OFF	OFF, ON	
ECONOLEVEL	1~3	1,2	
XOFFSET	-500~500		
YOFFSET	-500~500		
AUTOCONT	ON, OFF		
TIMEOUTEMU	1~99		
PRIORITY	EPSON, IBM		
AUTOFF	ON, OFF		
TIMEOUTFF	1~99		
TIMEOUT	1~99		
CDCCHIGH	ON, OFF		
DTRCTRL	0~2		
AUTOSLEEP	ON, OFF	ON, OFF	
TIMEOUTSLEEP	1 ~99	1~99	
IBMCHARA1	BETA, ESSZET		

General PJL Environment Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
DEMOPRINT	ON, OFF		
LANG	ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, DUTCH, NORWEGIAN	ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, DUTCH, SPANISH, ITALIAN, FINNISH, NORWEGIAN, PORTUGUESE, DANISH	
KEEPPCL	ON, OFF		
DOUBLESTRIKE	ON, OFF		
DUPLEX		ON, OFF	
BINDING		LONGEDGE, SHORTEDGE	
FIRSTPRINT		NORMAL, MIDDLE, HIGH	
DENSITY		1~15	
CPLOCK		ON, OFF	
PASSWORD		0~65535	
MPTRAY		CASSETTE, FIRST	
MEDIATYPE		REGULAR, THICK, TRANSPARENCY	

PCL Specific Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
FONTSOURCE	I, S	I,C,C1,S	I,C,C1,S
FONTNUMBER	0,1,2, ...n	0,1,2, ...n	0,1,2, ...n
PITCH	0.44, 0.45 ~ 99.99	0.44, 0.45 ~ 99.99	0.44, 0.45 ~ 99.99
PTSIZE	4.00, 4.25 ~ 999.75	4.00, 4.25 ~ 999.75	4.00, 4.25 ~ 999.75
SYMSET	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO25,ISO57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT, OCRA, OCRB, SYMBOL, WDINGS	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO25,ISO57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT	ROMAN8, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC8TK, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, VNINTL, VNUS, MSPUBL, MATH8, PSMATH, VNMATH, PIFONT, LEGAL, ISO2, ISO4, ISO6, ISO10, ISO11, ISO14, ISO15, ISO16, ISO17, ISO21, ISO25,ISO57, ISO60, ISO61, ISO69, ISO84, ISO85, WIN30, HPGERM, HPSPAN, MCTEXT

PCL Specific Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
PAPER	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG		
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE		
LEFTMARGIN	0 ~126 columns		
RIGHTMARGIN	0 ~136 columns		
TOPMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
BOTMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
FORMLINES	5~128		
AUTOLF	ON, OFF		
AUTOCR	ON, OFF		
AUTOWRAP	ON, OFF		
AUTOSKIP	ON, OFF		

PostScript Specific Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
PRTPSERRS	ON, OFF	ON, OFF	OFF, ON
PAPER	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, B5, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG		
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE		
CRLFCONV	ON, OFF		
APPLETALKPS	ON, OFF		

EPSON Specific Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
PAPER	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG		
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE		
LEFTMARGIN	0 ~126 columns		
RIGHTMARGIN	0 ~136 columns		
TOPMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
BOTMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
FORMLINES	5~128		
FONTNUMBER	0,1,2, ...n		
PITCH	0.44, 0.45 ~ 99.99		
PTSIZE	4.00, 4.25 ~ 999.75		
SYMSET	USASCII, GERMAN, UKASCI1, FRENCH2, DANISH1, ITALY, SPANISH, SWEDISH, JPANA, NORWEG, DANISH2, UKASCI2, FRENCH2, DUTCH, SAFRICA, PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC860, PC863, PC865, PC8TK, SYMBOL, WDINGS, OCRA, OCRB		
AUTOLF	ON, OFF		
AUTOMASK	ON, OFF		
SELREADOUT	ON, OFF		

IBM Specific Valiables	HL-660	HL-1260	HL-10h
PAPER	LETTER, A4, LEGAL, EXECUTIVE, COM10, MONARCH, C5, DL, JISB5, A4LONG		
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE		
LEFTMARGIN	0 ~126 columns		
RIGHTMARGIN	0 ~136 columns		
TOPMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
BOTMARGIN	0, 0.33, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 inch		
FORMLINES	5~128		
FONTNUMBER	0,1,2, ...n		
PITCH	0.44, 0.45 ~ 99.99		
PTSIZE	4.00, 4.25 ~ 999.75		
SYMSET	PC8, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC860, PC863, PC865, PC8TK, SYMBOL, WDINGS, OCRA, OCRB		
AUTOLF	ON, OFF		
AUTOCR	ON, OFF		
AUTOMASK	ON, OFF		